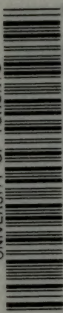


UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO



3 1761 01478375 7





Digitized by the Internet Archive
in 2007 with funding from
Microsoft Corporation

DICTIONARY
OF THE
HAUSA LANGUAGE

VOLUME II. ENGLISH-HAUSA

BY THE SAME AUTHOR

A Dictionary of the Hausa Language. Vol. I.
Hausa-English. Crown 8vo. 3rd ed. 12s. net. Vol. II.
English-Hausa. Crown 8vo. 3rd ed. 10s. net. (Cambridge
University Press.)

Specimens of Hausa Literature. Small 4to. 10s.
Translation, Transliteration and Notes, without Facsimiles. 5s.
(Cambridge University Press.)

Hausa Grammar, with exercises, readings and vocabulary.
4th ed. 5s. (Kegan Paul, Trübner & Co.)

Magana Hausa. Hausa Stories and Fables collected by
J. F. SCHÖN, D.D., re-edited by C. H. ROBINSON, D.D. 2s. 6d.
(S.P.C.K.)

**The Interpretation of the Character of Christ to
non-Christian Races:** an apology for Christian Missions.
Seventh thousand. 2s. 6d. In paper covers. 1s. (Longmans.)

The Missionary prospect, including a survey of
Christian Missions in the past. 5s. net. (Partridge.)

DICTIONARY
OF THE
HAUSA LANGUAGE

by

CHARLES HENRY ROBINSON D.D.

SOMETIME LECTURER IN HAUSA IN THE UNIVERSITY OF CAMBRIDGE
HONORARY CANON OF RIPON

VOLUME II
ENGLISH-HAUSA

THIRD EDITION

Cambridge
at the University Press

1914



Ph

8233

R63

1913

V. 2.

639295

27.7.56

CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

C. F. CLAY, MANAGER

London: FETTER LANE, E.C.

Edinburgh: 100 PRINCES STREET



Berlin: A. ASHER AND CO.

Leipzig: F. A. BROCKHAUS

New York: G. P. PUTNAM'S SONS

Bombay and Calcutta: MACMILLAN AND CO., LTD.

Toronto: J. M. DENT AND SONS, LTD.

Tokyo: THE MARUZEN-KABUSHIKI-KAISHA

First Edition 1900

Second Edition 1907

Third Edition 1914

All rights reserved

PREFACE TO THE THIRD EDITION

IN preparing this third edition of the *English-Hausa Dictionary* for the press I desire to express my gratitude for much valuable assistance received from Major Frank Edgar, author of three volumes of Hausa stories (*tatsuniyoyi*), Mr W. J. Gowers, the Resident at Kano, Captain Roland Fletcher, author of *Hausa Folklore*, Dr Walter Miller, of the C.M.S. Mission, Zaria, the chief translator of the N.T. into Hausa, Dr J. M. Dalziel and others who have supplied corrections and additions to the former edition. To Major Edgar I am specially indebted for many suggestions in regard to the transliteration of Hausa words, and to Dr Dalziel I am indebted for much help in compiling lists of plants and animals.

The system of transliterating Hausa which has been adopted in this volume and in the fourth edition of the *Hausa Grammar* recently published, differs in several respects from that followed in Vol. I. The changes have been made in order to render the system of transliteration uniform with that which has recently been adopted by the English Government authorities in Nigeria. It is impossible by any system of transliteration to represent the exact sounds of many Hausa words. Thus we might almost equally well write *yanka* or *yenka* 'to cut,' *kwai* or *kwoi* 'egg,' *hanya* or *hainya* 'road,' *bakwai* or *bokkoi* 'seven.' In each case the sound to

be represented lies between the sounds suggested by the alternative forms. The Hausa script affords no help in deciding between *e* and *a* in a word such as *yanka* 'to cut,' as the script contains no symbol for a short *e*. In order to bring the system adopted in this dictionary into line with that of the books issued by the Government of Nigeria I have adopted the former alternative in each of these cases which are typical of many others.

Several changes have also been made in respect of the divisions between nouns or pronouns and prepositions. Prepositions will be found written as separate words except in cases where the words to which they are attached cannot be used as independent words apart from the prepositions. Thus we have *ma shi* or *masa* 'to him.' The possessive pronouns are joined to the nouns to which they belong. In some cases, e.g. *wurinsa* 'in his place,' where the pronoun is really possessive the noun although used as a preposition cannot be separated from the pronoun: the same rule would apply to a use such as *ina binsa* 'I follow him.' In a few cases a preposition followed by a noun has become so closely united that it would be pedantic to separate them, e.g. *dayawa*, cf. English 'forasmuch,' 'overmuch' etc.

There are many instances in which it is impossible to say whether a double consonant should be used for purposes of transliteration. In the former edition of this dictionary in such doubtful cases the second consonant was placed in a bracket, e.g. *dag(g)a* 'from.' As this method of transliteration is clumsy and is otherwise unsatisfactory the use of brackets has been abandoned. In a considerable number

of cases a word may be written either with a single or a double consonant. Thus we may write *dăga* or *dagga*, *tăfi* or *taffi* 'to go,' *bisa* or *bissa* 'top.' The general rule is that wherever a consonant is doubled both consonants should be pronounced: thus *amma* 'but,' should to pronounced *am-ma*.

In accordance with the use adopted by the majority of Hausa students I have avoided the use of *chch*, *shsh* and *tsts*, as, although in a word such as *chikache* 'full,' the sound *chikachche* may be heard when the word is pronounced with unusual deliberation, the double *ch* is not heard when the word is used in ordinary rapid conversation.

As this dictionary is intended for the use of those who desire to speak the ordinary colloquial Hausa, I have omitted rare words and rare plurals or other formations.

CHARLES H. ROBINSON.

June, 1914.

ABBREVIATIONS

ans.	= answer.
art.	article.
coll.	collective.
comp.	comparative.
concr.	concrete.
conn.	connective.
dem.	demonstrative.
diff.	different.
expr.	expression, also = expressed.
fem.	feminine.
fig.	figuratively.
fol.	following.
fut.	future.
gent.	gentilic.
id.	the same.
impers.	impersonal.
instr.	instrumental.
interj.	interjection.
interrog.	interrogative.
intr.	intransitive.
loc.	of place.
neg.	negative.

neut.	= neuter.
obj.	objective.
part.	participle.
pass.	passive.
pers.	person.
phys.	physically.
possess.	possessive.
pregn.	in a pregnant sense.
prep.	preposition.
pr. n.	proper noun.
pron.	pronoun.
rel.	relative.
rep.	repeated.
sep.	separate.
spec.	specially, also = special, special term or terms.
suff.	suffixed.
techn.	technical.
tr.	transitive.
trop.	tropically.
v.	verb, also = see.
vv.	verbs.

The letters (K.), (S.) or (Z.) placed after a Hausa word denote that the word is specially used in the districts of Kano, Sokoto or Zaria.

ENGLISH-HAUSA DICTIONARY

When more than one Hausa equivalent is given it is not intended to suggest that the Hausa renderings are synonyms. For the exact meanings of the Hausa words the student is referred to the HAUSA-ENGLISH Dictionary.

Words to which * is attached are not in general use amongst the Hausas, and should not be employed without reference to the HAUSA-ENGLISH Dictionary.

a, 1. indef. art.; there is no word generally used in Hausa corresponding to the English indefinite article, the simple noun sufficing, e.g. *ba ni goro* give me a kola nut.

2. as indef. pron. taking the place of an art., *ɗaya* one and *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wan-su*, *wasu* or *wadansu* are sometimes used, e.g. *wani gari ke nan* there was a city, *akwai wata mache sunanta Amina* there was a (certain) woman named Amina.

3. *a-*, found as a prep. prefix with Engl. words, as a shore *a*, *da*, e.g. afoot *a kafa*, alive *da rai*.

aback, 1. adv., see **back**.

2. fig. e.g. I was taken aback (i.e. I was staggered or surprised) at this *wannan ya ba ni mamaki*.

abandon, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*.

abandoned, adj., see **profligate**.

abase, tr. v. *maida* or *yin ka-rami*; refl. with *kai* (= self), e.g. he abases, or humbles, himself *ya maida kansa ka-rami*, or *ya tanƙwasa kansa*.

abash, tr. v. *sa*, *ba* or *bada kumya*; I feel abashed *na ji kumya* (or *kunya*).

abate, tr. v. *raga*, *rage*, *ragi*; intr. *ragu*, *ragi*.

abatement, n. (decrease) *rāge-wa*, *raguwa*; = amount deducted from price of anything *rangwame*, grant me an a. *ka yi ma ni rangwame*.

abattoir, n. *wurin fawa*.

abdicate, intr. v. (used of a king) *karwu*, *maida rawani*.

abdomen, n. *chiki*; *jiki*, pl. *jikuna* (lit. body) is sometimes employed in this sense.

abhor, see **hate**.

abide, intr. v. (dwell) *zamna* ;
see **abode**.

ability, n. 1. (power) *iyawa*,
iko, a. to do what one likes
samun dama.

2. (mental power, under-
standing) cf. *hankali*, *dubara*,
dabara, *dibara*, *kura*, *wayo*.

abject, adj., see **despised**.

able, to be, v. *iya*, *i ma*, *isa*,
e.g. I am a. to do this work
ina iya yin aikin nan, you
can do this *ku isa yin wan-
nan*, or *ku isa ku yi wannan* ;
to be unable or not able is
expr. by *gaza*, or the neg. of
the above, e.g. we are unable
to lift this *ba mu isa mu
ɗauka wannan ba*, I cannot
na gaza or *ya faskare ni* (lit.
it surpasses me).

able, (clever) *gwani*.

ablutions, ceremonial, n. *al-
walla*, *arwalla* ; a. made with
sand *taimama* ; to make a.
shafe, *shafo*.

abode, n. *mazamni*, *gida*.

abolish, tr. v., see **take away**,
destroy.

abominable, adj. *mugu*, fem.
mugunya, pl. *miyagu*, or
mugaye.

abominate, tr. v., see **hate**.

abomination, n. *abin mugu*,
abin ɓazamta, *abin haram*.

aborigines, n. *haɓe*.

abortion, *ashara*, to produce
a. *ɓata chiki*, *yasda ɗiya*.

abortive, adj. *babu anfani*,
banza.

abound, intr. v. *faye*, *ƙāru*,
yin girma ; see **abundance**,
abundant.

about, adv. and prep. 1. (a.
so much, nearly) *ko*, *kwatam-
chin* (*kwatanchin*, *kāza*).

2. (around) *kewaye* ; a.
him *kewayensa*.

about, to be, v. *za* followed by
the personal pronouns, e.g. I
am a. to start *za ni tashi* ;
yin kūsā, *kūsata*, e.g. *su kūs-
sata in yi haka* ; cf. *makāda*.

above, adv. and prep. *bisa*,
a bisa, *dāga bisa*, *birbishe* (S.),
darap ; as prep. *bisa ga*, and,
when followed by personal
pronouns, *gare*, e.g. *bisa ga
tudu* but *bisa gare shi* ; cf.
biz-biz.

abreast, adv. *ajere*, *ajera*, *gaba
ɗaya*, *dabara*, *daura*.

abroad, adv. *a waje*, *daga
waje* ; (at a distance) *daga
nesa*.

abrogate, tr. v. *kauda*, *kawas
da* ; to a. a law *gushe*.

abrupt, adj. (precipitous) *da
gangara*.

abruptly, adv. (suddenly) *da
sauri*, *da samri*.

abscess, n. *kurji, kureji, kirchi, gurje*, pl. *kuraje, maruru, gyambo*, pl. *gyambuna, hantukuriya* (K.), *jambade*.

absence, in his *bayansa*.

absent, see under **present**.

absorb, tr. v. *sha, shanya*; (used of cloth, etc.) *tsotsa*; to be absorbed in thought or business (so as to forget all else) *yin shagalchi*, e.g. I was so absorbed that I forgot this *na yi shagalchi har na manta wannan*.

abstain from, tr. v. *daina, dena; bari, bar*.

abstract, tr. v. *debe, fitasda*; (to purloin) *sache, sata, yin sata*.

absurd, adj. *banza*.

Abubekr, pr. n. *Abubakar*, also contracted form *Bube*.

abundance, n. *yawa, yawan-chi, auki**, *yalwa, yayalwachi, kari, malala, rufogo, walawa, tululu, tilli, tulli, rikumbu**; (a. of food) *zari, machiya, tinjim**.

abundant, adj. *dayawa, mayawa, mai-yawa*.

abundantly, *yalwache*.

abuse, n. (i.e. abusive words) *habaichi*, pl. *habaitai, kazaf, kazap, zambo*.

abuse, tr. v. 1. (to revile) *zage, zagi, birga, burga*; (to

a. behind one's back) *yin habaichi, chim baya*.

2. (to make ill use of) turn by *yin* with *abin wofi*, etc.

acacia, *bagaruwa, gabaruwa, dakwara, dushe, fura kaya, farchin shafo, gaba chara, gardayi, gawo*, pl. *gawake, kwarkwara, kar kara, kak-kara, kwandariya*.

accede to, v. 1. *yarda*, e.g. *abin nan da ya faɗa ma ka mun yarda* = we a. to the terms he mentioned to you; *amsa*.

2. (as heir) *gāda*.

3. (to the throne) *chin sarauta, chi, yin sariki*.

accelerate, to *hamzarta*, see **hasten**.

accent, he has an a. *bakinshi yana da kwata*.

accept, tr. v. *karɓa, karɓi, samu*; cf. also prec. 1.

acceptable, adj., it is a. to me, periphr. *ya gamshe ni, da or abin da ya gamshe ni*.

acceptance (receipt), *amsa*.

accident, n. *kure*, pl. *kura-kuri, sabābi, tsautsayi*; an a. happened to him *sabābi ya same shi*.

acclamation, n. *guda*. See **shout**.

accompany, tr. v. *raka, rāki*,

rake, yin rakiya, chi ma,
I will a. thee *za ni tare*
da kai.

accompanying, act of, n.
rakiya (S.), *rako* (K.).

accomplish, v. *iyas, iyas da,*
ḡare, chika, gama, yi.

accomplished, particip., see
finished.

accord, to a. with *yin baki*
ḡaya, yin k̄ama da.

according as, adv. particle
k̄ama da, k̄aman da, kanda,
tamkan da, tamkar da, tam-
kad da, yadda.

accordingly, see therefore.

accouchement, *jego.*

account, n. 1. *lisafi, lesafi,*
ḡidaya, ḡida, ḡididiga; to
render an a. *yin lisafi, yin*
ḡidaya, to take a. of *z̄ana.*

2. fig. e.g. he held of no a.
ba ya kula or *ba ya yi kula*
constr. with *da* or *ga.*

3. (narration) *labari*, to
give an a. *bada, ba* or *gaya*
labari; I will give you an a.
of the war *zan gaya ma ka*
labarin yaḡi.

account, on a. of, prep. *s̄-*
*ba da, s̄abad da, s̄abo da**,
a b̄isa, don, domin, e.g. on
a. of this *s̄abad da wan-*
nan, on a. of what? where-
fore? *don mi, dommi, or*
domi.

accoutred, one who is a.
mai-ḡaurin jiki.

accoutrements, i.e. arms, etc.
kayan ḡāga, kayan yaḡi.

accrue, v. 1. (of gain) see
profit.

2. (happen, ensue) *faru.*

accumulate, see gather.

accurate, adj. and adv. *na-*
ḡwarai, fem. *ta-ḡwarai, dai-*
dai, sosai; to be a. *yin*
daidai.

accursed, adj., e.g. it is ac-
cursed *ya yi la'ana.*

accusation, n. *sara, abin sara,*
*raḡa**, *ḡāra*; false a. *rinto,*
ḡage.

accuse, v. *sare, sara, kai ḡāra*
(lit. bring an accusation,
constr. with *ga*), e.g. they
a. this man *sun kai ḡāra ga*
*mutumen nan, ḡaga ma**.

accuser, n. *mai-sara*, pl. *masu-*
sara, mai-kawon ḡāra, ḡan-
ḡāra, mai-ḡāra.

accustom, v. 1. to be accus-
tomed *saba*, e.g. I am accus-
tomed to this *na saba da*
wannan, domestic animals
are accustomed to men,
bisashen ḡida sun saba da
mutane.

2. (to be wont, used)
employ the verbal form with
kan, e.g. he was accustomed
to do thus *shi kan yi haka.*

3. tr. I accustomed him to this food *na sa shi shi saba da abinchin nan*.
- ache**, n. *chiwo*; I have a headache *na ji* (or *na yi*) *chiwon kai*.
- achieve**, v. *aikata, samo**, *yi*, see **accomplish**.
- acid**, adj. *da tsami, da tsamiya, da yami*.
- acidity**, n. *tsami, tsamiya, yami*.
- acknowledge**, see **confess**.
- acquaint**, tr. v. (i.e. tell, inform of) *gaya, fadi, sanas da, sanan da, sanar da, sanashe*.
- acquaintance**, an, n. *masani*, pl. *masana*; he is no a. of mine, I am not acquainted with him *ba shi ne masanina ban san shi ba*.
- acquainted with**, 1. see prec.
2. (versed in); see **ac-custom** 1.
- acquiesce**, v. *yarda*; I a. in this *na yarda wannan*.
- acquiescence**, *yarji*.
- acquit**, v. (used of a judge) *chechi, bada gaskiya*; to be acquitted *barra, kubuta*.
- acid**, see **acid**.
- acrobat**, *dan foto*.
- across**, prep. 1. e.g. a. the sea *ketaren* (or *daga ketaren*) *gulbi*.
2. (beyond) *bayan*.
- act**, n. *aiki*; phr. a bad a. *mugunta, mugun aiki*; a good or kind a. *alheri*.
- act**, to *aikata, yi*.
- active**, *karsani**.
- actually**, adv. *hakika, da gas-kiya, ko*; the last is emphatic (= even), e.g. this man a. surpasses a lion in strength *mutumen nan ya fi ko zaki karifi*.
- Adansonia digitata** (the baobab or monkey-bread tree), *kuka*.
- add**, tr. v. *kara, jimilla*.
- adder**, puff-a. *kasa*.
- addicted**, to be a. to *faye*, e.g. the boys are a. to (or fond of) play *yara suna faye yin wargi*.
- addition**, in a. to *bam da, ban da*.
- address**, to a. to, v. *ambata, ambache*.
- adduce**, tr. v., e.g. to a. testimony *kai* (or *karwo*) *shaida*.
- adept**, n. *gwani*, pl. *gwanaye*; he is an a. at... *shi ne gwani na...*; also *ya saba da...*
- adhere**, to a. to, v. *rike, dafe, like, lazumche, lazumta, nana, nane*, the last is used of things stuck together with gum etc.; those who a. to the commandments of God

- masu-riken hakumtai na Allah.*
- adhering**, n. *nani*.
- adhesive**, adj. *mai-yauki*.
- adieu**, interj. *sai wata rana* ;
a. for the present *sai an jima*,
a. till to-morrow *sai gobe*.
- adjoin**, intr. v. *kusata, kusanta, kusache, yin kusa*.
- adjure**, v., I a. thee by God *na gama ka da Allah*.
- administer**, tr. v. (to give to, e.g. medicine) *ba, bada* ; to a. justice or law *yin shari'a* ; to a. government, cf. *mallaka, hakumta* ; an administrator of law and justice *maraban shari'a da gaskiya*.
- admit**, tr. v. 1. I admitted him, periph. *na bar shi shi shiga*.
2. to a., e.g. error, guilt etc., see **confess**.
- admonish**, see **warn**.
- adoption**, n. *yanchi*.
- adoptive**, a.-father *uban rana*.
- adorn**, tr. v. *gyarta*.
- adorned**, adj. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartata*, pl. *gyartattu*.
- adornment**, n. *sha'awa, ado*, the last used of trinkets, etc., also of dress.
- adulteration**, *algus, algusu, tsirariya, tsinariya, haïnchi*.
- adulterer**, n. *kwarto*, fem. *kwartuwa, mazinachi, mazinanchi, mai-zina*.
- adulteress**, n. *mazinachiya, mazinanchiya, farka, falka, fasiika*.
- adultery**, n. *zina, kwartonchi, zamba**.
- advance**, intr. v. *yin gäba*, to get in a. of *chin gäba, riga, rigaya, rigayi*, e.g. he outran us *ya riga mu*.
- advantage**, n. *anfani* ; of no a. *babu anfani*.
- advantageous**, adj. *da anfani, mai-anfani*.
- adversary**, n. *makiyi*, pl. *makiya, abokin-gaba, mai-kin-ji*.
- advice**, n. *dabara, dubara, dibara* (S.), *shawara*, my a. is *abin da na gani*.
- advisable**, adj. see **advantageous**.
- advise**, v. *yin dabara*.
- advocate**, n. (helper, defender) *mai-taimako*.
- afar**, adv. *nesa, däga nesa*, e.g. I saw him from a. *na hange shi däga nesa*.
- affair**, n. *abu, abin*, pl. *abubuwa, sha'ani, shägali*, e.g. a sad a. *mugun abu, abin mugu* ; avoid deceit and falsehood in your affairs *a bar* (or *bari*) *tsalumchi da kariya ga abubuwanaka* ; *al'amari*, e.g. a wonderful affair *al'amaringa* ; the affairs (= the vicissitudes or changes) of this world

al'amarin duniya; zamanchi, zama (i.e. condition of affairs), e.g. how are affairs with you in the city? *ina zaman gari?* ans. we have reason to be thankful for the condition of affairs *zaman gari da godiya.*
affect, to *sā̀be*; the heat of the fire affected her *wuta ta sā̀be ta.*

affection, see **love**.

affinity, (by marriage) *sur-kunta.*

afflict, tr. v. *yin wahala.*

afflicted, adj. (one who endures affliction and toil) *mai-wahala*, pl. *masu-wahala.*

affliction, n. *wahala, masā̀ba, matsuwa*, see **pain**.

affright, 1. n. *tsoro.*

2. tr. v. *bada tsoro, tsorata.*

afoot, adv. *a kafa, da kafa.*

afraid, adj. I am a. *na tunzera*, or *na firgita*; he made him a. *ya ba shi tsoro*; to be a. *jin tsoro.*

afresh, adv., see **again**.

after, 1. prep. *baya, bayan, baya ga.*

2. adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya.*

afternoon, n. *la'asar*, see under **rana**.

afterwards, adv. (after this) *bayan wannan, bayan haka.*

again, *kuma, haryo, har yau,*

na sā̀bo, dā̀da, dai, de; the v. *ƙara* (add), e.g. I did not do so a. *ban ƙara yin hā̀ka*; a and a. (i.e. repeatedly) *mai-maiche*; go again *ka sake tafiya.*

against, prep. *gaba ga, ga*; to stumble a. *tuntube da*; a. his will (perforce) *da tilas.*

agate, a brooch of *talhatina.*

age, n. 1. (period or time) *yayi*, e.g. in the a. of the prophet *da yayin annabi.*

2. (time that a person has lived) *shekara* or pl. *shekaru*, e.g. what is your a.? *shekarunka nawa?* or *shekara nawa kana da rai?* or *shekara nawa tun haifuwarka?* I am eighteen years of a. *shekarata ishirin biyu babu.*

aged, adj. 1. (of a certain age), see prec. 2.

2. (advanced in years) *tsofo*, fem. *tsofuwa*, pl. *tsoffi*, *tsofaffi*, or *tsofoffi*; he is a. *yayinsa ya wuche*, lit. his time is past; see **old**.

agent, n. *na'ibi**; nouns denoting the a. may be formed from verbs, substantives or adjectives by prefixing *mai* or *ma*, e.g. *gudu* to run, *mai-gudu* a fugitive, *sassaka* to smooth wood, *masassaki* a carpenter; for further

illustrations see under *mai* and *ma*.

aggressor, to be an *harzuka*.

agitate, tr. v., see **shake**.

ago, adv. *tun, tun da*, e.g. this was written twelve days a. *kwana sha biyu tun da wannan an rubuta shi*; long a. *da, lokachin da, tun daɗewa, da wuri, dauri, tuntuni*. See **age 2**.

agree, v. *gama, gamu, yardā, yarje, yin baki ɗaya, sādu, j̄to, j̄to, ɗamre magana*; my friend and I a. exactly *da ni da abokina mu ne tangas*; he agreed with you *ya yarda ma ka*; agreed to *yardadde*.

agreeable, adj. 1. (pleasant) *da daɗi, daɗi, daidai, dede*.

2. (willing), e.g. if you are a. *in (or idan) ka yarda, in ka (or kana) so*.

agreement, n. *sulhu, sulfu, sulba**, *yardi, yarji*; a trade a. *sallama*; to make an a., see **agree**; a. to work for a certain sum *sharaɗi*.

ague, n., see **fever**.

ahead, adv. *gaba*.

aid, tr. v. *taya, yin taimako, tanya, tanyo, koro sauƙi*.

aid, n. *taimako, taimakawa, sauƙi*; (a helper) *mai-taimako*.

ail, v., e.g. what ails you? *mi ya same ka?*

ailment, n., see **sickness**.

aim, (point aimed at) *bara*; to aim at, *yin bara, barata, barache, bartaka, nūna, nūno*.

aimless, a. toil *aikin banza*.

ainhum, n., i.e. a disease of the little toe, *hambudiga, mage-duwa*; cf. also *kudumbiya* a disease which may affect all the toes.

air, n. *iska, hiska*; *shan iska* is the Hausa idiom for to take a walk, e.g. let us take a walk to enjoy the air *mu yi yawo garin shan iska*.

air, v. *kekashe*, see **to dry**.

ajar, to put a door a. *saya ƙofa*.

akimbo, put your arms a. *chi dununka da hannu*.

alarm, to *yin ruba*, see **frighten**.

alarm, n. *yagatu (K.)*.

alas, interj. *kaito*, (S.) *kaicho*, (K.) *kaitaro, wai, wai niya, tir, ashsha*.

albino, n. *zabiya*.

alien, n. *bare**; see also **stranger**.

alienate, to a. a person *kan-gara da*.

alight, intr. v. *sabka, safka, sapka, sauka, soka, sabki, sapki, shiɗa, shiɗe, j̄ɗa*.

alike, adj. *daidai, suwa-suwa*,

tangam, tangas, sakke (S.); they are all a. *duka ḍaya ne, suparsu* (or *sifassu*) *ḍaya*, or *sun yi tangam da juna*.

alive, adj. *da rai*; to keep a. *raya*, e.g. may God preserve us a. *Allah shi raya mu*.

all, adj. *duka, duk, dukanta, jama'a*; a. together *tarsashi, tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*; a. of you *dukanku, tarinku*; a. men *mutane duka* or *dukan mutane*; all (i.e. total) *ḍokachi*; all (i.e. everything) *ḍokachin komi*.

Allah, by *wallah, wallahi*

allay, tr. v. *futas da, kwantas da*.

allegory, n. *misali, michali**, *almara*.

alliance, n. *gāya*.

alligator, n. *kāda, kādo*, pl. *kā-dōdi, kaduna, or kadunduna*.

allow, tr. v. *bari, bar, yarda*; e.g. let me depart *bar ni in tafi*, if you a. we will do so *in ka yarda za mu yi hāka*, a. me *ba ni yarji*.

alloy, n. *hainchi*; unalloyed *babu hainchi, safi*.

allure, tr. v. *ruḍe*.

almighty, adj. *mai-iko da kowa, mai-iyawa*.

almond, n. *chanza**.

almost, adv. *kūsa*; it is a. finished *ya yi kūsan kare* or *ya kūsa karewa*.

alms, n. *sadaka, zakka, kurḍin gurasa, kono** (K.), alms-giving, n. *sadaka*.

aloe, (*Aloe zebrina*) *zabo*.

alone, adv. *kaḍai, kawai, abin* followed by a personal pronoun, thus, he a. *abinshi*, I a. *ni ḍayana* or *ni kaḍai*, leave him a. *bar shi ḍayansa*; they a. *ḍayansu*; a state of being a. *kaḍaichi*, to be left a. *waiwai*.

alongside, *daura, dabara, dabra*, or followed by *da* as a prep., e.g. they stood side by side *su tsaya daura da juna*.

aloof, to keep a. from *nesanchi, nisanchi*.

aloofness, *nisanta*.

alphabet, n. *abajada*, letter of the a. *harafi*, pl. *haruffa*.

already, adv. *na dā, ḍazu, wuri, dauri, tun da wuri*; he is gone a. *ya riḡaya ya tafi*.

also, adv. *kuwa, kau* (S.), *kawa* (S.); usually placed after that which it connects; *haryo**, *har yaru*.

alter, v. 1. tr. *sake, saki, sauya, musaya*.

2. intr. *sauya*.

altercation, *haya-haya, har-gowa, hayaniya, tankiya*.

altered, particip. adj. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyayya*, pl. *sauyayyu*.

although, adv. *ko, ko da*.

altogether, adv. *bāki ḍaya*, cf. *fau*, *fofo**, also *faye* and *fi*.

always, adv. *koyaushe*, *kul-yaushe*, *tutur*, *tutul*, *kullum*, *da kullum*, *yini**, *chikin ko-wanne yayi**, *judu**, to continue a. *tuturta*.

am, v., see **be**.

Amaranthus (native spinach), *alayafu*, *zaḳin banza*.

amazed, to be *yin mamaki*, *jin mamaki*, *jin damuwa*.

amble, n., of a horse *tākama*; a horse which ambles *doki mai-tākama*.

ambuscade, n., see **seq.**

ambush, n. *kwanto*, *ḅāgo*, *fako*, *maraya*; to set an a. *yin fako*; to lie in a. *lāḅe* (S.), *raḅe* (K), place of or for an a. *mafaka*.

amen, *amin**.

amidst, prep. *tsāka*, *tsākan*, *tsākanin*.

amount, large, n. *chushe*; see **quantity**.

amulet, *talili*, see **charm**.

amuse, tr. v. *bada* (or *sa*) *murna*.

ancestor, n. *kāka*; ancestors *kakanni*.

ancestry, see under **ba**.

and, conj. *da*, *wa**.

angel, n. *malaika*, pl. *malaiku*.

anger, n. *fushi* pronounced *fhushi*, *harushi*, *ḳanḳanchi*,

ḳuna, *takaichi*, *zauta*, *zafin rai*, *bijira* (S.), *ḳumchin zu-chiya*.

angle, n. *kusuruwa*.

angry, to be, v. *yin fushi*, *fusata*, *yin tsiwa*; to be a. with *harzuka ga*, *hasāla ga*, *chichika*, *yin chichika*, *takaita*, *jin takaichi*; he feels a. *yana jin haushi*.

angry, adj. *da fushi*; one who is a. *mai-fushi*.

anguish, n. *azaba*, *zogi*.

angular, *mai-kusuruwa*.

animal, n. *bīsā*, pl. *bīshashe* or *bisaje*, *dabba*; domestic animals *bisashen gida*, wild animals *bisashen daji*, *abin daji* or *naman daji*, pl. *nammun daji*.

animosity, n., see **hate**.

ankle, n. *idon ḳafa*, *idon sawu* (or *sau*), pl. *ijiyān sawu*, or *ijiyar sawu*, or *ijiyas sawu*; a. bone *dombubu*, or *dambubu*.

announce, tr. v. *gaya*, *fadi*, *labarta*; to a. as a herald does the coming of some one *gabato*.

annoy, tr. v. *dāme*, *dāma*, *fītina*, *hayyāta*, *tayas*, *wahalda*, *wahalshe*, *sa wahala*, *al'ale*; *sawarwara*, *ḍawai-niyasda*, *tozarta*, I am not to be annoyed *ba ni damuwa*.

annoyance, n. *wahala, sawarwari, takaichi*, see **anger**.

anoint, e.g. with oil or water, tr. v. *shāfa, shāfe, yin shāfa*.

anointing, n. *shāfa*.

anon, adv. *sai an jima, jima kadan*.

another, pron. *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wasu* or *wadansu*; often rendered with *kuma*, e.g. *wani kuma*.

answer, n. *amsa, amshe, am-sawa, jawābi, karḥawa*.

answer, v. *amsa, yin amsa*, to give an a. *kāda bāki, karḥa magana*; I answered him *na mayas masa da magana*.

ant, n. different species are: small stinging a. *tarmani, tirmani, kwankwambishi*; small black a. *chinnaka* or *chirnaka* or *tuma da gaya*; driver a. *kwalkwasa, kwar-kwasa*; the stink a. *gwana, gwano, geno*; a red traveling a. *makwaiwa*; harvesting a. *tururuwa*; very small black a. *kudafi, kudahi* (S.); a red biting a. *kumo*; an a. which feeds on honey *shazumami*; small red a. *kiyashi*; white ants (i.e. termites) *zāgo*, fem. *gāra, gaira*, pl. *gārani, sansamiya*; the white a. in the winged stage *shinge, gina*; *gara* is also used of ants

generally; an a. with a large abdomen *maidauru a gato*; a reddish biting ant *ba-fulatana*.

ant-bear, see **ant-eater**.

ant-eater, the great a. or ant-bear, *dapgi, dabgi, dubgi, darugi*.

antelope. The following are some of the antelopes found in Hausaland. Senegal or red-fronted gazelle, *barewa*, pl. *bareyi*; Dorcas gazelle *farin barewa*; the roan a. (Hippotragus equinus) *gwan-ki, gwamki* (S.); the W. African hartebeeste *kanki*, pl. *kanoki*; oryx *mariri, marili*; Buffon's red cob a. *mareya*; Addra or red-necked gazelle *mai-farin gindi*; a Senegal hartebeeste (Dama-liscus korrigum) *dāri*; the oribi a. *batsiya*; the red-flanked duiker *maḥurna*; the 'crowned duiker' *gada*; klip-springer *gadar dutsi*; the water buck (Cobus defassus unctuosus) *gwambaza, gwanzama, ambache, dodoka*; reed buck *kwantarafi, ḳaji*; bush buck *mazo*; a. leucoryx *wal-waji*; an old solitary a. *kishimi*; see also *matso, karan-goda*.

ant-hill, n. *suri*, pl. *suwura*,

- surā, jība, jūba; kunkū-wa.*
- anticipate**, v. *tsaitse*, e.g. I anticipated him *na tsaitse shi; wada**.
- anticipation**, *zāto*.
- antimony**, n. *kwalli, tōzali*; small skin bottle for holding a. *tandun tōzali, gidan kwalli*; a stick used for applying a. *mashiyi, masayi*.
- anus**, *diwa, tsuli, tsuliya, kar-kashi*, shakira, munta, muriya*.
- anvil**, n. *mākēra*.
- anxiety**, n. *machiyata, mata-mache, mamābi*.
- any**, adj. *kowanne*, fem. *kowache*, pl. *kowādanne*.
- anyhow**, indef. pronl. adv. *ko kaka*.
- anyone**, indef. pron. *kowa, kowanene*, fem. *kowa, kowacheche*.
- anything**, indef. pron. *komi, kome*; not a., nothing *babu komi, ba komi*.
- anywhere**, indef. pronl. adv. *koīna*.
- apart from**, adv. *banda, bamda, dabam dabam*.
- apartment**, n. (room) *ḍaki*, pl. *ḍakuna*.
- apex** (of house, etc.), *kan ḍaki*.
- apostatize** (from Islam), *rin-da, ridda*.

- apparatus**, n. *kaya*, pl. *kaya-yeki*, or *kayaryeki*.
- appear**, intr. v. *bayāna, bai-yāna, gwadu*.
- appearance**, n. *kāma*, pl. *kāmā-nu*, or *kamannu* (S.), *halamu*, wato*, watau**.
- appease**, tr. v. *lallashi, lillashi, sāda*.
- appetite**, n. *kwaḍai*, kwaḍayi**.
- apple**, Akee a. *alele*; balsam a. *garafuni*; wild custard a. *gwandar daji*; hairy thorn a. *zakami*; Dead Sea or Sodom a. *tumfafiya*.
- appoint**, tr. v. (to order, used of God) *ḡadarta*; (to select for an office) *zāḡa, zāḡe*; appointed *zāḡaḡḡe*, fem. *zāḡaḡḡa*, pl. *zāḡaḡḡu*.
- apportion**, to *yin fasali*.
- approach**, intr. v. *nache, yin kūsa, doshi, dosa*, see **near**.
- approval**, sale on *chinikin shawara*.
- approve of**, v. *yardā*; approved of, adj. *yardadde*, fem. *yardadda*, pl. *yardaddu, tābatache*, fem. *tābatachiya*, e.g. *magana tābatachiya* approved, i.e. true words; he approves o. *hankali ya kwan-ta da*.
- apricot**, a tree with fruit like a : wild a., n. *tsada**; see **plum**.
- apron**, n. *bante, banche*, pl.

bantuna, kudu; a woman's a. *darazau*.

Arab, n. *ba-ture*, pl. *turawa*; an A. *ba-Larabe*, pl. *Larabawa*; the Arabic language *Arabiyya, larabchi*.

arch, (used in building) *kafofin guga* (S.), *masharuwa**.

arched, an arched roof *damren-guga, dauren-guga, masha-ruwa**.

are, v. *ne, che, ke*; phr. there a. *ina, akwai*; there a. to me, i.e. I have *sun yi ma ni, a yi ma ni*; there a. many *ina da su dayawa*.

argument, *jiyeya**, *jiyaiyya**.

aright, to direct a. *daidaita*.

arise, intr. v. *falka, tashi, taso, tsira, tsire, tsiro, or chira, chire, chiro*.

arithmetic, *hisabi* (S.).

arm, n. 1. (from the wrist to the elbow) *damchi, damtse*, pl. *damasa*; the forearm *gaḅa*; to hold up at arm's length *dāga*; a man with a bent a. *mai-laushi, mai-lauje, mai-ḱwarda*.

2. arm (i.e. weapon), see **arms**.

armhole, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu, hamatta, hamutta*.

armlet, n. gen. *ḱwandage*, a. made of metal *ḱarafa*; a. made of natron *ḱārau, ḱāro*,

pl. *ḱaraurawa, unḱuruu*; a. made of plaited grass, worn by children *darambuwa*; a. made of leather and wood *dāga*.

armour, n. chain or iron a. *sulke, saba*; a horseman's a. *kumakumi*.

armpit, n. *hamata*, pl. *hamatu, hamatta, or hamutta*.

arms, coll. (weapons, etc.) *makami*; battle a. *kayan dāga, kayan yaḱi*.

army, *dako* (S.); the centre of an a. *uwar yaḱi*.

around, adv. *kewaye, gewaye*, prep. *kewayen, gewayen*.

arouse, tr. v. *tada, tashe, tayas, tayas da, falkad da*.

arrange, tr. v. *gyara*; to a. the hair (i.e. to comb or dress the hair) *gyarta, shata, shache*.

arranged, adj. *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu; gyartache**.

arrangement, (contract) *wahabi, sharadi*.

arrive at, v. *isa, iso, sachu*.

arrogance, n. *foma, homa*.

arrogant, n. one who is a. *mai-foma*, pl. *masu-foma, mai-homa*, pl. *masu-homa*.

arrow, n. *kibiya*, pl. *kibau, kulere, gora*, pl. *gororo, or gorina*; bow and arrows

bakan kibiya; a. head *fasa*, *pāsa*; a. projecting from quiver *zagiya*; barbs on an a. *kālemu* (K.), a quiver for arrows *kwarin kibiya*; special names of a. poison are *tumia* or *tinia*, *kwankwani*, *sainya**, *tururubi*, *uwar magunguna*, *womagunguna*, *zabgai*, *zabo*, *uwal dafi*, gen. *dafi*; e.g. they (the arrows) are poisoned *suna da dafi*. Ingredients for making arrow poison are obtained from many different plants. Arrows are made from the reed-like plants, e.g. *kyamro*, *kyamru*, *kyamare*, *sheme*, *gazara*, *sansari*; a. notch *gofi*.

art, n. *gwani*.

article, the definite a. -n, see **the**; the indefinite a., see **a**.

as, adv. *kāma*, *yadda*, *yāda*, *kauda*, *ya**, *yi**; a. before *kāma ta dā* or *kāma na dā*; even a. *kāmar yadda*.

ascend, v. *shirga*, *hawa*, *hau*, constr. with *bisa* or *bisa ga*; e.g. he ascended the hill *ya hau bisa tudu*.

asceticism, *gudun-duniya*, *tsantsani*, *tsintseni*.

Asclepias gigantea, n. *tumfafiya*, pl. *tumfafi*.

ashamed, to be, intr. v. *jin kumya*, *jin kunya*.

ashes, n. *toka*, pl. *tokuna*, *habdi* (S.); hot a. *rufushi*, *rubshi*, *habdi* (S.).

aside, e.g. I turn a. from the path *ina ratsewa dāga bisa hanya*; a *baya*, *ga baya**.

ask, v. *roka*, *roko*, *yin tambaya*; one who asks *mai-tambaya*; to a. of or from *roko*, *roka*.

asking, *roko*, continued a., n. *kokanto*.

ass, n. *jāki*, fem. *jāka*, or *jākanya*, pl. *jākai*, or *jākuna*, *āsuwa*; *dan bakuru*, *matuwa*; large male a. *bingi*, a castrated ass *aguru*; diff. species have the foll. names; a. with red body *jimrau*; a. with black mouth *gofa*, red a. *aura*, reddish brown a. *idubar*, tawny a. *oraki* and *dan oraki*; large black a. *jāba*; white a. *mugo*, *shawu* (S.); a spec. of wild a. *shiyaki*; a pad for an ass *akumari*, *leferu*, pl. *leferai*; *lafero*, *laheru*.

assault, n. (as in war) *falmaki*, *farmaki*, *firmaki*.

assemble, v. *gayya*, *gayyata*, *tāra*, intr. *tāru*.

assembled, to be *taru*, particip. *tarare*.

assembly, n. *gayya*, *al'umma*; royal assembly-room *fage*, *dandali*.

assent, v. *kāda kai, gyada kai*; assent is very frequently expr. by *kyau* as in the phr. *da kyau*.

assess, to *kimanta, aza ma*.

assimilate, they will not a. *ba su haḍuwa*.

assist, tr. v. *taya, tamaya, taimaka, taimaki, yin taimako, yin shalli*.

assistance, n. *tamayi, taimako, taimakawa, shalli, sauki*; a. in war *gudummarwa*; he called for a. *ya buga gāyya*.

assurance, *tabbas*.

assure, to a. a person of the reality of anything *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

assured, to be a. of (to feel sure) *tabbata, tābatta, tābache*, cf. seq.

assuredly, adv. *da gaskiya, babu shakka, lābudda, babu wawa, faufau*; he is a. there *ya tabbata nan*; he is a. a heathen *ko tabbata kafiri ne*.

asthma, n. *fuka*, see **breath**.

astonished, to be, v. *jin damuwa, jin mamaki, yin mamaki*.

astonishment, n. *damuwa*, exclamations expressing astonishment *haba, gāsara**.

astray, to go *bakita* (S.).

astrigent medicine, n. *magani mai-kama chiki*.

astrologer, to act as an *zūba tamrarai*.

at, prep. a, e.g. *a wuri chan* at that place; often prefixed to *gare, chikin* and *bisa*; *ga* (*gare* with pronouns), e.g. *ga gida* at home; *dāga*, e.g. *shi ne dāga nan* he is at that spot, i.e. he is there; *gun**, e.g. *gun chan = a wuri chan*.

atmosphere, n. *duniya*.

attack, n. *farmaki, falmaki, firmaki*; a feint or pretended a. *zanzoma*.

attack, to *girsa, girshe, mama, mami*.

attain, to a. to *same, samu, kai*.

attempt, v. *yin koḳari, tāga*.

attempt, n. *koḳari*.

attend, to a. to (to look carefully into) *lura*; to listen to *ji, saurara, daddāra*; see **attention** (2).

attendant, n., an a. on one sick *majinyata*; the attendants of a king *fadawa*.

attention, 1. n. (serious thought) *hankula, hankali; ruwa*, e.g. it is no matter worth my a. *ba* or *babu ruwana*.

2. to pay a. to *tuna*, constr. with *da, maida himma*; to give a. to what is said *ji, saurara*; give a. with your ears (incline your ears to) *ka kakartsa kunnuwa*.

attentively, to look at a. *tso-kachi*.

attest, v. *shaida*, *yin shaida*, *kai shaida*.

attested, particip. adj. *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

auction, *gwanjo**.

auger-beetle, *gunda*, *gumda*.

augment, tr. and intr. v. *dāda*.

aunt, n. *gwaggwo*, a. on the mother's side *rafaniya*.

authority, n. *iko*, pl. *ikoki*, *ikon-taka*, *alfarma**, a person in a. *mahakumchi*, *mahukumchi*.

avarice, n. *zargi*, *zalimi*, *zalum*, *rowa*, *rowwa*, *māda*, *madda*.

avaricious, adj. *mairowa*, *da māda*.

avaricious, to be *yin zalumchi*.

avenge, tr. v. *rāma*, *sāka*.

avenger, *mai-rama*.

average (adj.), *tsāka-tsāka*, *madaidaichi*, pl. *madaidaita*.

avoid, v. *kalmāsa*, *kalmashe*, *baudi*, *waske*, *zāge*, cf. a thing to be avoided *abokin kiyeye*.

avoidance, i.e. of a missile, etc. *gochiya*, *guchiya*, *waskiya*.

await, to wait for one *jira*, *jirache*, *jinkirta*.

awake, intr. v. *farka*, *falka*; awaking *falkawa*; a start or exclamation on awaking *firgigi**.

awaken, to *tāsad da*, *falkad da*.

away, to get a. (escape) *fichi*, *fiche*.

away, adv. phr. a. with him *yi da shi*.

awkward, *shallali*.

axe, n. *gatari*; a. for cutting stones *dundurusu*; a. for cutting grass *gizago*, *gisago*; a. with broad blade *barandami*, *tsitaka*; battle a. *gāfiya*, *gita* (K.), *walwada*, *warwada*; the point of an a. head which projects through the handle *suga* (S.).

axe-handle, n. *bota* (K.), *kota*.

babbling, n. *rawatsa*.

baboon, n. *bika*, pl. *bikoka*, *gogo*, *yimki* (K.).

baby, n. *jariri*, *jarili*, *yarili*, *jinjiri*.

bachelor, n. *gwabro*, *gwauro*, *gauro*, *gwamro*, *balaguro**; *namiji da shara*, lit. one who has to sweep his own dwelling.

back, n. *baya*, *janfi**, hence *bada janfi* to put to flight; to turn the b. *bada baya*; phr. on the b. *rigingine*, on the b. of *reran*; to be hollow backed *gantsarwa*.

back, e.g. to come b. *komo*; to go b. *koma*; to move b., intr. v. *gusa*, *gulgusa*, *gurgusa*.

backbite, tr. v. *chim baya*.

backbiting, *tsēgumi, tsogumi*.

backbone, n. *tsatso, tsotso, ka-shin tsatso*.

backward, adv. (on the back) *rigingine*.

backwards, adv. *baibai*, e.g. they walked b. *su ka tafi baibai*.

bad, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyāgu*; *mamuna, mum-muna**; used of corn *tsadari*; b. man *dan duniya*; the expr. *farikobaki* often = good or bad.

bad, to go b. *rūba, riḅa*, as meat or fruit; to render b., to spoil *rubachi*.

badger, n. *takas*.

badness, n. *mugunta*.

baft, grey b. *akoko*; see **cloth**.

bag, n., a small b. *aljifi, aljifu*, pl. *aljifaye* or *aljifai*;

b. made of grass with narrow opening *ashasha*; b. for cowries *birgami, burgami, burgame* (S.); woman's b.

made of grass *burma, burima*; small b. for carrying salt *chukurfa*; b. of feminine luggage *fago** or *pago**;

leathern b. for camels, etc. *gurara*; large skin b. for cowries *jikka*, pl. *jikkuna*, or *jikkoki, kyankyandi*; b. holding 20,000 cowries *kwaroro*;

very small b. *rarita, lalita**;

long, narrow salt-b. *lange*; a leathern pouch used by barbers etc. *zabira*; skin b. or bottle *salka*, pl. *salkuna*; small leathern or grass b. *sarita*; large b. for holding rice *sūbolo, saulo*; a small leathern b. *kumaro, komaro, tānwara* (K.); a large leathern b. *māla*, pl. *malalaki*; a b. made from *tukururuwa* leaves *tādāli*; leathern narrow-mouthed b. *sulkumi* (S.), *surkumi* (K.); large skin b. *taiki*, pl. *taika, tayukka*, or *taikuna, buhu* (Z.); small goat-skin water-b. *tandawara*; small provision-b. *tawara*; leathern bag closed by two strings pulled in opposite directions *alagwami*; a money-b. made of skin or cloth *tsaleta, salita*.

baggage, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*; see **goods**.

bail, see **surety**.

bake, tr. v. *tuya, toya, gāsa*, the latter also spec. used of baking bread, e.g. *ya gāsa gurasa*; baked (i.e. fully baked = the Engl. colloquial 'done') *ninanne* (S.), *nunanne* (K.), pl. *nenannu* or *nunannu*; (cooked) *toyayye, tuyayye*.

bakemeat, *tuya*, pl. *toye-toye*.

balance, n. a pair of scales
maauna, maauni, mazani,
mizani; abin awo.

balance, v., to b. a load on the
head *digirgire.*

Balanites aegyptiaca, n.
aduwa.

bald, adj. *mai-kora, mai-saiḱo,*
mai-sanḱo, mai-kwambe.

baldness, n. *kora, saiḱo* (S.),
sanḱo (K.), *kundumi, kun-*
dimi, kundumin kai; cf. prec.

bale, of goods *fugūma, hu-*
guma; see **load**.

ball, n. *makodi**, *kwālo, mul-*
mule; a small b. *dan kodī*;
b. or brick made of mud
tubali; b. of the eye *ḱwayan*
ido; (bullet) *harsa, harsashi*;
to roll into a b. *dunḱula,*
ḱudundune.

ballad, n. *waka.*

bamboo, a sort of, n. *gora,*
*kwangi**.

banana, n. the b. tree, or fruit
ayaba.

band, n. 1. (company or gather-
ing) *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori.*

2. (strip for binding) cf.
seq., a leathern band worn
round the neck *goli* (S.).

bandage of any kind, n. *ra-*
wani, pl. *rawunna.*

bandit, n. *mai-fashe*, pl. *masu-*
fashe.

bandy-legged, adj. *gwami,*

mai-gwami, chassa (K.), *tar-*
koshi (S.).

bang, an exclamation *pom, pam.*

bangle, for wrist *ḱārau, ḱār-*
ḱārau, munduwa, manduwa,
pl. *mundaye, mandaye.*

bank, n. (= edge or margin)
bāki, gāḱa, gachi; b. of a
river *gefe, bākin ruwa, gachi,*
gāḱa, refe.

banner, n., see **flag**.

baobab (*Adansonia digitata*),
n. *kuka*, pl. *kukoki*; fruit of
the b. tree *ḱwame* (S.).

bar, n. (a rod or stick of wood,
iron, etc.) *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*;
a b. of iron *sanda ta ḱarife*;
b. used to close a doorway
gagara-bado.

barbarians, n. 1. (of men in a
rude, uncivilised state) *baibai,*
baibaya, baibayi, or *baubawa*
(S.).

2. (cruel) *da mūni.*

barbarity, n. (cruelty) *mūni.*

barbarous, see **barbarians**.

barber, n. *wanzami*, pl. *wan-*
zamu, wanzamai; a hair-
dresser is *mai-kitso.*

barbs, on an arrow *ḱālemu* (K.),
kun-nuwan kibiya.

bare, see **naked**.

bareness, n. *wofi.*

bargain, n. (bargaining) *chini-*
ki, tāyi; a discussion before
making a b. *alwāshi*; the

- conclusion of a b. *yardaje-niya*; to haggle over a b. *yin chiniki*; to make an offer in bargaining, see seq.; a b. (cheap) *da araha, da arha*; into the b. (= besides, as well) *banda wannan*.
- bargain**, v. *tāya, tayi, yin tayi, yin chiniki*.
- bark**, n. (of a tree) *fāta, pāta, ḥawon itache*.
- bark**, tr. v. (to strip off b.) *kware, kwari*.
- bark**, intr. v. (of dogs, etc.) *yin hafshi, yin hapshi, yin habshi, yin haushi, yage*.
- barking**, n. (of dogs, etc.) *hafshi, habshi, haushi*.
- barley**, n. *sha'air*.
- barn**, n. *rumbu, rafoniya, rufogo*.
- barrel of a gun**, n. *baki*; a double-barrelled gun *bindiga mai-baki biyu*.
- barren**, adj. (used of the female sex) *karara, bakarariya, matauriya*; (used of a sheep or goat which has no had young) *kazgainya*; a b., or fallow, field *sabra, sabara, saura, tsandauri*.
- barrenness**, n. (of woman, etc.) *tauriya, rashin haifuwa*.
- barricade**, n. *kāgara, kēgaruwa*, pl. *kāgaru, gagarabado*.
- barrier**, n. *kāfi*.
- barter**, n. *chiniki, sārafi, tāyi, furfure, sārafa, rangama*.
- barter**, to *sārafa, yin chiniki, tāya, yin tāyi*; see **bargain**.
- base**, adj. (of low worth) *banza*.
- base**, n. 1. (lowest part or bottom of anything) *kalkashi, karkashi*.
2. (= support or foundation of anything) *gutsu*, or *guzu**, which is used physically and also figuratively; *gindi, tushe*.
- bashful**, adj., see seq.
- bashfulness**, n. *kumya* or *kunya*; to feel bashful *jīn kumya*, e.g. when asking you for this, I felt bashful *da na roḳe ka wannan na jī kumya*.
- basil**, wild b. *daidoya* (K.), *ḍoḍoya* (S.).
- basin**, n. *kwachiya, gwangwan*, a metal b. *dāro*.
- basket**, n., a large b. for salt etc. *adila* or *adilak kaya*; large b. or pannier made of grass *gufa, gufata, kantalma*; a b. made of palm fibre *lefe*; a small grass b. used in making bread *marari*; a large grass b. *sanfo* or *samfo*, pl. *sanfunu*; *kwando*; a b. used as a strainer *kindi*, pl. *kindodi, marari*; a small b. used by women *kwatashi*,

taskira, tazkira; a b. used in fishing *suru*; a b. full of corn *totsiya*. See under **bag**.

bastard, adj. *shēge*, fem. *shēgiya*, pl. *shēgu*, *ḍan farka*, *ḍan nema*.

bat, n. *tattapara, birbiri, rugi, tsabilbila, yabirbira, kanen jemāge*; a large-sized fruit b. *jemāge*.

bathe, to *kurma, kuruma*.

bathing, *kurme*.

battle, n. *fama, faḍa, gāba, yaḳi*, the latter is also the proper word for **war**, q.v.; b.-field *dāga*.

battle, to draw up in line of b. *ja dāga*.

battlefield, n. *kangan faḍa*.

bawl, n. *yin kuka, yin ufu*.

bdellium, African b. *dashi*.

be, v. 1. *ne* with masc. subject, *che* with fem. subj., *ke* with either; they may follow the subj. but are often found at the end of their clause; e.g. he is truthful *shi mutum mai-gaskiya ne*; she is very beautiful *ita kyakkyawa che*; both of them are old *su biyu tsofi su ke*; the above chiefly express the simple copula, but see below (3).

2. *kashi, kashe, kasanche*, used where emphasis is laid on the fact or continuance

of existence; they are frequently used in written, but seldom in colloquial Hausa.

3. *akwai* (sometimes pronounced *akwoi*), implying real existence, there is, there are, there was, there were, e.g. are there elephants in this town? *akwai giwaye a garinga?* ans. there are *akwai*: *ke* is often found with *nan* in this sense, e.g. there was a certain jerboa *wani kurege ke nan = akwai wani kurege*.

4. *na* (masc.), *ta* (fem.), are sometimes used in place of the substantive verb, e.g. the men are doing so *mutane na yin hāka*, the horses are running away *dawaki na gudu*; for this use of *na* see H. Dict. I. p. 273.

bead, n., beads *chasbi, chasba-ha*; a large white b. in a set of black *alāma*, pl. *alamomi*; round blue b. *galan kumburi*; a large white seed used as a b. *gimba*, pl. *gimbai*; a large (Phoenician) b. *dilari*; a small red b. *rigigi*; a red coral b. *bajumba*; a blue cylindrical b. worn by women *samfalwa*; red beads *dimbujin zufa, dumbaji, jinin kafiri*; beads made from black seeds

kantururuwa; necklace of beads *kutofi*; beads worn round the neck by women *tagode*; string of beads worn round loins *kwatana*; pearls or red beads *murjan*, *murjani*; large red b. *murjanin tudu*, *rigigi* (S.), *rikiki*; prayer beads *tasbi*, pl. *tasbai*; a woman's girdle of beads *kwatana*, *tsakuwa*.

bead-tree, *kurnan nasara*.

beak, n. *ḡoto*, *bakin tsuntsuwa*, *gebe**.

beam, n., b. above door *almanāni*; a cross b. *kuba*; b. or post stuck in the ground to support a roof *dirka*, *j̄go*, pl. *j̄guna*; b. for pumping water *j̄go*, *kutāra*.

beam, of light *giraza*, *girazal rana*.

bean, n. *wake*, pl. *wakoki* or *wakaikai*; red edible b. *tsarariya*, *tsurariya* (K.), *kwama* (S.); small b. *komo*; mahogany b. *kawo*; sword b. *barankachi*; yam b. *giri giri*; beans ground up and cooked in water *tubāni*, *tabāni*, *tubuni*; a species of large b. *zako*.

bear, 1. (to carry) *kai*, *shide*, constr. with *da*.

2. (to produce their kind, of animals, trees, plants, etc.) *haifa*, *haife*; to b. in the ear as corn *goyo*.

3. (to endure) *jimri*, (to b. with one) *jimrache*.

beard, n. *geme* (S.); *gemu* (K.), pl. *gema*, or *gyamma* (S.), *gyammai* (K.); b. of goat *rairo*, *vero*.

bearded, a b. man *mai-geme*, pl. *masu-geme*.

beardless, adj. *shagiri*, pl. *shagirai*.

beast, n. *bisa*, pl. *bis Ashe* or *bisaje*, *dābba*, *dābbo*, pl. *dabuna* or *dabbobi*; wild b. *naman daji*, *firdi**; wild beasts *bisashen daji*, *namun daji*.

beat, tr. v. 1. *buga*, *doke*, *duka*, *dirka*, the last is sometimes written *tsirka*, *bada kashi*.

2. to b. down, as earth etc. *taka*, *taki*, *tsaga*, *tsatstsaga*, *dāḡe*.

3. to b. or tread grain *dāka*, intensive form *dādaka*, *swāḡa* (S.), *surfe*, *taki*, *tingama*.

4. to b. a drum *yin wargi*; see **drum**.

5. to b. in war, intr. *yin nasara*, trans. *chi*.

6. to b. in a game *chi*, e.g. *na chi ka* I have beaten you.

beaten, part. adj. in sense of prec. 3. *takakke*, fem. *takakka*, pl. *takakku*.

beating, n. 1. *tsirka, dirka*; see **beat**.

2. *kāshi*, (a defeat in war) *artai*.

3. b. of wings *tāfi* (K.), *tabi* (S.).

beautiful, adj. *da kyau, kyau, mai-kyau, kyaukyawa, kekyawa, kyakkyawa*.

beauty, n. 1. of persons and things *kyawo* or *kyau*.

2. of dress ornaments etc. *ādo, armashi*.

because, conj. *don, chewa**, *domin chewa**, *gama, zama* (S.); *chewa* and *domin chewa* are used in written, but not in colloquial Hausa.

because of, prep. *domin, don, sābada* or *sabad da, sāboda**, *sābo* (K.), *gāma, sabili da, zama* (S.); b. of me *domina*, b. of him *dominsa*.

beckon, v., to b. with the head (in token of assent) *gyada kai*; to b. or shake the head (in token of denial) *kāda kai*; to b. with the hand *yafuche, yafuto*.

beckoning, (with the hand) *yafuchi*.

become, intr. v. (to come to be) *zāma, zam* (S.), *samma**, *kawa**, *sawoya*.

become, intr. v. (to befit, to be proper) *kāmata, kāmache*.

becoming, adj. (lawful, ceremonially right) *halal, halas* or *halata, daidai*; it is b. *ya yi daidai*.

bed, n. *gādo*, pl. *gādaje* or *gādashi, karaga**; to go to b., v. *kwanta*; a b. of mud *dakali, tugufa*; space under a b. in which a fire can be put *tsāriya, tsāri*.

bed-clothes, coll. n. *mayāfi*.

bee, n. *ḡudan zāma* or *ḡudan zummuwa*, pl. *ḡudashenzāma*; the mosquito b. or stingless b. *gāla, galla, rakuwa*; young of b. *gudajen zummuwa*; small bees *sofofuwa*; ground bees *ganya*.

bee-eater, (bird) *tsuntsun hayaki, tsiriyar kogi*.

beef, n. *naman sa, naman sharu*.

beehive, n. *ainya, amya* (K.), *hamya, butumi*, pl. *butuma, burtumi* (S.), *gidan zummuwa*.

beeswax, n. *dankon zummuwa, kakin zummuwa*.

beetle, n., spec. large, black, long-legged b. *gurgunguma, ḡurgunguma, ḡurgunguma, sāri*; the 'plush b.' or 'velvet mite' *ḡaramuski* or *mulufi**; burying b. or dung b. *buzuzu*; click b. *makeri*; blister b. *han-gara*; auger b. or wood borer *kichichiya, gunda*; longicorn

b. or leaf-cutting b. *mage-duwa*; tiger b. (larva) *furau*; water b. *kumbudiyā* (S.), *kumbudewa* (K.).

befall, intr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sama*, *sami*; it befell him *ya same shi*.

befit, intr. v. *kāmata*, *kāmache*.

before, adv. of time *da fari*, *tukun* or *tukuna*, *na dā*, *kaman na dā* or *kamandā*, *wuri*, *da wuri* or *dauri*, *dazu*; in former time *lokachin dā*; see **ever**.

before, conjunctive adv. *gāba*, *kāfin*, b. that *kani**, *kamin*, *kana*, *kan da*, *kan**, e.g. finish this b. (that) you do that *ḡare wannan kana ka yi wanchan*; *tun* and *tun da* are employed with negative clauses, e.g. b. (that) he died he composed a book *tun ba ya mutu ba ya yi wani litafi*; to go b. *gabāta*, *gabāche*, *riḡaya*, he was at the farm b. her *ya riḡa ta gona*.

befriend, tr. v., see **assist**.

beg, v. 1. (to entreat, supplicate) *roḡa*, *yin roḡo*, *biko*.

2. (to ask a thing of, as alms) *bāra*, *yin bāra*, *roḡo*; I b. pardon *ḡafara ma ni* (or *mini*); to b. for help *zukatta**.

beget, tr. v. (of the male) *haiḡe*, *yin da*.

beggar, n. *mai-bāra*, *mai-roḡo*, *maroḡ**, fem. *maroḡiya*, *al-*

majiri, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*, *madāha*, *mauro*, *ḡardi**; spec. an idle b. *mai-kasala*, a b. on the road *masarchi*, a b. who sings a great man's praises *ma'aba*, one who lives by begging food *mai-kwaraka*.

beggar, to wander alone as a b., intr. v. *kasala**.

begging, n. *maroḡachi*, *roḡo*.

begin, v. *fāra*, *yin fāra*, *dora*, *soma* (K.); to b. work *kāma aiki*, *farma**; it cannot be begun *ba shi somuwa*.

beginner, a (i.e. learner) *bami*.

beginning, participial n. *fara-wa*, *farko*, *ta-farko*, *somi*, *masomi*, *mafāri*; from the b. of the world *dāḡa mafarin duniya*.

beguile, tr. v. *ruḡe*; see **deceive**.

behave, intr. v. (to turn out, prove) *zama*, e.g. *na zama da hankali* I shall b. wisely; *maida**.

behaviour, n. (character, conduct) *halī*.

behead, tr. v. *yanke*, *ḡebe kai*.

behind, adv. *baya*, *a baya*, *dāḡa baya*; that which is b. *abin baya*.

behind, prep. *baya*, *baya ga*, with suff. prons. *ḡare*, e.g. b. them *baya ḡare su*.

behold, v. *duba, dubo, gani, tsokachi, yin kallo*, exclam. phr. b. *duba!* b. him or it *ga shi!* b. her or it *ga ta!*

behove, to *kāmache, kāmata*.

belabour, tr. v. *buga*; see **beat**.

belated, to be, i.e. to be late in arriving *yin yauchin zakuwa, makara*.

belch, intr. v. *gyatsa, gyasa, gyashi* (S.).

belief, n. 1. (creed) *addini, imanchi*.

2. (credence) *ban gaskiya*.

believe, v., to b. a fact *gaskata, gaskanta*, to b. a person *bada gaskiya, yin gaskiya* constr. with prep. *ga*; to b. in, esp. to b. in God, *kasada*; I do not b. it *ban karḡa ba*.

believed in, particip. adj. *yardadde*, fem. *yardadda*, pl. *yardaddu*.

believer, n. *mumini*, fem. *mumina*, pl. *muminnai*.

bell, n., small b. attached to horse *gwarje, gwalje, gurje*; small bells on horses' heads *chikasaura, chikasabra, chakasabra, chikasaura*; bells attached to goats etc. *kārau-rawa* or *kararawa*.

bellow, intr. v. *ruri, yin bu*.

bellowing, n. *bu*.

bellows, n. *mafuri, mafurin wuta, zigazigai, zugazugi*; a

man who blows b. *mazigi*; the stick of the b. *maziga*.

belly, n. *kundu*; lower part of b. *māra, chiki*.

belong, intr. v. 1. (to be the property of) *na*, fem. *ta* with the forms of the v. to be, e.g. this book belongs to Hassan *litafin nan na Hasan ne*, the horses b. to the king *dawaki na sariki ne*, that stick belongs to this man *sanda chan ta mutumennan che*, it belongs to me *nawa ne* or *ni ke da shi*.

2. (to be native of) e.g. he belongs to Kano *shi ḡan Kano ne*.

belongings, n. (property) *dukiya*, and in a still more general sense *abubuwa*.

beloved, n. *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu, lele* or *nalele**; a thing b. *abin kamna*.

below, 1. adv. a *ḡasa, a ḡas, baya**.

2. prep. *ḡaḡashin* (S.), *ḡarḡashin* (K.).

belt, n. *abin ḡamre, maḡamre, ḡamāra*, pl. *ḡamāru*; b. for sword *hamila*; see **girdle**.

bench, n. *kujera, kushera*, pl. *kujeru*.

bend, tr. v. *kalmāsa, kalmisa* (S.), *kalmashe, karkāta, gusda, kantara, sunkwiyad da, tanḡosa, tanḡwasa, tanḡware*,

jirga, lauya; spec. to b. the head *kāda kai, kankanda kai, sadakai, karkātā* or *kakartsa** with or without *kunne* (ear) to b. down (the ear) in order to attend to what is said; intr. *dukad da, jirge, kantare, lanḡwashe, lanḡwasa, sunkwiya, duḡa*; see **bent**.

bending, n. *dukawa, laudi*.

beneath, adv. and prep., see below.

beneficial, adj., see seq.

benefit, n. *anfāni*; of b. (beneficial) *da anfāni, mai-anfāni*.

benefit, (confer a b. upon) *anfāna*.

benevolence, n. (an act of b.) *kyauta, abin kyauta, alheri*.

benign, see **kind**.

beniseed, *ridi, lidi*.

bent, adj. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*; b. or tottering, as of a wall, *karkache*, fem. *karkata*, pl. *karkatu*; a b. tree *kwandariya, kondariya**; a man with a b. arm *mai-laushi, maikwarda*, with a b. leg *gwami*, old man with b. back *takoḡo*; it cannot be b. *ba shi tanḡwasawa*.

bent, to be *yin gangare, karkache*.

Benué, the river, pr. n. *Tsāda*, or *ruwan Tsāda*.

benumbed, to be, intr. v.

*kage** or *ḡaga**; my foot is b. *dela ya kama kafata*.

bequeath, to *wasiche**.

bereavement, n. *kewa, kiwa*.

bereft (devoid of) in phrases like b. of sense *maras, rashi*, e.g. *maras-hankali*, b. of shame *maras-kumya*, b. of strength *rashin ḡarifi*; see under *rāsa*.

beseech, v., see **ask**.

beseem, v., see **benefit**.

beside, prep. (at the side of) *wajen, a wajen*; in a looser sense, *kusa ga, tare da*.

besides, prep. *bamda, ban da, baya, bayan, baya ga*.

besprinkle, *buta, yāfa, yafa ruwa*.

best, adj. this can only be expr. by the phr. *ya fi duka, mafi duka*, or *ya fi kowa*; this is the b. of these *wannan mafifichi dāga wa-dannan*; this is the heaviest *wannan ya fi duka nauyi*; he is doing his b. *yana da jimri*; cf. Hausa Gr. p. 75.

betray, tr. v. (to deliver up treacherously) *bashe*; to b. confidence *chin amana*, or *chinye amana*; to b. one another *bada juna*.

betroth, tr. v. *rike, rika, riki*.

betrothal, *riko*.

better, adj. 1. gen. *dama*,

gwama, *gwamma*, e.g. it were b. *ya yi dama*; (superior) *mafifichi* foll. by *daga*, e.g. this is better than that *wannan mafifichi dāga wanchan*, or *wannan ya daḍi wanchan*; *fi*, e.g. it is b. so *ya fi*; *gara*, *gaira*, *guma*, *gwamma*, e.g. it is b. *gara*, it is b. so *gara hāka*, or *gwamma hāka*, it is b. for me to stop *ni gara in tsaya*, rather than I should do this it would be b. to die *da na yi wannan gara in mutu*.

2. a b. state of health is expr. by means of *dama*, *afuwa*, *rangwame*, e.g. to feel b. *jin dama*, *jin rangwame*, to get b. *samu dama*, also by *wartsaka*, b. to-day than yesterday *gwamma yau da jiya*; see Hausa Gr. p. 75.

between, 1. adv. *tsāka*.

2. prep. *tsākan*, *tsākanin*.

3. n. (a space), b. *tsākani*.

bewail, v. 1. intr. *yin kuka*.

2. tr. expr. by 1. with preps. given under on **account** of.

bewailing, 1. particip. n. (the act of b.) *kukawa*.

2. coner. (wail) *kuka*.

beware of, v. *yin hankali*, *tuna*, constr. with prep. *da*,

e.g. b. of that log lest you fall over it *ka tuna da ichen nan kāda ka faḍi bīsa*.

bewilder, tr. v. *dāme*.

bewildered, to be, intr. *dāmu*, *jin damuwa*, *ruḍe*.

bewilderment, n. *damuwa*.

beyond, 1. adv. of place *baya*, *gaba*; (further on, at a distance) *nesa*, *da*, or *dāga* or *na nesa*, e.g. that which lies b. *abin baya*.

2. prep. *baya*, *bayan*, *ketaren*.

3. fig. (surpassing) *faskare*, *fi*, e.g. it is b. me *ya faskare ni* or *ya fi ni*, b. the power of man *ya fi mutum* or *ya fi karfin mutum*.

beyond, to go, v., e.g. he went b. sea *ya ketare gulbi*.

biceps, *kwanduwan hannu*.

bid, n., a b. *tayi*.

bid, v. 1. (to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*.

2. (to offer a price for) *taya*, *tayi*, *yin tayi*.

bier, *mākarai*.

bifurcate (of a path), *birkichi*, *birkita*.

big, adj. 1. (of size) *babba*, pl. *manya*, *ruku-ruku**; also fig. (important), e.g. a b. man *babban mutum* or *mutum babba*, a b. thing *ridimin abu*; to grow b. *garurta*, *gawusta*,

the boy has grown b. *yaro ya gawurta*; full-grown *gawurtache*, pl. *gawurtattu*.

2. (pregnant) *da chiki*, *karambiki*.

3. (pompous, arrogant) *da girman kai*, *mai-homa*, pl. *masu-homa*.

bile, n. *machiwa* (S.).

bill, n. 1. (account) *lisafi* or *lesafi*.

2. (beak, q.v.) *koto*.

bind, tr. v. 1. *damre*, *daure*, *damra*, *darne*, *tanka*, *tanke*, *lamyache* (K.), *sarkafe*; spec. to b. fast *tsuke*; to b. grass with cords so as to form roof *yamche* or *yamchi*.

binding, particip. n. *sarkafewa*; boards or stiff covers for b. books *bango*, *tadarishi*; b. of corn *bambu*.

bird, n. *tsuntsu*, *zunzu**, fem. *tsuntsuwa*, *zunzuwa**, pl. *tsuntsaye*, *zunzaye**. The following are some of the commonest birds in Hausaland: bishop-bird, *dala*, *mulufi*; bustard, the lesser b. *kadabkara*, *kadafkara*, *katakara*, *sokara**; the greater b. *tuje*; crow *shimkake*, a white-backed c. *hankaka*, pl. *hankaki* or *hankaku*; crane, crested c. *gauraka*, *goraka*, *garmaka*, *gamraka*, *kurki**;

cuckoo (lark-heel c. or crow pheasant) *ragon maza*; dove *kurchiya*, *garda*, *bardo*, *hazbiya*, *wala*; eagle *gaggafa*; egret (great white e. or heron) *zarbi*, *zalbi*; little e. *balbela*, *badbila*, *bilbila*; finch *chigoro*, *sisita*, *shaida*, *baiwar Allah*, *zalaidu*; honey-guide *gunda*, *maganiya*; hoopoe *chigi da tuku*, *katu tu*; hornbill *burtu*, *bultu*, *chilikowa*, *ka-ki-ganin-Allah*; ibis (African wood i.) *tsagagi*, *jinjimi*; Hadadah ibis *rara*; partridge (or francolin) *fakara* (K.), *makeruwa* (S.); pigeon *tantabara*, *tandabara*; plover *kyarekyare*, *zakaran yaki*, *zakaran assuba*, *dan raguwa*; black-headed p. or crocodile bird *ladin kogi*; roller or blue jay *chanwaka*, *tsanwaka*; starling *dokin buntu*; glossy s. or grakle *tsakwaikwaiwa*; stilt *taka bado*; stork *shamo*, *shamuwa*, *kasheri*, *mai-jika*, *borintumke*, *babba da jikka*, *tsagagi*, *juhurma*; sun-bird *sha kauchi*; swallow (a species of s.) *tsaitsewa*, *mashirari*; weaver b. *jira*, *kabare*. The following have not yet been identified: a small white diving b. *benema*; a large carnivorous b. *duki*; a yellow-

breasted b. *gado*; a species of sparrow *gora*; a small b. with red plumage which feeds on guinea-corn *marai*; a small singing b. *wali*, *waliya*; a long-beaked water b. *sulbi*; see also *banupiya*, *buwa*, *kajarini*, *kilabtu*.

bird lime, n. *dankon tsunt-suwa*.

bird's-eye, *idon zakara*.

birth, n. 1. (coming into life) *haifuwa*; since your b. *tun haifuwarka* = since you were born.

2. (the act of bringing forth) *haifuwa*, *jego*.

3. an untimely b. *ba-kwaini*, *harin chiki*.

birth, to give b. to, tr. v. *haifa*, *haife*, *yin jegu*.

birth, a woman about to give b. to a child *karambiki*.

birthday, n. *rana ta haifuwa*, *ranan haifuwa*.

birthplace, n. *mahaifa**, phr. *wurin da aka haifa*.

biscuits, *akara**.

bishop-bird, or **cardinal-bird**, *dala*, *mulufi*.

bit, n. 1. (of a horse) *lizami*, *linzami*, *lizzami* (S.); the strap tied to a b., n. *kamazuru*.

2. (small piece, fragment) *gutsura*, pl. *gutsatsari*.

bitch, n. *kariya*.

bite, n. *chizo*; b., e.g. of a scorpion *dani*; b. of a snake *sari*.

bite, tr. v. *chizo*, *yin chizo*, *chije* (followed by pron. obj.); of snakes etc. (to sting) *sara*, *taba*, *halbi*, *tama* (S.); to b. off *gatsa*, *zabta*; to b. at *gurgura*; to seize with the teeth *tasamma*, *tasoma* (S.).

bitter, adj. *da dwachi*, *da dachi*, *yamama*, *yanyanna*, *da yami*, *madachi*; to make b. or to be b. *tsamama*.

bitterness, n. *dwachi*, *dachi*.

bivouac, on a field of battle *kwanandaga*.

black, adj. *baki*, fem. *baka*, pl. *babbaku*; very b. *baki kirin* (or *kerin*), *baki wur*; a b. horse *akawali*, *kiyara*, *chichiro*.

blacken, intr. v. (to become or turn b.) *zama baki*, *sauya baki*, *babake**; tr. (to make black) *babaki**.

blackish, *baki-baki*.

blackness, *bakintaka*.

blacksmith, n. *mai-kira*, *ma-keri*, fem. *makeriya*, pl. *ma-keri*; the fem. = a blacksmith's wife.

bladder, n. *mafitsara*, *jika**.

blade, n. 1. (of corn etc.) *kara*, pl. *karare*, *tofo*, *fofo*, *zangare*, *zangarniya*.

2. (of knife) *karifen wuka*.

3. (broken b. of sword) *ku-duru**.

blame, n. 1. (finding fault, re-proof) *foro, tsawa, harasa, rarauka* (K.), *zarge*.

2. (fault, guilt) *laifi*.

blame, tr. v. 1. (to reprove, check) *yin tsawa*.

2. (to impute guilt) *bada laifi*.

blameless, adj. *maras-laifi, babu laifi*.

blanket, n. *bargo, burgo, luru, kuntu**, *kuntukuru**.

blaspheme, v. *yin alfasha, yin swaḥon Allah*.

blasphemy, n. *alfasha magana, ma'asi**.

bleaching, chalk used for, n. *alli*.

bleat, intr. v. *kāra* and gen. *yin kuka, yin bu*.

bleating, n. *bu, kāra*.

bleed, v. intr. *tsaga* or phr. *zubda jini*; tr. *fitā jini* or *fidda jini*, constr. with prep. *ma*.

bleeding, particip. adj., see **bloody**.

bleeding sickness, n. *tsagiya*; b. from nose *hābo*.

blemish, n. 1. material or physical b. *aibi, aibu*, pl. *aibobi, aibu, lāhani*; e.g. a b. in the eye *lāhaniga ido*; b., e.g. a spot of different colour in cloth etc. *sōfāne, sōfāni, surfani*.

2. moral b. *aibu*.

bless, v. *barka, albarka* used with *yi* or *wa*, e.g. he blessed *ya wa albarka*; *albarkata, kyautaye*.

blessing, n. *albarka, salati**.

blight, e.g. on corn *domana, mando*.

blighted, adj. applied to corn *kupturu, kūturu* (S.), see *birtuntuna*.

blind, adj. *makafo*, pl. *makafi*; a b. person *makāfo*, fem. *makafuwa* (S.), *makauniya* (K.), pl. *makāfi*; *makabta* (S.), *makanta* (K.).

blind, tr. v., to make b. *makanta*; intr. to become b. *makaŋche, makamche, makaŋche*.

blindness, n. *makanta, makanta, makopchi, makabche, makabchi*.

blink, intr. v. *rumtse, rumtsi, runtsa* (S.).

blinkers, leathern b. for a horse *furtali*.

blinking, n. *kifil kifil*.

bliss, n. *ni'ima**.

blister, n. 1. i.e. something to cause blistering *farsa*.

2. of the skin *sali, swali, swale, bororo*.

blister, v. 1. tr. *farcha*.

2. intr. (to be blistered) *yin sali*.

block, e.g. of salt or potash *baura* (S.); b. of wood *firde*.
blood, n. *jini*; b. letting *jiniya*, *jirfa*, *jarfa*, *majinachiya*.
blood-feud, *tarna*.
bloody, adj. (bleeding or blood-stained) *da jini*; his face was all b. *fuskassa duka sai jini*.
blossom, n. *fure*, pl. *furori* or *furaye*.
blot, n., e.g. of ink *dole*, *dangwale*; to make a b. *dardasa*.
blot out, v. *yin maimai*, *shashafe*.
blow, n. gen. *buga*, *kādi*, *rotse*, *roche*; a b. esp. in boxing *dambe*, *tika*, a b. in fighting *fāda*, pl. *fādodi*, a b. with hand *mari*, pl. *marumari*, or *maremare*, *bugu*, *bugo*, a hard b. causing wound or swelling *rotsi*, *rochi* (S.), pl. *ratsa*, a b. in punishment fig. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.—To strike or give blow or blows, v. gen. *buga*, intens. *bubbuga* or *bugabuga*; *mari* or *mare* with intens. participial n. *marmarawa*; *rochi*, *rotsa*, *wulakanta*, *tsamki*, *daka* with intens. forms *daddaka* and *dandaka*; a b. with clenched fist *dundu*, *naushi*, I gave him a b. that left its mark *na yi ma sa rotsi*, the sound of a b. *kumus* (S.).

blow, v. 1. tr. *būsa*, *dābar*, *yin dābar*, e.g. the trumpeter blew the trumpet *mai-būsa ya būsa kafo*; to b. away *bushe*.

2. intr. *būsa*, e.g. the wind used to b. all night *iska ta kan būsa dare duka*; spec. to b. the fire under a cooking pot *girke*, *girki*; to b. water out of the mouth *tuddas*; to b. a fire *zuga*, *fura*, e.g. b. up the fire with the bellows *ka fura wuta da mafuri*; to b. up, e.g. an empty bag *yin bokoko*, to b. up a bag *fūra salka*; to b. about *jaķe*.

blowing, n. *būsa*, e.g. the b. of the trumpet, wind, etc. *būsan kafo*, *būsan iska*; b. of water out of the mouth *tudaswa*.

blown upon, i.e. dried, adj. *būsashe*.

blue, n. *shuni* or *juni**, *dāfuwa*.

blue, adj. *shuđi*, fem. *shuđiya*, pl. *shuđodi*, *da shuni* or *da juni**, *dāfāfi*; spec. b. cloth *shiyodi*, *turkuđi*, *saki*, *swaki*; light b. *shuđi-shuđi*; a b. stone *kaule*; a dark b. thread *nati*.

blue, to be, intr. v. *saki**, *soki** or *swaki**; to stain the face b. *dambara*; to dye b. *shuđa*, *shiyuđa*.

bluff, *alwāshi*.

blunder, see *mistake*.

blunt, adj. *da laushewa*; in the sense of devoid of edge *babu kaiſi*.

blunt, to be, v. *dallashe, dallishi, dakushe, yin dakūsa*.

bluntness, n. (of a knife) *taderishi, laushiwa, dakūsa*.

boar, the wild, n. *alhanzir, hanzir, gyado*, fem. *gyadainya*, pl. *gyadodi* or *gyaduna*.

board, n. (plank) *faskare*; to make into boards *yin faskare*, coll. boards *karauki*, boards for binding books *tadarishi**.

boast, v. *gawurta, gawusta, yin kurari, yin rāha, ruba*.

boaster, n. *mai-foma*, pl. *masu-foma, mai-homa, mai-tama*, pl. *masu-tama*; b. in war *gugirma*.

boasting, n. *foma, homa, tama, alfahari, alwāshi, fari, fariya, kurari*.

boat (i.e. canoe), n. *jirigi* or *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.

boatman, n. *mai-jirigi*, pl. *masu-jirigi*.

bobbin, *mātāri*.

body, *jiki*, pl. *jikuna*.

body-guard, one of the king's, n. *zarumi, zaromi, zarmi* or *jarimi*, pl. *zarumai*.

boil, n. *kurji, kureji*, pl. *kurareji, kuraje; kirchi, gurje, girje, hambaroki, maruru*.

boil, v. tr. or intr. *tafasa, yin*

tafasa, tafasu, tafashe, taso; it is boiling *ana tafasa*.

boiled, past part., *tafasashshe*, fem. *tafasashiya*, pl. *tafasassu*.

boiling, n. *taswa*; the rise and fall of b. water *habuma, hambuma*.

bold, adj., see **brave**.

bolt, v., to b. food *rushe* (K.).

bolt, see **lock**.

bone, n. *kashi*, pl. *kasussuwa* or *kassa*; back-b. *kashin tsotso*; bones in a fish *kayar kifi*; shin-b. *kōbri, kwabri, kwauri* (K.), *kūbri*, pl. *kwabruka*; hip-b. *kwankwasso*; marrow-b. *tantakwashi, tantakoshi*.

bone-setter, *mai-dori*.

book, n. *litāfi, letāfi*, pl. *litātafi*, or *litattaffai*, or *litattaffaye*; *takarda**, pl. *takardu**, *kundi*, pl. *kundaye, dan kundi, kitāba**; leathern case for a b., n. *gafaka, gafakka*, or *gufaka* (S.); large thick b., n. *sufuri, sufili*; page of a b., n. *warka, waraka*; stiff covers for a b., n. *tadarishi**, *bango*, pl. *bangaye* or *banguna*.

book-marker, n. *alama* or *halama*, pl. *alamomi, amara*.

boot, n. *kubuta**; spec. long leathern b. *safe*, high riding b. *karufa, kurufa, kurfa*, long riding b. with spurs

kufita, kufuta, pl. *kufitai, kufutai*.

booth, n. *bukka*, pl. *bukkoki*; *sayi*, pl. *sayoyi*.

booty, n. *abin kwache*.

border, n. 1. of a country *iyaka*.

2. silk b. on woman's dress *hashiya*.

3. b. of cloth *lafe, lafi*.

bore, tr. v. *fuda, fude, buda, huda, yin rarake*.

boring, n. *fudi, rarake*.

born, pass. part. *haifaffe*, fem. *haifaffa*, pl. *haifaffu*.

borrow, tr. v. *yin äro, ramta, yin ramche*, e.g. I did not b. much money *ban yi ramchen kurdi dayawa ba*; to b. money *chin bashi*.

borrower, n. *mai-chin bashi, mai-daukan bashi*.

bosom, n. *gaba*, pl. *gabobi, kirji*, pl. *kirjai, kiraza*.

both, 1. adj. *biyu*, e.g. b. of them *duka biyu* or *su biyu*; this may also be expr. by *däga wannan sai wannan*.

2. conj. *da*, e.g. b...and *da...da*.

bottle, n. *tasa* or *dasa**, pl. *ta-soshi, kwalaba, kwaliba*; *tulu*, pl. *tuluna, dalulu*; small earthenware b. *buta*, water b. calabash *kurtu, burmi, gyandama*, skin water b. *salka* or *salka*, pl. *salkuna*,

scent b. *wakiya, wakiyya*; a large leathern b. for holding butter *giwan basa*; a small skin b. *tandu*.

bottom, 1. (the lowest part or foundation) *gutsu, kalkashi, gato*, e.g. b. of a fence *gaton darni, gindi*.

2. (buttocks) *gato, gindi*.

bough, n. *reshe, refe* (S.), *rehe, refo*, pl. *rassu, rassa, raffu, refuna*; see **branch**.

bound, intr. v. (to leap up or forward) *tuma*.

bound, past part. 1. (tied up, fastened with a band) *dam-rarre*, pl. *damrarru, aka damre, faskarari**.

2. fig. (obliged, required) *wajib, wajibi* with *ne* or *ke*, e.g. we are b. to go to the war *wajibi ne mu tafi yäki*.

boundary, n. *iyaka, gayya*, or *gaya* (K.), *kaida, makarin kasa, matuka*.

bow, n. (i.e. the weapon) *bäkä*, pl. *bäkuna*, b. and arrows *bäkan kibiya*; to discharge a b., v. *halbi* or *harbi*; b. for cleaning cotton *bäkan shiba*.

bow, 1. intr. v. (to incline the head in salutation) *yin äfi, duka* (S.).

2. (to b. down as in the native prostration) *yin äfi, gurfana, yin gurfane rusuna, sujada*.

3. to b. or stoop *sunkwiya*, *sunkuya*, *sunkurya* (K.), *kurda* (S.), *duka*.

4. (to b. the head down or sideways in order to listen) *karkata* or *kakartsa*.

bowels, n. *hanji*.

bowing, n., i.e. so as to touch the ground with the forehead *sujada*, *sajada*, *alkafura*; see **bow**.

bowl, n. *tāsa*, pl. *tāsoshi*, *gidawuniya*, *gwongwon*, *kata**.

bow-legged, *chassa*.

bowman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *malhalba* or *masu-halbi*.

bowstring, n. *tsirkiya*, *tsarkiya*, *chirkiya*, *igiyar baka*.

box, n. *akodi*, *akwati*, *sanduki*, or *sanduki*, pl. *sandukai*, *mai-sutura**; spec. a small skin b., e.g. for snuff *batta*, pl. *battochi*; *barta*, pl. *bartochi*; small glass b. for frankincense *lulu*.

box, v. *dambe*, *nausha*, *naushe*, *nushe*, *dankwasa*, *dankwashe*.

boxer, *dan dambe*.

boxing, n. *naushi*, *dambe*.

boy, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*, *yaraye*, *yaye* or *yayaye*; spec. b. who is third or fourth child, the previous children being all girls *tanko**.

boyishness, n. *halin yaro*.

bracelet, n. *tagula*, *tagulla*,

tugula, *tagura*, *munduwa*, pl. *mundaye*.

brackishness, *zartsa*.

braid, to *tufka*, *tubka*, *tupka* (K.), *tumka* (S.); see **plait**.

• **brains**, n. coll. *kwalluwa*, *kwa-kwalluwa*, *kokolwa*.

branch, n., of trees *reshe*, *refe* (S.), *refo*, pl. *refuna*, *raffu*; spec. small b. *hamso**, b. stripped of leaves *kututture*, *kututturo*, *kututturu*; withered branches coll. *kwabraka*; thin bending b. *tsumanjiya*.

brass, n. *jan karife*, *farin karife*, *gachi*, *janjache*.

brave, adj. *mazakuta*, *da zuchiya* *babba*, *mai-zuchiya*, *mai-karifin zuchiya*.

bravery, n. *mazakuta*, *mazakunta*, *mazakunchi*, *tasiri* (S.), *zarumta*.

bray, intr. v. (of the ass) *bir-bira*, *barbara*, *yin kugi*.

bray, tr. v. (to beat small, pound) *daka*.

bread, n. (made of wheat) *gurasa*.

breadth, n. *fādi*, *faski**.

break, v. 1. tr. *chiri*; *fāsa*, *fāso*, *pāsa*, *fashe*, *pashe*, *palshe*; *kariya*, *kariyi*, *karye*; *kalle* (K.), *rotsa*, *roshe*, *rosa*, *tsinke*, *tsunke*; to keep breaking *tsuntsunke*.

2. fig. to b. a promise *sāki*

alkawali or *warwari alka-wali*.

3. fig. intr. of the day, daylight or morning, see dawn.

4. tr. with various modifications of meaning: to b. open *ribe*, *falke* (S.); to b. to pieces *farfasha* or *pal-pashe* (intens. forms of *fashe*, *pashe*), *rugunguza**, *fanfatsa*; to b. off *kudure*; to b. up *kakkariya*, *karereya*, *rusad da*, *ḡalgache*, *kaririye* intensive forms of *kariya*; to b. up again *dandaka* intensive form of *daka*; to b. off *katse*.

5. to b. a horse *birga*, *burga*.

6. to b. the law *tāka shari'a*.

breakage, *aras*, a sound as of b. *garan-garan*, *kilin-kilin*.

breakfast, n. *kalachi*, or *karin kumallo* (also = midday meal), *kariyan azumi*, *sahur*, *suhur*.

breaking, participial n. *kari-yewa*.

breakwater, to hold water back by a b. *datse*; a b. used for catching fish *gandō*, *tāshi* (S.).

breast, 1. (bosom) *kirji*, pl. *kiraza*, *kirijai*, *gaba*.

2. (b. of mother or dam) *māma*, *nono*, pl. *nonuna*, *nonuye* or *nonna*.

breath, shortness of, n. *fuka*; to hold the b. *ḡauki lumfashi*.

breathe, intr. v. *lumfasa* (S.), *numfasa* (K.), to b. heavily *ḡauki lumfashi*, *yin sheda*, I b. hard *na yi fuka*.

breathing, n., heavy b. *lum-fashi*, *numfashi*, *lumfastu*, *sheda*, *habumia**, *hambuma*.

breed, v. *ba ḡiya*, *yin ḡiya*, *haifi*, *haife*, *haifu*.

brethren, n. *yan-uwa*; my b. *yan-uwana*.

bribe, n. *toshi*; b. given to a judge *fila* or *hila*, *kirsa*, *ri-shiwa*.

bribe, tr. v. *chidacheto**.

brick, n. (made of mud) *tubali*, *kunḡu* (S.), pl. *kunḡaye*; a grass used for making bricks *ramno* (S.), *rauno* (K.).

bricks, to make, v. *yin tubali*.

bride, n., specially applied to the latest wife *amariya*; the state of a bride *amarchi*; the friend of a b. *kāwa*.

bridegroom, n. *ango*, pl. *anguna* or *angaye**; a feast for a b. and his friends *ambaru-wa*, *sansambi*; a dowry or a gift given to a bride *sadaki*.

bridge, n. *kadarko*.

bridle, n. *lizami*, *lizzami*, *lizani*, *linzami*; a strap round horse's head fastened to b. *maraya*; a brass appendage to a b. *peluwa*; head of a b. *kwalkwada*, *kwalkwali*.

brigand, n. *mafashi*; pl. only, *masu-tari*.

bright, adj. *fari*, fem. *fara*, pl. *farari* or *farufaru*; *farifat*, *da tachi*, *tachache*, pl. *tachachu* or *tatattu*; b. as silver *tangarai*, the last also = unclouded.

brightness, *tachi*, *tāshi*.

brim, n. *burbishi*; up to the b. *fau*, e.g. it was filled to the b. *ya hau fau*, *ya tashi fau*.

brimstone, n. *faral wuta*, *ki-brit**, *kaule**.

bring, tr. v. *kawo*, *kayo*, *kai*; zo constr. with *da* (lit. come with), e.g. he brought the book *ya zo da litafi*; spec. modifications are to b. back (i.e. to restore) *maida*, *tumbe*; to b. forth *fito da*; (to give birth to) *haifi* or *haife*; to b. forward (to adduce) *kai* or *kawo*, e.g. b. proof *kai shaida*, they would b. forward a reason *su kan kawo dalili*; to b. near to the speaker, also simply b. here or b. near *karwo*; to b. together *gabato*, *jawo*; to b. up (to nurse, educate) *gwoiyo*, *reno*; to b. up a child or animal whose parent is dead *tallafi*; to take and b. *tareyo* or *tariyo*; to b. together *jibche*, *jibta*, *tara*.

bringing, participial n. *kawowa*.

brinjal, (tomato) *gauta*.

brink, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*.

brittleness, *aras*, *gaushi*, *gau-tsi*.

broad, adj. *fādi*, *da faski*, *bikiki*, *tafkeke*.

broadcast, adv. *a zube*.

brocade, n. *dibajo*, *kambori**; white cotton b. *samasadowa*.

broil, tr. v. *soya* or *suya*.

broiled, past part. *soyayye* or *soyeye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

broken, past part. *fasashe*, pl. *fāsassu*, *kararre*, *matache**, or *matache*, fem. *matachiya* or *matatta*, pl. *matattu*, e.g. a b. vessel *matattar kwariya*, *mara**.

broken, to be b. up, v. *wariwari*, *wariwari* or *wawari*.

broker, n. *dilāli* or *dillabi*, *ḍan baranda*; to act as b. *yin dilāli*, or *yin dilanchi*; broker's commission, cf. seq.

brokerage, n. (fee or commission as intermediary in sales) *la'ada*, *ladda*; if the price paid is to be *la'ada chiki* (b. included) the seller pays the b. (usually 5 p.c.), if *la'ada waje* (exclusive of b.) the buyer pays the b.

brood, n. coll. (offspring) *ḍiya*,

in a wide or general sense
iri, pl. *irare*, q.v.

brook, n. *rafi*, pl. *rafuna* or
rafafuka.

broom, *mashari**, *tsintsiya*;
see **brush**.

broom-weed, sweet b.-w.
roma fada.

broth, n. *miya*, *romuwa* (S.),
romo (K.), *kalu**; b. made
from fruit of *ḍorowa* tree
daddawa, *daudawa*.

brother, n. *ḍan-uwa*; used as
an expression of regard in
addressing others (usually
with suff. pron. *na*)=brother!
or dear friend! *ḍan-uwana*,
pl. *yan-uwana* or *yan uwa*,
shikiki, *shakiki*; elder b. *wa*,
pl. *yeye*; younger b. *kāne*,
pl. *kannai*, or *ḵanne*.

brotherhood, *ḵanenchi*.

brow, n. (forehead) *goshi*; he
bent his b. or knit his brows
(= he frowned) *ya ḍamre*
(*gintse* or *jirkita*) *fuskassa*.

bruise, n. *rauni*, *targade*.

bruise, tr. v. *falfasa*.

brush, n. *tsintsiya*, *abin shara*,
mashari.

brush, tr. v. (i.e. to sweep with
a broom or b.) *shara*, *share*,
shache, *kaḵe*; to b. thoroughly
kakkabe; to b. the hair *shafa*
gashi.

brushing, *tsifa*.

buck, n. prefix *namiji*, e.g. b.
antelope *namijin barewa*; b.
goat *bunsuru*, pl. *bunsurai*;
water b. *gwambaza*; reed b.
ḵaji, *ḵeji*, *kwantarafi*.

bucket, n. *guga*, pl. *guguna*,
ḵwariyar guga; a leather b.
wāsaki.

bucking, e.g. of a horse or
donkey *tutsu*, *butdari*.

buckle, n. *maḵalli*.

bud, intr. v. *yin gunda*, *yin*
tofo, *kumpsa**.

bud, n. *gunda*.

buffalo, n., dwarf b. or bush-
cow *ḵauna*, pl. *ḵakane*, or
ḵaunaye; *kutunkun ḵauna*.

buffalo-horn, (plant) *magari-*
yar kura.

buffet, v. *buga*, *dambe*.

bug, n. *kazunzumi*, *gazunzumi*
(S.), *kudi*.

build, tr. v. *gina*, *kafa*; the
former is also spec. applied
to construction of roads, the
latter to that of roof etc.
with beams: *kasantada**.

builder, *magini*.

building, a, n. *garu**.

built, past part. *ginanne*, pl.
ginannu.

bull, n. 1. (male of horned
cattle) *sa*, *bajimi* (S.), *bajini*
(K.), *bijimi*, *bishimi*, *kinna*;
spec. large (castrated) b. *bur-*
tumi, *furtumi*; b. for carrying

loads *takar-kari*, pl. *takar-karai*.

2. gen. (male of any large animal) *toro*, pl. *toranni*, *torone*, e.g. bull elephant *toron giwa*; *toro* with omission of *giwa* is often specially applied to the male elephant = *namijin giwa*.

bullet, n. *harsashe*, pl. *harsasai*; *harsa* (S.), pl. *harsashi*, *dutsim bindiga*; see **cart-ridge**.

bulrush, *shalla*.

bunch, n. (e.g. a b. of flowers) *dāme* or *dami*, pl. *dāmuna* or *damma*, *dunji*.

bundle, *dāme*, *dami*, *dunji*, *gwallo*; to place in bundles *yin jeni*.

burden, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayaki*.

burdensome, adj., see **heavy** and **troublesome**.

burial, abstr. n. *biso*, *bizni*, *birni*.

burial-cloth, native, n. *zugu*; see **winding-sheet**.

burial-place, n. *makwanche*, *wurin bizne*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin kusheyi*, *kusheya*.

burn, v. 1. tr. *kona*, *kone*, *ḡuna*, *soya*, *suya*, *surya*, *toyī*, *towī*, *toya*, *tuya*; to b. up completely *konkone*, spec. to b. with a hot iron *lalas**.

2. intr. *ḡuna*, *ḡone*; fig. of

desire etc., the heart burned *zuchiya ta ḡuna*.

burning, particip. adj. *maifūra*, *ḡonewa*; b. disease *ḡona* or *ḡuna**; a smell of b. *ḡarni*, *ḡasni*, *ḡaur*.

burnous, *alkyabba*, pl. *alkyabbu*.

burnt, past part. *ḡonanne*, fem. *ḡonanna*, pl. *ḡonannu*; spec. b. food, n. *ḡamzo*, *ḡanzo*; b. all over, adv. *ḡurmus**.

burrow, to *raraka*, *raruke*.

burst, v. tr. and intr. *f Ashe*, *pashe*; bursting out laughing *fashewa da dariya*; sounds of bursting (onomatopœic) *fus*; to b. open *tsiyayye* (K.).

bury, tr. v. *bizne*, *bisne*, *birna*, *bīsa*, *bīshe*, *binne**, *turbude*, *turumbude**; spec. to b. in the earth as locusts do their eggs *turbude*.

burying-place, n. see **burial-place**.

bush, n. spec. thorny b. *ḡwab-dodo*, *ḡaudodo*, *sarḡakīya*; thick-foliaged b. used as food *sukuki**; b. in the sense of uncultivated forest land *daji*, *rukuki*; b. in sense of scrub or farm b. *jeji*, *ḡunchi*, *ḡumchi*.

bush-buck, lesser b. or 'harnessed antelope' (i.e. *Tragelaphus scriptus*) *mazo*, *ganjar*.

bush-cat, see **cat**. |

bush-cow, or dwarf buffalo
ḥauna, pl. *ḥakane*, *ḥaunaye*.
business, n. 1. (trade, com-
 merce) *chiniki*, *shāgali*, pl.
shagulla (S.), or *shagulgula*
 (K.), *bukāta*, *sha'ani*; to do
 b. *yin shāgali*; to do b. with
yin da.

2. gen. (= concern) *bukata*;
 also, in neg. and interrog.
 sentences, *ruwa*, e.g. it is no
 b. of mine *ba ruwana* or *babu*
ruwana, what b. is it of yours
ina (lit. where?) *ruwanku*?
 go about your b. *ka tafi*
abinka; minding one's own
 b. *sha'ani*; mind your b.
shiga sha'aninka; he went
 about his b. *ya yi zamansa*.

3. (affair or thing) *abu*, e.g.
 a bad b. *abin mugu*.

bustard, the lesser b. *kadab-*
kara, *kadafkara*, *sokara**;
 the greater b. *tuji*.

busybody, *mai-kwarmato*.

but, 1. adversative conj. *amma*;
da is at times found where
 the opposition is not (as with
amma) explicit and logical,
 e.g. but are you able to do
 this? *da kana iya yin haka?*
*fache**, *balshe**, *bari dai*.

2. exceptive prep. and conj.
sai, e.g. a woman's entire
 body ought to be strictly
 concealed but the soles of

her feet and her eyes *jikin*
mache duk yi al'aura ya ke
sai ko matakai sai ido; those
 who love thee can but salute
 again *masowa naka sai kuma*
salmawa; neg. there is no
 health in it, nothing but
 sickness *babu lafiya chiki*
nata sai chiwuta; there is
 often an idiomatic ellipsis
 before *sai*, e.g. the whole
 street was nothing but water
dukan kasuwa sai ruwa,
 nothing but blood *sai jini*;
 in this way is to be explained
 the phr. *sai lafiya*, i.e. no-
 thing but well, i.e. quite
 well. The expr. *bamda* or
banda may = English but, e.g.
 put nothing in the pot but
 meat *kada ku sa komi chikin*
tukunya bamda nama where
sai nama would be equally
 correct.

butcher, n. *mafauchi*, *mahau-*
chi, pl. *mahauta*.

butcher, tr. v., i.e. to slaughter
 animals in technical sense
yin fawa.

butcher-bird (shrike), *bam-*
bami.

butchery, n. tech. (slaughter-
 ing of animals) *fawa*.

butt, intr. v. *kāra*, *yin kāro*,
tunkwiya, *tunkuda*, e.g. the
 two goats are butting each

other *awaki su biyu suna tunkuda junansu* or *da juna*.

butter, n. 1. gen. whether animal or vegetable *mai*.

2. cow b. *main shanu*, *dunguli*, *dungule*, *turde*; a large leathern bottle for holding b. *giwan basa*.

butterfly, n. *bamota* or *bama-wuta*, *kwalkwala*, *kilikili*, *kilkili*; the expr. *litāfin Allah* (writing of God), or *dokin Allah* (God's horse) is often used to designate the butterfly; cf. *tadarwal Allah*, *malam bude litafinka*.

butter-tree, n. the shea-butter tree (*Bassia Parkii*) *kaḍanya*; shea-butter, i.e. its thick butter-like oil, *main kaḍanya*, *main kade*, or *man kade*.

butting, n. *kāro*, *tūni*, *tunk-wiyi*.

buttock, n. *gato*.

button, n. *makubli* or *makulli*, pl. *makublai*, *mabantari* (K.), *mabantali* (S.), *maḅallen riga*, *anini**.

buy, v. *saya*, *sayi*, *saye*, *sai*; to b. and bring back *sayo*; to be bought *sayu*.

buyer, n. *mai-saye*, pl. *masu-saye*.

buying, *sayi*; espec. wholesale b. *fāja*; b. and selling *saye da sayarwa*, or *saye da sayaswa*.

buzz, n. *amo*; b. of bees *ḷugi*, *ḷogi*.

buzz, intr. v. *amo* or *yin amo*.

by, 1. prep. instr. (with) *da*, e.g. he was struck by an arrow *aka halbe shi da kibiya*.

2. prep. loc. (near) *kusa*, *kusa da*, or *kusa ga*, e.g. by the shore of the pool *kusa ga bakin gulbi*; (along by) *baya*, e.g. we walked by the town *mun yi yawo bayan birni*.

3. prep. distributive, e.g. by fours *fudu fudu*, by tens *goma goma*.

4. adv. (near) *kusa*.

by-and-by, *an jima* and *zuwa zuwa*.

byword, cf. her character became a b. *halinta ya zama sara*.

cackle, intr. v. *yin karkara*.

cackling, n. *kyarkyara*, *kirkira*.

cactus, a prickly *Euphorbia* with c.-like habit and milky juice *tinya*, *tunya*, *kyarana*.

cadger, *bakanchi*, *maichile*, *masha-chile*.

cage, n. *akurke*, *akurki*, pl. *akurkai*, *gidan tsuntsuwa*; a cage for fowl (a hencoop) *akurkin kaza*.

cake, n., c. of rice or guinea-corn *waina* (K.), *tsala*, *tsaliya* (K.), *tswala* (S.), *māsa* (Zaria);

c. of wheat flour and honey *fankasu*; c. of bean flour and oil *soto*; c. made from beans of the *dorowa* tree *daddawa*; c. of oil, honey and rice or wheat *tsatsafa*, *bankuru*, *bakuru*, *kosai*, *shashaka*.

calabash, n. *gora*, pl. *gorina*, *kwariya*, *burmi*, *gyandama*, *maburmi*, *muburmi*; spec. small c. *kumbu*; long-necked c. used as water-bottle *kurtu*, *kortu*; c. finger-basin *kwachiya*; c. strainer *rariya*; a small c. placed in a water pot to prevent water spilling when carried *magumki*, *gumkaruwa*.

calamity, n. (distress, adversity) *tsiya*, *masifa*, *mayāta*, *wahala*; a c. (a distressing or adverse thing or event) *abin mugu* or *mugun abu*.

calculate, v. (to compute, reckon) *yin kidaya*, *kilga*, *kirga*, *yin lisafi*.

calculation, n. 1. (act of computing or reckoning) *kidaya*, *kida*, *kididdiga*.

2. (sum or amount reached by c.) *kidaya*, *kida*, *kididdiga*. *lisafi*, the last commonly applied to accounts, bills, etc.; beyond c. (incalculable, innumerable) *sun fi kidaya*.

caldron, n. *tukunya*.

calf, n. 1. (young of large animal) *da*, connective *dan*, pl. *yaya* or *ya*, connect. *yayan* or *yan*, coll. pl. *diya*, connect. *diyar*.

2. (young of cow) *marāki*, fem. *marāka*, pl. *maruka* or *marukka*; spec. a young female c. *karsana*.

calf, n., i.e. of the leg *dambubu*, *tukatukai** (K.).

calico, n. *alkāmura*; white c. for making tobés *mahamudi*, *alawayo* (S.).

call, tr. v. (to summon) *kira*, *kiraya*, *kiraye*; to c. or summon to where the speaker is, and also simply to c. *kirawo*; to c. in the sense of to name *kira suna*; 'called,' i.e. named or entitled is expressed thus: a man called Bube *wani mutum sunansa Bube*, a great man who was called the Madaki *baba ana che da shi Madaki*; calling out, verbal n. *kira*; one who calls to prayer *makiran salla*.

callous, *dakanta*.

calm, n. (absence of wind, still weather) *natsu*, *natso*, *natsuwa*, *nitso*, *nitsuwa*, also used fig. in the sense of relaxation or rest.

calm, tr. v. (to appease) *lallashi* or *lillashi*, *sanyaya*.

caltrop (plant), *tsaidau, tsidau, dayi*; water c. *gyadar ruwa*.

calumniate, v. *chim-baya, rada**.

calumny, n. *chimbaya, rada*.

camel, n. *rakumi*, fem. *rakuma*, pl. *rakumma*; the female c. *taguwa*, pl. *taguwai, taguwoyi*; spec. large male c. *amale*; a two-humped camel *aturkumami*, f. *aturkumama*; a running c. *jeraya*; the constellation of the C. *taguwa*.

camp, n. 1. (halting ground of travellers etc.) *zango*, pl. *zanguna*.

2. (in the military sense) *sansani*; camping-place, n. *wurin sabka* or *sapka*.

camphor, n. *kāfur*.

camwood, *majigi*.

can, auxiliary v. *iya*, also *samu*; he could not enter *ba ya samu ya shiga*; with passives a *iya* may be employed, e.g. it cannot be lifted *ba a iya a dauke shi*.

cancel, to c. an agreement *warware*.

cane, n. 1. *gora*, pl. *gorina*; spec. water-cane *burgu*; sort of bamboo c. *kwangi, kwagiri*; sugar c. *takanda, rake*.

2. (walking-stick) *sanda*, pl. *sanduna, kulki*.

cannibal, n. 1. *jan-maye, mai-chin mutane*.

2. c. people, or tribe *yam-yam, nyamnyam*.

cannon, n. *madafa**, *agwa*.

canoe, n. *jirigi, abara**, *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*; c. cover *rumpa, komi** (S.), *rumfa*; c. paddles *filafile* or *fulafule*; c. paddle used as a rudder *matuki*; a c. pole *gwangwala**, *kwangwala*.

canoe, to paddle a c., v. *tuka*, the participial n. of which is *tukawa*.

canter, n. *hammadanchi*.

canter, intr. v. *zugurubtu, jigeribti, jigribti, kwakkwafa*.

cantle, of a saddle *kwachiar baya*.

cap, n. *tagiya*; spec. a white c. worn inside fez *fūla*, pl. *fuluna*; a blue or black c. *fūla saki*; c. of red cloth with tassel (fez) *fuladdara, fulandara, faladara*; a c. with two flaps to cover the ears *hāḥal kāda*.

cape, made of palm fibre *kabido, kabudo*.

capsicum, *barkono*.

capture, tr. v. 1. (to catch or take, of prisoners, slaves) *kama, kankama, same*.

2. (to conquer, get dominion over a city or people) *chi*, e.g. he conquered the people, the

king was captured *ya chisu aka kama sariki*; to c. and bring back *chiwo*.

caracal, (lynx) *dage*.

caravan, n. *ayari*; the chief of a c. *jaji*; head-man of a c., who walks behind it *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*; guide or forerunner of a c. *jāgāba* or *shūgaba*; the tax paid by a c. for permission to travel *kurdin boda*, *fāto*, *fīto*; a collection of caravans *kāfar fatake*.

carcass, n. *gawa*, pl. *gawa-waki*.

card, to c. cotton *shība*.

cardinal-bird, the scarlet *mulufi*, *malufi*.

cards, playing c. *yaya**.

care, n. 1. (heed) *ruwa* in neg. and interrog. clauses, e.g. what c. of mine is it? *ina ruwana? hankali*, which also has the sense of forethought.

2. (anxiety) *matamache**, e.g. the cares of the world *matamachen duniyan nan*; see **sorrow**.

care for, v. (heed, regard) *waiwaya*, *kūla* or *yin kūla*, *tara*, *tsēre*; to c. for (to pay attention to and so beware of) *tuna*, *yin hankuri*; all of these verbs except the first govern an object by

means of prep. *da*, e.g. he cared nought for his reproof *bai kūla da foronsa ba*.

careful, adj. (heedful) *mai-hankali*; be c. ! *hātara*, *hūtara*.

carefully, adv. 1. (heedfully, prudently) *da hankali*.

2. (attentively) *sārai*, e.g. look c. *duba sārai*.

careless, adj. (imprudent) *maras-hankali*, *bizki*; (inattentive to work) *mai-lalachi*.

carelessly, adv. *babu hankali*, *da lalachi*, *da lalafanchi*, *da sakafchi*; to act c. through absence of mind *shagalchi*.

carelessness, n. 1. (want of care) *sakafchi*.

2. (indifference, idleness) *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*.

caress, n. *lalaba*.

caress, v. *yin lalaba*.

cargo, n. *kaya*.

carpenter, n. *māsassaki*, pl. *masassaka*; shop of a c. *masaka*.

carpet, n. *kilishi**.

carriage, *karusa**.

carrier, n. gen. *mai-daukan kaya*; spec. hired c. *dan alāro*; head or chief c. *sarikin alāro*; a trader who carries his goods on his head *dangurumfa*, *bojuwa*, *bujuwa*, *mai-kaya*; money paid to carriers *sufuri*, *sufurchi*; an epithet

applied to a carrier who keeps putting down his load *mai-ḥari*.

carrion, *māsai, mosai, mushe*.

carry, tr. v. *kai, shidi*, the latter constr. with *da*; to c. in *shiga da, shigo da* (lit. to enter with), nothing shall be carried tied up into the town of Zaria *ba a shigo da komi a birni*; to c. on (transact) *yi*; to c. off *tafi da*; to c. through (accomplish) *iyas, iyas da*.

cartridge, *harsa, harsashi*; c. case *kamsir, kurfi, kwanso, kwasfar harsashi*; see **bullet**.

case, n. (receptacle, cover) *gida*, e.g. needle-c. *gidan alura*; spec. leathern c. for holding a book *gāfaka, gūfaka*.

case, n. 1. (state or condition) *zama*.

2. (event, thing) *abu*, e.g. a bad c. (i.e. a bad business) *mugun abu*.

cassava, *rogo*.

cast, tr. v. *jefa, jefi, jefo*; to c. aside *yas da, yadda, yashe*; to c. out (throw out) *jefa da, jefas, jefas da, jefsa*, jefshe**; (to expel as from the mind, the throne, etc.) *fidda, fita* with *da, fishe*, e.g. he was c. (or driven) out *aka fitad da shi* or *aka fishe shi*; to c. up (to reckon), *yin lisafi* to c. the

young *ḥari*; cf. *haifuwa ḥari* still-born; see **calculate**.

castigate, tr. v. 1. (punish) *fallasa, pallasa*.

2. (beat) *buga, bubbuga*.

castigation, n. 1. (punishment) *fallasa, pallasa*.

castor-oil, (plant) *zurma*.

castrated, *tauri**.

castration, *fidiya, pidia*.

casualty, see **accident**.

cat, n. *muzuru, muzulu, mazuru* m., fem. *kanwa* or *kyanwa*, pl. *kyanwuna, kyanwai, māge, mussa, mūsa*, pl. *mussoshi, mussai* (S.); spec. tortoise-shell or spotted c. *tsawarwara*; tabby bush c. *tsara*; civet-c. *jibda, māgen tantal, muzurun juda, muzurun tantal, kyanwartantal, tunkun jibda*; African palm civet or genet *madadashi*; wild c. *jimolo, baudari, tunku, wazagi* (S.); serval-c. *rabji, rabi*, robe*, inyawara*.

cataract, n. (or corneal ulcers) *hakiya* or *hekiya, tsauriya, tsawuriya*.

catch, tr. v. *kāma, ruski, chāfu, chāfe, sarḥe*; to c. a cold, e.g. I caught cold *sanyī ya kama ni* (lit. the cold caught me); to c. up *chika da*; catching *chāfiya*; to c. intr. (of a fire) *haḥaka*.

- caterpillar**, hairy, n. *gizāka*, *gisaka*, *kisāka**, *tsutsa*, *gama-toro*; an edible c. *tsama*; a light green c. *wutan ganye*.
- cat-fish**, *gondo* (S.), *kulume*, *mari*, *kurungu*; electric c.-f. (Malapteruruselectricus) *min-jiriya* (K.), *mijiriya* (S.).
- cattle**, n. coll. *dabba* or *dabbo*, pl. *dabboni* or *dabbobi*; (cows) *shanu*; c. disease *bingiri*; humped c. *jāba-jāba*; c.-shed *garke*, *gerke*, *garge* (S.); a place for feeding c. *makiyaya*; a Fulani c. camp *rugga*.
- caught**, particip. adj. (of a fire) *gasashe*, fem. *gasashiya*, pl. *gasasu*; to get c. in falling *sage*.
- caul**, *rigar haifuwa*.
- cause**, n. 1. (origin or ground) *gutsu*, *sabābi*, *sanadi*; without c. *babu sabābi*.
2. (reason adduced in proof or explanation) *dalīli*, *sabili*, *hamzari*, e.g. they give a c. (i.e. a reason for confidence) and an excuse *su kan kawo dalīli da huja*; hence often applied to texts from the Koran.
- cause**, tr. v. *sa*, *ba* or *bada*, *maida*, *yi*, *rataya**, *tāsāda**; these are construed as follows: I caused him to laugh *na ba shi dariya*, he caused me to fear *ya ba ni tsoro*, he caused

him to sleep *ya sa shi shi kwanche* or *ya maida shi shi kwanche*.

- causeless**, adj. *babu sababi*, *kakarai*.
- caution**, n. (prudent care) *hankali*.
- cautious**, n. *da hankali*; to be c. *yin hankali*.
- cavalry**, n. *barde*, pl. *barade*; c. with shields *garki* or *gari-kine*; collection of c. *kangar**.
- cave**, n. *kogo*, pl. *koguna*, *maraya**.
- cease**, intr. v. *daina* or *dena*, e.g. she did not c. *ba ta daina ba*, tr. she ceased crying *ta daina kuka*; the rain ceased *ruwa ya dauke*.
- ceaselessly**, adv. *kul yausha*.
- ceil**, tr. v. *yāba*, *yābe*.
- ceiled**, particip. adj. *yabāb̄be*, fem. *yabāb̄ba*, pl. *yabāb̄bu*.
- ceiling**, *damren-guga*, *dauren-guga*.
- celebrate**, tr. v. (to praise, honour) *yin yabo*.
- celebrated**, particip. adj. *yab-abbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.
- celebrity**, n. *yabo*.
- celestial**, adj. *mai-sama*, spec. applied to God.
- cement**, (used in making roofs) *ḥabarkiya*, *katsi*.
- cemetery**, n., see **burial-place**.

centipede, n., a harmless c. *shanshani*, *sonsoni**, pl. *shanshanu*, *aimaka* (S.), *daidaya*; see **millipede**.

centre, n. *tsäka*, *tsäkiya*; spec. c. of the inside of thatch roof *kwando*.

certain, adj. 1. (assured, true) e.g. c. (i.e. true) words *maganatabbatachiya*; are you c.? *ka tabbata? ka tabbata* or *ka shaida*; to be c. *sakankanche*, *täbata*, *täbache*; to make c. *jin tabbas*, *wajabta*.

2. (one, some) *wani*, fem. *wata*, *wota*, pl. *wadansu*, *wansu*, *wasu*, *wosu*; cf. a 2.; to express a c. person known but unnamed (= so-and-so) *kaza*, e.g. a c. person passed *mutum kaza ya wuche*.

certainly, adv. *da gaskiya*, *an che*, *hakika*, *läbudda*, *labuddi*, *tabbas*, *takar* (K.); c. is expressed also by means of *tabbata*, e.g. he is c. there *ya tabbata nan*, *babu shakka*.

certainty, n. *gaskiya*.

certificate, n. *läya**.

certified, particip. adj. *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

certify, v. *hakikanta*.

cesspit, n. *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

Chad, pr. n. of lake, *Tsada* or *ruwan Tsada*; see **Benué**.

chafe, intr. v. (to feel irritated) *jin haushi*; he chafed at this *ya ji haushin wannan*.

chaff, n. *dusa* (K.), *dussa* (S.), *kaikai*, *soshiya*, *kona*; small piece of c. *tsinki*.

chagrin, n. *haushi*.

chain, n. *sarka*, *salka*, pl. *sarkuna* or *sarkoiki*; coll. chains *sasäri*; c. armour *sulke*.

chair, n. *kujera*, *kushera**.

chalk, n. *aljibus*, *alzibus*; chalk or white earth used for bleaching thread *alli*.

chamber, n. *daki*, pl. *dakuna*; very small c. or closet *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*.

chamberlain, n. *madaki*, *madai*.

chamber-pot, *shäda*.

chameleon, n. *hawainiya* (K.), *hawaniya*, *hanwawa* (S.).

champion, *gamzo*.

chance, n., see **accident**, **opportunity**.

chance, impers. v., it chanced *ya faru*.

change, v. 1. tr. and intr. *sauya*, *sawaya*, *sawoya*.

2. tr. *maida*, *maishe*, *musaya*, *musayi*, *musaye*; to c. one's mind sake *shawara*, *säke*, *saki*.

3. intr. *mayas da*, *rikida*, *jirkita*, the last referring to

any c. of position whether material or figurative; e.g. he changed his body *ya sauya* or *sawaya jikinsa*, I changed to a moslem *na sauya musulmi*, the king has changed (the value of) the Spanish dollar *sariki ya maida kurdin madafa*, my master changed my wages *ubangijina ya sake ladana*, I am changing into some creature or other *ina rikida wani abu*, I changed myself into a bird *na rikida tsuntsuwa*, they changed sides *sun swaba juna*.

change, n., e.g. of money *kwaro*, *chiko*; (alteration) *jirkita*.

changed, particip. *sauyaye*, fem. *sauyaya*, pl. *sauyayu*; *sakakke*, fem. *sakakkiya*, pl. *sakakku*; *rikidadda*, fem. *rikidaddiya*, pl. *rikidaddu*.

changing, participial n. *sakiwa*, *sauyi*, *jirkitawa*, for the application of the latter cf. *jirkita* under **change**.

chapping, e.g. of skin *faso*.

chapter, n. (division of a book) *kai*, *sura**, pl. *surori**, e.g. the tenth c. *kai na-goma* or *sura ta-goma*.

character, n. 1. (disposition) *hali*, e.g. such is his c. *halinsa shi ke* or *halinsa ke nan*; *tabi'a*, *dabi'a*.

2. (good repute) *suna*; he bears a high c. *sunansa nagari ne*; see **fame**.

3. to have a certain c. is expressed by means of the v. *tarika*, e.g. he is a quarrelsome c. (he is always quarrelling) *ya tarika fada*.

characteristic, n. *hali*, pl. *halaye*; theft is a c. of the thief *sata halin barawo*.

charcoal, n. 1. *gawayi*, pl. *gawaye*, not used of burning c. for which cf. 2.

2. burning c. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoshi*.

3. charcoal-tree, a small tree *kiriya*, from which is made smith's c. *garwashin kiriya*.

charge, v. 1. (to load) *chika* or *dora*, e.g. they have charged their guns *suka dora bindiga*.

2. (to command) *hakumche*, *hakumta*.

3. (to rush on, to attack) *fadi* (*bisa*, *bisa ga* or) *a bisa*.

charity, n., see **alms**.

charm, n. 1. gen. whether written or of any other kind *māgani*, *lāya*, pl. *lawaye*, *layu*; *hatumi*, *katumi**, *sakutubu**, *bara*, *talili*; *sunan Allah* (lit. the name of God), this is used of various charms

which are written on a smooth board, the ink from which is washed off and swallowed.

2. spec. a c. to promote a successful deal *tsārāka*; stone c. for woman's neck *kandu* or *kandun ido*; c. against injury in war *layan sabani*; an inverted c. placed in a field as a charm against thieves *kwanda, kunda, tsāfi*; love charm *tsibbu, mantawa**; c. to render anyone invisible *lāyar zana*; c. to ward off arrows *sha bara, lāyar sabani*; injurious c. *sammu* or *sammo*; see also *tira*.

charmer, snake-, n. *gardi*, pl. *gardawa, turde*, pl. *tur-dawa*.

charms, 1. to write c. *tsubbu*; one who writes c. *mai-tsübbu*; one who utters deadly c. *maita*.

2. (female attractions) see beauty.

chase, n. (hunting) *farauta*.

chase, v. 1. (to hunt) *yin farauta*.

2. (to drive away) *kore*.

chaste, adj. *tsari*.

chattels, *urula*.

cheap, adj. *da araha, da arha*; it is c. *shina da araha*; a c. sale *gwanjo*.

cheapness, n. *araha, arha*.

cheat, n. 1. (fraud) *kura, riba, rikichi*.

2. (one who cheats) *machi kūra*, pl. *machiya kūra*; *mai-chinkura*; *mai-riba*, pl. *masu-riba* or *mai-riba da kura*; *mai-zambachi, mai-zambata*.

cheat, v. *chin kura, chin riba, rikiche, rinta, zambache, zambata, sāfa* (S.), *zantara*.

cheating, n. *kura, hayinchi*; see prec.

check, v. 1. (reprove) *kwaba*.

2. (hinder, restrain) *hāna*.

cheek, n. *kumchi*, pl. *kumatu*; hair on the cheeks *saje*; a man with fat cheeks *dan kumatu*.

cheer, v. *bada murna, yin murna*.

cheese, n. *chukumara, chuku*.

cheetah (or hunting leopard), *rabbi, gundumau**.

chew, v. tr. *tamna, tona, tauna, tsuke, tüke*, e.g. we are chewing kola-nut *muna tamna goro*.

chewed, particip. *tamnanne*, fem. *tamnanna*, pl. *tamnannu*.

chewing, n. *tamna, tsiko* (K.), *tsuku*.

chew-stick, (i.e. name of trees) *marke, marike, tafashiya*.

chicken, n. *dan tsäko, tsiyako*, pl. *yan tsäko*.

chief, n. *bagare*, pl. *garewa*,

baba, e.g. he is their c. *shi ne babansu*, also in sense of a c., a great man; *sariki*, often in the sense of head or president of any body, trade etc.; *ido* (lit. eye) is used in poetry thus, behold Bello, chief over his kingdom *duba ga Bello idon maliki nai; tunari**; see under *fadawa*.

child, n. 1. (son or daughter) *da*, connect. *dan*, fem. *diya*, pl. *yaya, yayaye* and *ya*, connect. *yan*.

2. (young person) *yaro*, pl. *yara*.

3. a very young c., an infant up to one year of age *jariri, jarili, yarili, jinjiri*; spec. c. carried on a woman's back *bumbu, goyo, goiyo*; a c. which dies soon after birth *dan wabi*.

4. with c., see **pregnant**.

childhood, n. *yarinta, yaran-chi* (K.), *yarantaka* (S.), *kurichiya, kuruchiya*.

childishness, n. *halin yaro, halin kanƙanta, kuruchiya* or *ƙurchiya*.

chill, n. *funturu*, especially that felt at night.

chillies, *barkono*.

chin, n. *hāba*, pl. *hābofi*; double c. *maroro* or *malolo*; the lower part of the c. *leke* (S.).

China, n. geogr. *Sin**.

chip, to c., e.g. with a hammer *kwarsana*.

chisel, n. *ƙurufi**, *furufi**.

choice, *zabe, zabi*, 'zabantaka, *zabanchi*.

choke, tr. and intr. v. *māküre*; to cause to c. *sumanche, sunanche*.

choking, due to swallowing anything, n. *mākūra, kwāra**.

choose, v. *zaba, zabe*; spec. to c. out one or more pieces of anything (to select) *wari*.

chosen, 1. pass. v. *zabu*.

2. particip. *zababbe, fem. zababba, pl. zababbu*.

Christian, a, n. *annasāra*, also used as coll. pl. Christians; to become a C. *nasaranta*.

Christianity, n. *addin an-nasara*.

church, i.e. a place of worship, n. *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai*.

churn, v. *burka, burga, tunk-wiya nono*.

churning, *tuguwa**.

cicatrice, n. *tambo, tabo*.

cigarette, stump of a *guntun taba*.

cinders, n. *garwashi*, pl. *garwashoshi*; *garwashin wuta*.

circle, n. *bukāri**, *ƙawanya* (K.).

circling, of a bird over its prey *jewa, shawāge*.

circuit, to make the c. of, tr. v. *kewaye, kewayi, yin kewaye*; see under **round**.

circumcise, v. *yin kāchiya* or *yanke kāchiya, sālasād da* (S.).

circumcision, n. *kāchiya, sala-suwa, sha*.

circumspectly, *dubanan dubanan, lekānan lekānan*.

cistern, large, n. *bingi, kurkūd-dufi, kunduddufi* or *kuchuddufi*; a c. for collecting rain-water *kwiyyaka, kuyaka*.

citizen, n. *ḍan-gari*, pl. *yan-gari*.

city, n. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnuwa*, used of large and walled towns, while *gari*, pl. *garuruwa, garuruka* and *garigaruru*, is applied to less important and to country towns.

civet-cat, n. *jibda, juda* (K.), *magen tantal*; frankincense obtained from the c. *turare*.

civil-war, *basasa*.

claim, n. *alhaki*, e.g. the c. of one defrauded.

claim, tr. v. (to demand as one's own) *nema*, e.g. I claim my own *ina nema abin nawa*; to claim a debt *bim bashi*; cf. *bi*.

clamour, n. (loud outcry) *kururuwa, ḍūmi, surutu* (S.).

clamour, v. (to cry aloud) *yin kururuwa*.

clan, n. *dangi*, pl. *dangogi*; *iri*, pl. *irare*.

clang, the c. of metal on metal *kyang*.

clap, v. (to strike the hands together in applauding etc.) *tāfa* or *yin taji* (K.), *yin tabi* (S.), *ban hannu*.

clapping, *tafi, tabi* (S.).

clarify, by straining, tr. v. *tachi*.

clasp, n. *kugiya*.

clasp, v. (to embrace) *rungume*.

claw, n. of an animal, *akaiḥa, dagi*.

claw, to *yayaga*; see **scratch**.

clay, n. *yimbu, yumbu, yambu*, e.g. they are built of c. *an gina su da yimbu*; a lump of c. *burugushe** or *ḥurbushu**; a yellow c. used as a dye for women's faces *dāla*; white c. *karmatako, karmantako* (K.); a hard c. soil *kekuwa*.

clean, adj. 1. gen. *sārai*, of wheat *chari* or *tsari*.

2. (ceremonially and so also morally c., pure) *halal, halas, tsari* or *chari*.

clean, tr. v. e.g. with water *ḍarwaye, ḍariwaye**, *kwāla, kwarkware* (S.); of the hair, garments etc. *tsabta*, cf. *wanke*; (to scrape off, c. off) *gogi, goge*; to c. from husks *surfe, surfa*; (to render c.) *yin sarai*,

māida, sarai, gyarta; to c. the teeth *kwalkwale*; to c. raw cotton *shība*.

cleaned, particip. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartatta*, pl. *gyartattu*; *wankakke*, fem. *wankakka*, pl. *wankakku*; c. from husks etc., of rice, *shanshere, surfaffe*.

cleaning, of cotton *shībi*.

cleanliness, n., of the person, clothes etc. *tsabta, tsapta*.

cleanness, n. *karari*; esp. in a religious or moral sense *tsarki, tsalki*; cf. seq.

cleanse, tr. v. (of the heart) *tsarkaka* or *charkaka*.

clear, adj. 1. (of liquids, the sky etc.) *da tachi, tangarai, tangaran*; the sun looks like clearing *gari yai shirinsarari*.

2. (manifest, plain) *zahiri, sārāi, kwarai*.

3. (pure, irreproachable) *tsari* or *chari*.

clear, tr. v., to c. ground before ploughing, *sāsabe*.

clear, to make, tr. v. (to explain) *waye*, e.g. this matter is difficult, I wish you to make it c. to me *abin nan da wuya ina so ka waye mini*.

clearing, c. ground for sowing *zafa* (S.).

clearly, adv. (manifestly, obviously) *sārāi, kwarai*.

clearness, *tachi*.

cleave, tr. v. (to cut with a blow) *sare*.

cleave to, to, intr. v. *rike, like, rika, kakkafe, riki, dāfe*.

clerk, *akawu*.

clever, adj. 1. i.e. in an art or profession *gwani, goni*, pl. *gwanaye, gwannai*.

2. gen. (astute or cunning) *shaitan*, i.e. as c. as Satan.

cleverly, adv. (cunningly) *da wayo*.

cleverness, n. 1. (in an art etc.) *gwaninta*.

2. gen. *azanchi, budi, hikima, fahimta*.

click, made with tongue or teeth, a sign of vexation *kwafa, kyache* (S.).

climb, v. *hawa* or *hau*, e.g. he climbed the hill *ya hawa dutsi* or *ya hawa bisa dutsi*.

clitoris, *filaniya, tsele*.

cloak, n. *alkyabba*, pl. *alkyabbu, riga**.

cloak, tr. v. 1. (to put on a c.) *sa alkyabba*.

2. (to conceal) *rufe, rufi* or *rife*.

clock, n. *sa'a, lotu*, loto**. Hausas who are acquainted with clocks express 'o'clock' thus, three o'clock *sa'a uku*; half past eight o'clock *sa'a takwas da shashi*; *karife* is

also used in describing the time, as the hours are often marked by beating iron, thus, what time is it now? *karife nawa ne yanzu*; it is two o'clock *ya yi karife biyu*.

clogs, wooden *dan garafai* (S.).

close, v. 1. tr. *sāda*; to c. a door, box etc. *rufe, rufi* or *rife, riḡe*; to c. the fist *tan-ḡwashe*; to c. a hole *done, danne, dāne*; the door is closed (also in fig. sense) *an rufe ḡofa*.

2. to c. with, used of a bargain or agreement *yarda*.

close by, adv. *kusa, dawra da, dubbara da, dabda, daḡda, dabrada*.

closed, particip. (fastened up) *ḡirkakke*, fem. *ḡirkakkiya*, pl. *ḡirkakku*; cf. phr. the road is c. *hanya ta mutu*.

closet, *bayan ḡida, makewaye*; (small room) *loloki*, pl. *lolokai*.

cloth, n., spec. names of stuffs are: blue c. *shuḡi*; blue, shiny c. *turkuḡi*, pl. *turkuḡḡa*; c. formed of blue and white strips *keke*; native blue or black c. with silk inwoven *riḡi*; black striped c. from Ilorin *bunū*; a black and white women's c. *zalwani*; a coarse white c. *ḡwado*; a c.

with white stripes *ḡwanda*; a white c. with red stripes *gorori* (K.); a black and red c. *kudi*; a c. with alternate strips of two colours *luru*; a variegated c. *zaura, zawara* or *idon zaura*; variegated c. used for turbans *barmushi*; a kind of velvet c. *yapḡi, karamiski, kadamiski*; a red c. *shāli*; a whitenative c. *alfinti, ḡimi**, *zawwati*; a c. that has no seam in it *liwāsa*; woollen c. *mulufi* or *malufi*; a brocade c. worked with gold inside *dibajo*; (a piece of c. used in various senses and spec. = Engl. 'a cloth') a loin c. *bante, banche*, pl. *bantuna*; a shoulder c. *lēki*; a small piece of c., a c. *kalkafi*; a woman's c. *zāne*, pl. *zannuwa* or *zanna, ḡyauto* (K.); c. gusset in a tobe *shiga*; a strip of c. *zugu*; a piece of c. made of about twenty strips *warwa*; a roll of c. *turumi*; long strip of c. *ausagi*; a single thickness of c. *palle*; a double thickness of c. *riḡe, riḡi, rubi*; a narrow strip of c. *fari*; a blue pepper and salt pattern c. *zabako, saḡi, swaḡi*; a narrow silken line in c. *ḡarage*; a breadth of c. between two seams *chiki*; a professional

- c. hammerer *mubugu*, *mubugi*, *mabugi*; see also *barbaro*, *hamakuku*, *mai-sanda-a-chi-goriba*.
- cloth-measure**, n. cubit *kāmu*; 8 *kāmu* = 1 *zāne*, the last = about 15 ft.; a short length of cloth *kyalle*.
- clothe**, tr. v. *sitira*, *sutura* and *sitirta*, *tufata*, *tufasad da*; *sa* (lit. to put on or upon), e.g. to put on one's clothes *sa riguna*; e.g. the brokers who have made unjust profits shall be clothed with garments of fire *dillalai fa masuriba da kura a sa ma su riguna wuta*.
- clothes**, n. (i.e. clothing) *tu-fuwa*; coll. *tūfa* as well as its pl. *tūfafi*; *riguna*; spec. beautiful c. *sutura*, *sitira*, *haiba**, *abin rufa*; fine, expensive c. *kambi**; old c. *keso*, *tsumma*, *ragga* (S.).
- clothing**, n., e.g. fine c., beautiful c.; cf. prec.
- cloud**, n. *habaki**, pl. *habaka*; special names are: moving c. *gilgije*, *girgije*, *girigiji*; small white, still clouds *lumshi*; a c. that produces a shower *zirnaniya*, *jitau*; clouds coll. *gajimare*, *gashimare**; to rise in clouds like smoke *turnike*; the dust
- rose in clouds *kura ta turnike*.
- cloudy**, adj. expr. by *da* with prec., e.g. *da lumshi*.
- cloven**, particip. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.
- cloves**, n. coll. *kanunfari*, *kanunfari*, *hanchin kade* (S.).
- club**, n. *gwami*, *guduma*, pl. *gudumai*; a c. for throwing *kere*.
- coal**, n., see **charcoal**.
- coat**, n. 1. *riga*.
2. c. of mail made of cloth and padded with cotton, wool, etc. *lifidi*; a white cloth c. *gwado*.
- coaxing**, *lallāshi*, *rarrashi*.
- cobra**, (Naia nigricolis) *kumachi*, *kumurchi*, *kwamachi*, *kwamarchi*, *sarikin machizai*.
- cobweb**, *zaren gizo*, *tautauchi*, *yana*.
- cock**, n. 1. (male of poultry) *zakāra*, pl. *zakāru*; *mai-chara*, *mai-chara*.
2. to express precisely the male of birds *miji* or *namiji* (hen *mache*) must be used where the gender is not denoted by different words.
- cockroach**, n. *kyankyaso*, *ka-fata*.
- cocoa-nut palm**, *kwakwa attagara*.

coerce, tr. v. 1. (restrain)
hāna.

2. see **to force**.

coffee, n. *gahawa, gahwa*.

cogitate, v. *tuna*, the obj. of thought is constr. with *da* or *ga*.

cogitation, n. *tunane*.

cohabit with, v. *gamu da mache*.

coiffure, a helmet-shaped c. worn by women *kitso*.

coil, intr. v. *nāde*; intr. and refl. to c. up *nādu*.

cold, n. 1. *ḍāri, sanyi, sansanya*; I feel the c. or I feel c. *ina jin ḍāri*.

2. (catarrh) *ḍāri, mājina, masassara**, *mura, sanyi*, e.g. I have caught c. or a c. *ḍāri* (or *sanyi*) *ya kama ni*; a man with a c. in the head *mai-shako* (S.).

3. spec. c. felt at night *funturu*.

4. the c. season *funturu*.

cold, adj. *ḍāri, da ḍāri, da sanyi*; it is c. *ya yi ḍāri*; e.g. c. water *ruwan ḍāri, ruwan sanyi, sanyin ruwa*, they are c. *suna da ḍāri*; to be stiff with c. *sandare*.

colic, *tsamki*.

collapse, v. to *afka, auka, abka*.

collapse, I collapsed *na faḍi reran*, or *na faḍi warwar*.

collar, n., spec. a padded cloth collar used in war to protect the back of the neck *dagumi*; to seize a person by the c. *dagume*.

collar, to make a *kalmāsa, kalmisa* (S.), *kalmashe*.

collar-bone, *alan gaba, alan kafada*.

collect, v. 1. tr. *tāra, tarshe, jibche, jibta*; spec. to c. a debt *biyo bashi, ḍauki bashi*.

2. intr. *taru, an tara*.

collected, particip. *tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*.

collection, n. (of men and things) *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*; *tsibi*; *chushe*.

collector of taxes, n. *jakāda**, *jekāda**.

colloquy, n. *zanche*.

colour, n. *launi*, pl. *launoni, launoka, rini* or *rina, jinsi* (S.); blue c. *shuni* or *juni**.

coloured, particip. *tūrarre**, fem. *tūrarra**, pl. *tūrarru**.

colt, n. *ḍan dukushi* or *ḍan dukushi*.

comb, n. *masarchi, mashachi, matsefa, matsefi, masoshi, shata*.

comb, c. of a cock *tsoro*.

comb, tr. v. *gyarta, tsefe, tsatsefe, shata* or *shache, tsēfi*, e.g. I am combing the hair of my head *ina shata gashin kaina*.

combing, *tsīfa*.

come, intr. v. *zo*; (used with pronominal forms ending in *na*) *zuwa, zaka*; *tafo* or *taho**, e.g. c. to me *zo* or *tafo ma ni*, but when used to invite attention or cooperation *yaka*, fem. *yaki*, e.g. c. ! let us sit down and converse together *yaka mu zamna mu yi zanche tare*; we came to a city *muka zaka ga wani birni*. Some idiomatic combinations of c. with preps. etc. are: to c. about or to c. to pass *faru*; to c. at *isa, ishe, iske*; to c. back *darwo, dawayo, komo, birkito*; to c. by or acquire, obtain *samo*; to c. down *shida, shide, sabka*; to c. in *shigo*; to c. out *fito* and (with pronominal forms ending in *na*) *firfitowa*; to c. out from *fito*; to c. quickly *sheko*; to c. to *gabato*; c. here to me *gabatoni*; to c. towards *iso, jirgo*; to c. up *taso*; to c. up with *tarda, taras da*.

comfort, n. 1. (satisfaction) *dadi, dadin zuchiya*.

2. (consolation) *hankuri, hakuri, hankura* or *hakura, sanyi* or *sanyin zuchiya*.

comfort, tr. v. *bada hankuri, sanyaya**, e.g. he comforted them *ya bada ma su hankuri*.

comfortable, to feel, intr. v. *jin dadi, jin dadin zuchiya*; he felt c. *rai ya kwanta*.

comforted, to be, (feel consoled) *jin sanyi*, I am c. *zuchiyata tana jin dadi*.

coming, participial n. *zuwa, zowwa, zakuwa*; c. back *komowa*; c. here *tafowa*; they are c. here *suna tafowa*.

command, n. (order) *hakumchi, hukumchi, abin hakumta, abin hakumchi, kaliye, umarni*.

command, v. *hakumta, hakumche, yin umarni, umar-che*.

commander, n. (leader, chief) *baba*, e.g. tell me the name of their c. *ka fadi ma ni sunan babansu*.

commandment, n., see **command**.

commence, v., see **begin**.

commend, see **approve of**.

commission, l. a c. to purchase *saftu, sabtu, sautu, safo, dolashi*.

2. broker's c., see **brokerage**.

3. (order) *izni*.

commit, v. 1. (to do, to perpetrate) *yi*, he committed theft *ya yi sata*; one who commits adultery *mai-yin zina*.

common, adj. 1. (shared in

by all) *na duka*, e.g. their common good fortune *arziki na su duka*.

2. (defiled) *haram*.

companion, n. *kama*, pl. *kamannu*, *aboki*, *dan-uwa**; a c. of the same age *tsara*; a play c. *taubashi*, *abokin wasa*.

companionship, n. *tsaranche*, *gūfi* (S.), *abuta*.

company, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*, *jama'a*; in c. (together) *tare*; in c. with *tare da*.

compare, v. 1. gen. *misalta*, *kwatanta*.

2. to c. by measuring *gwalgwada* or *gwargwada*, *gwargwado*.

compass, iron, n. *bukari**.

compass (mariner's), for points of see *kusuruwa*.

compassion, n. *tausai* or *tausayi*, *jāje*, *jaijaito**, *jinkai*, *sauna*; to feel c. *jin* (or *yin*) *tausayi*.

compassionate, the, (of God) *errahimi**.

compel, v. *yin tilas*, *sa tilas*, *tilasa*, *tilas da*, *dolata*, *tan-kwasa*, *yin wofi*, e.g. you c. me *kana yin tilas* or *kana sa ni tilas*, I was compelled to work *an sa ni tilas aiki*, I compelled the fellow *na tilasa mutum*, I was compelled *an tilas da ni*, if he refuses c.

him *idan ya ki a sa shi tilas*; see **compulsion**, **force**.

compensate, to *ramka*.

compensation, *ramko*, *rāmu-wa*.

competition, *takara*.

complain, v. *kururuta*, *kai k̄ara*.

complainant, *mai-kawon k̄ara*, *maḡari*.

complaint, n. 1. (loud expression of grief, pain, etc.) *kururuwa*.

2. (sickness) *chiwo*, *chivuta* or *chuta*.

3. (a grievance, a cause of c.) *k̄ara*; and so

4. (accusation, a legal term)

k̄ara, *sara**, *abin sara*.

complaisance, *bajinta*; to comply with *yin bajinta*.

complement, n. *chiko*, *abin chikawa*, *yayalwachi**, *kishiya**.

complete, adj. 1. *chikakke*, fem. *chikakka*, plur. *chikakku*, *fāfafa*.

2. (of number) *ba gaira*, e.g. a c. hundred *dari ba gaira*, lit. a hundred without deduction.

complete, tr. v. *gāma*, *hāda**, *īda*, *k̄arasa*; (to bring to an end) *ḡare*.

complete, to be, intr. *chika*; cf. seq.

completed, to be, *chika*, *ḡare*;

- often used at end of compositions, stories, etc., e.g. the song is c. *waka ta chika*.
- completely**, *atattare, kop*.
- completion**, n. *chikawa*; note of c. placed at end of composition *iyaka*.
- compose**, tr. v. 1. (of an author) *wallafa, yi*.
2. (to settle or decide a dispute) *sada, raba*.
- comprehend**, v. (to understand) *yin fahimta, ji*.
- compress**, tr. v: *matse, matsi, mache, dankara**.
- compressed**, to be, intr. and pass. *matsu*.
- compulsion**, *abin tilas*; under c. *tilas, da tilas*; it was a case of c. *wofi ya shiga*.
- compute**, v., see **calculate**.
- comrade**, n. *kama**, pl. *kamannu**, *aboki*, pl. *abokai, abokin wasa*.
- conceal**, tr. v. *rufe, rufi* or *rife**; *boye, boyi*, intens. *bobboye, jiche* (S.), *kifa* (K.), *sulla*; *kawaichi*, e.g. a crime; to c. oneself, to hide *boya* or *boye*, also with *kai*, e.g. he concealed himself under the leaves *ya boye kansa daga kalkashin sansami*; to c. oneself (of lying in wait) *fake*.
- concealed**, particip. *rufaffe*,

fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*; *boyayye*, fem. *boyayya*, pl. *boyayyu*.

- concealment**, n. *boya, boyewa*; c. of defects in goods offered for sale *tadilisi*; place of c. *maboya, wurin boyewa*; see **ambush**.
- concede**, tr. v. 1. (to agree to) *yarda*.
2. (to yield up) *bari, bar*.
- conceit**, *fadin kai, hini* (S.), *homa* (K.), *tashin kai, fariya*; see **pride**.
- conceive**, tr. v. 1. (of thought) *tammaha, tamaha*.
2. (of the female sex) *haifu, samu chiki*.
- concern**, n., see **affair and business**.
- concerned about**, be, v. *kula* constr. with direct acc. or with *da* or *ga**; *ruwa* used with subst. v., e.g. you are not concerned *babu ruwan-ka*.
- concerning**, prep. *bisa ga*, with prons. *gare*; *da, saba da, sabad da, sabaddo* or *sabo da**, *gami da, game da*.
- conciliation**, *saduwa*.
- concoct**, to c. a story *damre magana*.
- concord**, n. *saduwa*; see **agree**.
- concubine**, n. *sadaka*, pl.

sadāku, wahaya (a neglected wife or c.), *bora**; *kwarkwara, kwarakwara, makubliya, mutumniya**.

condemn, tr. v. *kāda, bāda laifi, laifa**, *kūsanchi*.

condemnation, n. *kayaswa, kyazwa, kaye, alhaki, lalata*, the last quite general = perdition.

condition, n. (state) *zama, zamanchi*.

condition, to come into a, or state *zama, zam* (S.).

condolence, (on any misfortune other than death) *jaijaito*; c. in bereavement *ta'aziya**.

conduct, n. (habit) *tsabi'a, dabi'a*; letter of safe-c. *watikal* (or *wasikal*) *lamuni*.

conduct, tr. v. (to lead, bring) *kai*.

cone, the form of a c. *zallo*; c.-shaped *da zallo*.

coney, (Klip-Das), see **cony**.

confectionery, n. *allewa, allewa*.

confer, v. 1. (to consult together) *yin shawara*.

2. (give, bestow) *ba, bada*.

conference, *kuchi*, pl. *kuche-kuche*; see **talking**.

confess, v. *yin furuchi, yin furchi, yin huruchi, banya, dauki laifi*.

confession, n. *furuchi, furchi, huruchi*.

confidence, n. (reliance, trust) *amāna, aminchi, aminchewa, dangana, saduda, shaduda**; to have c. in *dangana, dogare, saduda*, e.g. I have c. in... *ina dangana da...*; we have c. in thee *mu dogare ka*; to betray c. *chinye amana, chin amana*; to justify c. (to be trustworthy) *yin aminchi*.

confine, n. (boundary) *iyaka*.

confined, adj. (narrow) cf. *kumchi*; to be, v. (of women) *haifu*.

confirm, to *tabbache*.

conflagration, n. *gobāra, turnuka*, e.g. prov. *gida biyu maganin gobāra* two houses are a provision against a c.

conflict, n. *fada, fama, yaḳi*.

conflict, intr. v. *kāra, yin kāro*, e.g. this conflicts with that *wannan ya yi kāro da wanchan*.

confluence, n. of rivers, *magangami, magāma*.

confounded, to be, v. *damu*.

confuse, tr. v. (to confound or perplex) *dāme, dāma, rikita, shirḡata*.

confused, to be, v. *damu, sha kai*; he was c. *ya sha kansa*.

confusedly, adv. *damai, marbika**.

confusion, n. *damasa*, *marbika**, *damuwa*, *kirmiche* (S.), *rigima*, *shirḡache*, *purmutsi* (K.).

congeal, intr. v. *chībaru*, e.g. my blood is congealed with the cold *jinina ya chibaru sabad da dari*, *sandare*.

congratulate, tr. v. *barkata*, *gaishe*, *gaida*.

congratulation, *barka*.

congregate, intr. v. *taru*.

congregation, n. *jama'a*.

conjecture, to *kintata*; see **suppose**.

conjoin, tr. v. *gama*.

conjuring, *rikirkida*.

connections, n. coll. *dangi*, *danga* or *dagi*, pl. *dangogi*, *kabila*.

conquer, tr. v. 1. (to acquire by war) *chi*.

2. (to overcome) *i*, *i ma*, *yin nasara*, *yin nasarchi*, *kāda*, *kāshe*.

consciousness, n. *tunane* (a particip. form), pl. *tunannu*, is used substantively for thought or consciousness.

consent, n. *yarji*.

consent, v. *yarda*, *bada yarji*, *izni*, *karḡa*, *so*, e.g. do you c. ? I do *kana so ? ina so*.

consequence, n. 1. (effect), e.g. in c. of this *don wannan*,

domin wannan, *don haka*, *sabad da wannan*.

2. (importance), e.g. it is of no c. *babu komi*.

consider, v. 1. gen. *tsokachi* and *yin tsokachi*, *tuna* and *tunane* with *da*.

2. (of a council, deliberation) *yin shāwara*.

consideration, n. (deliberation) *shāwara*.

consolation, n. *hanḡuri*, *hanḡurchi*, *hanḡura*, *haḡura*, *haḡuri*, *sanyin zuchiya*.

console, tr. v. *bada hanḡuri*; to be consoled *jin sanyi*.

consort, n. 1., see **companion**, **comrade**.

2. (of married people) *namiji*, *miji*, fem. *mata*.

conspiracy, to form a, v. *gama**.

conspire, intr. v. *yin baki daya*.

constancy, *nāchi*, *nachiya*.

constant, adj. *da nāchi*.

constantly, adv. *ko yaushe*, *kullum**, *kul yaushe**, *tutul*, *tutur*.

constellation, see **star**.

constrain, tr. v. *tilasda* (S.), *tilasa* (K.); see **compel**, **force**.

construct, tr. v. 1. gen. *yi*.

2. spec. of roads *gina*.

consul, n. *gunsul**.

consult, v. 1. intr. (to deliberate)
yin shawara.

2. tr. v. *yin shawara* constr.
with *ma*, *ga*, *da*, e.g. I am
going to c. you *za ni yin* (or
in yi) *shawara da kai*, *shawa-
warta*, *shawarche*.

consultation, n. *shawara*,
*roshi**

consume, tr. v. 1. (used of
fire) *lasa*, *lashe*, *ḡona**, *ḡone**

2. (generally) *chi*, *chi da*,
chanye, *chinye*.

contain, tr. v., see **hold**.

contaminate, tr. v. *yin ka-
zanta*.

contemn, *kyale*, see **despise**.

contemplate, tr. v., see **con-
sider**.

contemplation, *māḡai*.

contempt, n. *reni*; an ex-
pression of c. *wus*, *wush*;
tsaki; see **despise**.

contemptuous, adj., see
proud.

contend, tr. v., see **fight**,
strive.

content, adj. *ḡosashe*, pl. *ḡo-
sassu*; to be c. *ḡoshi*.

content, tr. v. *ḡosada*, *ḡosada*.

contention, n. (disputing) *ha-
yaniya*, *haniya*, *haya-haya*,
*muhawara**, *musuwa*; see
strife.

contentment, *kwanchiyar*
hankali.

contents, (that which is con-
tained) *abin chiki*.

contest, n., see **contention**.

continually, adv., see **con-
stantly**.

continuance, n. *tabbata*, *tabba-
tawa*, *dawama*, *duma*, *dinga*,
nāchi, *nachiya*, *zama*, *zaman-
chi*; long c. *tsawa*, *tsawanta*.

continue, intr. v. *dawama*,
duma, *dāḡa*, *daḡi*, *tabbata*,
tabbache, *dunga*, *ḡāra**; to c.
to exist *kashi**, *kashe**, *ka-
sanchi*; phr. we c. giving
thanks *muna dāḡa godiya*;
I c. travelling until evening
ina yini tafiya; they con-
tinued thus *suka kāma haka*,
he continued crying *ya ḡāra*
kuka.

continuing, *mai-dawama*, *mai-
tabbatawa*.

contract, n. *wahabi*.

contract, tr. v. 1. (a disease)
tarda.

2. to c. the face *ḡanre fuska*.

3. intr. v. (to shrivel up)
yin yaushi, *yin yoshi*.

4. (to make an agreement)
see **agree**.

contradiction, *gardama*.

contribution, n. (e.g. of food)
tarbache.

contrivance, n. *dabāra*, *du-
bāra*, *dībāra*, *chimi**, *wayo*,
waya, *abin wayo*.

contrive, v. *wayo, wayau.*

control, tr. v., see **restrain**.

convalescence, n. *rangwame.*

convalescent, be, intr. v. *jìn*
or *yin rangwame, yin dama,*
wartsaka.

convenient, adj. *sawaba**,
daidai; see **fit, suitable.**

conversation, n. *bātu, zanche,*
pl. *zantatuka, zanzanche, fira,*
hira, tađi, kūrğa (S.), roka*
(Z.), *tankawa, zantawa*; hum
of c. *đumi**.

converse, intr. v. *tanka, tamka,*
bāta, yin bātu, yin zanche,
yin magana, yin tađi.

conversing, part. *tankawa,*
zantawa.

converted, be, intr. v. *sauya,*
e.g. he was c. from heathenism
to Islam *ya sauya da arna*
musulmi.

convey, tr. v., see **carry.**

convict, n. *đan sadaka.*

convince, tr. v. (satisfy by
evidence) *hakikanta.*

convolvulus, a species of
awarwaro, färin gamu, kafi-
boka, yaryadi, yambururu,
duman kada, yako.

convulsions, n. *mijiriya,*
minjiriya, misiriya.

cony, *agwāda, rema*.*

cook, tr. v. *dāfa, dāfe*; c.
without water *tuya, soya*;
cooking *dāfuwa*; to c. meat

with hot stones *sulala*; a
fire for cooking *wutar gāshi.*

cook, n. *mai-dāfi, mai-dāfuwa,*
sarikin wuta.

cooked, be *nīna (S.), nūna*
(K.); c. part. *dāfāfe*; c.
without water *soyayye*, fem.
soyayya, pl. *soyayu*; well
c. *ninanne*, pl. *ninannu,*
nunanne, pl. *nunannu, tap-*
*shi, tafshi, tabshi**; c. food
dāfau.

cooking, *gāshi, dāfuwa*; c.
place *madāfa, wurin dāfa,*
wurin dāfuwa; c. place on
which a pot is set *murufu*;
a c. pan *algīdiri, alkīdiri*;
a c. pot with holes pierced
at the bottom *madam-*
bachī, madamfachi.

cool, adj. *sanya, shanya, da*
sanyi; c.-headedness *sanyin*
hali.

cool, tr. v. *sanya, shanya*;
intr. v. *fuche, huche.*

cooled, part. *sanyayye.*

coop, n. *akurki*, pl. *akurikai*
kurki, akurikin kaza.

copaiba, tree *maje, kadaura.*

coping stones, *kalankuwa.*

copper, n. *jan karife* (lit. red
iron), *gachi*; girdle made of
c. *tagula*, tugula*.*

coppersmith, the c. bird *ma-*
kwabkwafi.

copy, tr. v., see **imitate.**

copy, to c. a drawing etc.
sifata, sifanta.

coral tree, *majiriya.*

cord, n. *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *siliyoyi*; *igiya*, pl. *igoyi* or *igiyoyi*, *yagiya* (S.); a c. to tie trousers round the waist *kubaka.*

coriander seed, *ridi, lidi*; oil made from c. s. *main ridi*; a plant resembling c. *yauḍo, yodo* (S.).

cormorant, *madundumi**, *kazar ruwa.*

corn, n. *hatsi*, (wheat) *alkama*; a grain of c. *kwaya*; guinea-c. *dawa*, q.v. *tsaba* (S.); Egyptian c. *masara* (see **maize**); a tuft of c. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; an ear of c. *kube*; a pit for storing c. *tsunjiya*; to rub or grind c. *tushē, niḳa, daka*; reaped c. laid in rows *sankache, sangache*; a bunch of c. *ḳurāsa* (S.); c. stalks *karandafi* (S.); a woman who sells c. *almuda* (S.), *maauniya, alkwararo* (S.).

corn-stalk, tip of *sullai, siliya.*

corner, n. *kusuruwa*, pl. *kusurwoyi, sukuruwa, sukurwa*; c. of a fence *dungu, lungu.*

corporal, *mai-igiya biu*, lit. the owner of two stripes.

corpse, n. *gāwa*, pl. *gawawaki, mushe, matache*, fem. *matachiya*, pl. *matattu, mamachi.*

corpulence, *kauri, kabri, kosa.*

corpulent, *da kauri, ginshimi, tunturum*; to be c. *kabrara*; see **fat**.

correct, tr. v. (punish) *foro, horo**, *wahalshe.*

correct, adj. *daidai, dēdē, naḳwarai*, fem. *ta-ḳwarai, sārari, sosai, ainin*; it is c. *ya yi daidai.*

correctly, adv. *daidai, sosai, ḳwarai, sārari*; to count c. *ḳilga sārari.*

cost, n. (price) *kurḍi*; what does it c.? *kurḍinsa narwa?* its c. *kurḍinsa, an tayansa, tamaninsa.*

costly, adj. *da tsada*; to be c. *yin tsada.*

cotton, n. *kada*; c. before it has been spun *abduga, auduga*; spun c. *abawa*; white c. for sewing *silibi* (K.), *silale* (S.); small piece of twisted c. *shu-siya*; seeds of c. plant *an-guriya*; silk c. tree *rimi*; c. from silk c. tree *kaderi*; a bow string used in cleaning c. *laḳe* (S.); a pin used in pressing c. (so called from a resemblance to the *bida* snake) *ḳan bida*; a c. farm *garge* (S.); to press c. seeds out of the pods or to roll c. *gurje, gurza*; intertwined c. staples *hāḳan zare*; to clean

raw c. *shīḅa*; to clean or prepare c. by drawing it out (on the *masāḅi*) *sāḅi*, *yin sutu*; a white c. brocade *samasadowa*; for various sp. of cotton see *bakatuka*, *yat-sauri*, *yatabshi*.

cotton-wool, *sāḅi*, *tafa**.

couch, n., of a king or judge, *karāga*.

cough, n. *tari*, *twari*, *toari*.

cough, intr. v. *yin tari*.

council, n. *fāda*, *roshi**, *magan-tawa*, *magantirwa*; to hold a c. *yin fadanchi*.

councillor, *bafāde*, pl. *fadawa*; *mafada*, pl. *mafadawa*; *mafaje* (K.).

counsel, n. *dabāra*, *dubāra*, *dibāra*, *wayo*.

counsel, tr. v., see **advise**.

count, tr. v. *yin kīdaya*, *kilga*, *kirga*, *yin lisafi*.

count, n. *kīdaya*, *lisafi*.

countenance, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* or *fuskuna*.

counterfeiting, (coin) *tsira-riya*.

country, n. *kāsa*, pl. *kāsashe*, *kāsaisai*, *gari*, pl. *garuruwa*, *garigari* or *garigaru*; uninhabited c. *jeji*.

coupling, of animals or birds *barbara*; of horses, camels etc. *baye*.

courage, n. *mazakuta*, *maza-*

kunta, *mazakunchi*, *tasiri* (S.).

courageous, adj., see **brave**.

course, n., the c. of the world *taki-takin duniya*.

court, n., c. of a king *fāda*, *wurin shawara*, *fage*, *kindigaye*; c. yard *dandali*; c. of justice *fagachi*, *fakache**; to appear in c. *hālara* or *hallara*.

courtiers, n. *fadawa*.

courting, n. *bazaware**, *shiriyay**.

cover, n., c. of a book *bango*, pl. *bangaye*, *banguna*, *tadarishi*; dish c. made of grass *faiḅai*, pl. *fiyafai* or *fayafayai*; see **covering**.

cover, tr. v. *rufe*, *rufa*, *rufi*, *rife*, *yāne*, *yin sutura*, *suturta*, *turbude*; to c. up a hole *done*; to c. (i.e. to conceal) *jiche* (S.), *kīfa* (K.); to be covered *rufu*, *rurrufu*; to c. (used of horses, bulls, etc.) *yin baye*, *harwa*.

covered, part. *rufaffe*, fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*.

covering, n., e.g. a blanket *bargo*, *mayafi*, *sutura*, *sitira*, *mayāfi*, *marufi*, pl. *marufai*; *rufa*, *rurrufe*; the c. of a door *kyauwe*; c. of skins *tunku*; c. for a horse *mashimfidi*, pl. *mashimfida*; temporary c. for the night *sayi*, pl. *sayoyi*.

covet, tr. v. *shahawa*, *yin guri*, *yin kãri*; the coveted horse *dokin kãri*.

coveting, n. *hadama*.

covetous, adj. *da rowa*, *mai-rowa*, *makwadaita*, *mai-kawazuchi*, *marowachi*, *da mãda*.

covetousness, n. *rowwa*, *rowa*, *kawazuchi*, *tsumulmula* (K.), *zowari*, *zwari*, *zari*, *makwa-daichi*, *madda*.

cow, n. *sãniya*, pl. *shanu*; bush-cow or dwarf-buffalo *bauna*, pl. *hakane*; a black and white c. *nordi*; an old c. the mother of the herd *sayi* (S.); an old lean c. *guzuma*; c.-shed *turken shanu*; a c. tied up by the feet *dunguli*; cow-hide *kilago*, *kilabo*, pl. *kilagai*.

coward, n. *matsorata*, *matsorachi*, *lalafa**, *mairaki*.

cowardice, n. *matsorachi*.

cow-bird, or ox-pecker, *charki*.

cowhide, n., see **cow**.

cow-itch (*Mucuna pruriensis*), *karara*.

cowry shell, n. *ijiya*, *wuri*, pl. *kurđi*, *kud̄i*, *kawara* or *alkawara*, *yaya*; a large c. s. *gandi*, *sarmadawa*; a bag containing 20,000 shells *kesu*, *kwaroro*, *kwororo*; a large skin bag for cowries *jika*; a grass bag for holding cowries *kwasabro*, *kwasauro*;

a small c. s. *ago*; gambling games played with c. s. *dãra*, *chacha*, *modi*; a faked c. s. used by gamblers, made by joining two shells together so that the lips or back are always exposed *godogo*; a girdle made of c. s. *kiribi*; a c. s. with a hole in it *kuruman wuri*; a blocked-up c. s. with hole at back filled up *likakken wuri*; to throw c. s. in the game of *chacha*, *sãba*, *sãbi**.

crab, n. *kãguwa* (K.), *kwãguwa* (S.), pl. *kagunai*, *kwagunnai*.

crack, intr. v. *tsagu*; to c. or open (used of a wall) *dãre*.

cracking, of the skin under the toes, *kudumbiya*, *kumbudeya*.

crackling, of fire *babaka**.

craft, n. *wayo*.

crafty, adj. *da wayo*, *mai-wayo*, *mai-sane*, *shaitan**; to be c. *hilata*.

crackle, see **starling**.

cram, tr. v. (stuff) *dora*, *dũra*.

cramp, n. *mijiriya*, *mijirya*, *minjiriya*, *misiriya*.

cramped, to become, e.g. with cold *sãge*, *gãge*, *kãge*.

crane, crested c. or crown-bird, n. *goraka*, *gauraka*, *garmaka* (S.), *gamraka*.

crawcraw, n., see **crowcrow**.

crawl, intr. v. *rarrafe*, *rubda*
(or *rufda*) *chiki*.

crawling, n. *jan jiki*, *rarrafu*.

crazy, *tababbe*, see **lunatic**.

crease, to *tākura*, *takure*.

create, tr. v. *halitta*, *talitta**,
halichi.

creation, *halitta*.

creator, n. *mahalichi*.

creature, n. *halitta*, *dabba*,
dabbo, pl. *dabbuna*, *dabbobi*;
creatures *talikai**.

credit, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*;
one who wants to buy on c.
mai-bashi; cf. idiom it is
to a man's c. *ya chika mutum*.

creditor, n. *mai-bada bashi*,
mabachi.

creed, n. *imanchi*.

creep, intr. v. *rarrafe*, *sanda*,
sanduwa, *kurda**; to c.
like a cat stealthily *baya-*
*baya**.

cress, water c. *lafuwa*; common
or garden c. *labsur*.

crest, of a bird *tukku*, *tukkuwa*,
tsoro, *zanko*, *tuntu*.

cricket, n., large burrowing c.
gyare; a small species of c.,
tsanya.

crier, n. (one who cries aloud
or proclaims) *babbam bade*,
pl. *bambadawa*, *dan ma'abba*;
(one who calls to prayer)
mai-kiran salla, *ladan*.

crime, n. *zamba*, *janaya*.

crocodile, n. *kāda*, *kādo*, pl.
kādōdi, *kāduna* or *kadun-*
duna.

crocodile-bird, (black-headed
plover) *ladinkogi*, *jakin gulbi*.

crooked, be *fandare**, *lan-*
kwashi; of a tree to grow c.
kantare.

crooked, a *karkache*.

crookedness, *karkāta*.

crop of a bird, n. *maroro*,
malolo, *kururu*, *barōro*.

cross, (or crossing) n. *gilme**,
pl. *gilmomi** or *gilnomi**; a
c. *gilmen itache**; c. beam
on top of doorway *āzara*.

cross, tr. v. *gilma*, *ketare*, *etare*,
swaba, *sāba*, *yin ketara*; capa-
ble of being crossed *ketaruwa*;
it cannot be crossed *ba shi*
ketaruwa; to make to c. (i.e.
to ferry over) *ketare da* (S.),
ketaras da (K.), *ketarshe* (be-
fore a pron.); to c. intr.
ketaras.

crossing, n. *ketara*, pl. *ketare-*
ketare.

crossing, part. *ketarewa*.

cross-legged, to sit, intr. v.
tamatela, *tamataila*, *gijirta*,
ginchira (S.).

cross-ways, n. *mararraban*
hanya.

crouch, to *lābe* (S.), *raḥe* (K.),
raḥa, *rabke*, *rafake*, *tākura**.

crow intr. v. *yin chāra*, *yin*

- kaḡaruko*, *yin kaḡaruku* ;
cock-crow *chāran zakara*.
- crow**, n. species of, *shimkake* ;
white-backed c. *hankāka*, pl.
hankaki or *hankaku*.
- crowbar**, *dāgi*.
- crowcrow**, n. (disease) *kaikai*,
kazuwa ; a herb supposed to
cure c. *kaskawani*.
- crowd**, n. (of people) *gayya*,
taru, *masu-tariya*, *runduna*,
purmitsi, *kirmitsi* (S.).
- crowding together**, *purmitsi*.
- crowing**, n. *chāra*, *kaḡaruko*,
kaḡarako, *kaḡaruku*, *kiki-*
rikyi.
- crown**, to *nāde**.
- cruel**, adj. *muni*, *maḡetachi*.
- cruelly**, adv. *da mūni*.
- cruelty**, n. *ḡeta*, *mūni*, *zafin*
rai.
- crumb**, n. *burugushe*, *burbushi*,
bulbudi, *barbaḡi*, *gutsura*, pl.
gutsure, *ḡiḡḡiga*, *marmashi*.
- crupper**, (of a saddle) *jabaya*,
jakūturi.
- crush**, tr. v. *matse*, *matsa*, *latse*,
laze, *murjeki*, *murtsuki*, *murt-*
sekyi, *kumtata**, *kuntata**.
- crust**, a dried c. *kaḡzo*, *kaḡzo*.
- cry**, n. *kuka*, pl. *koke-koke* ;
kuwa, *muriya*, pl. *muriyoyi*,
kira, *tsawa*, *tsuwa*, *sowa* ; loud
c. *ufu*, *ihu*, *tsuwa tsuwa*, *ku-*
ruruwa, *rakadi*, *rakwato* (Z.).
- cry**, intr. v. (cry out) *yin kuka*,
yin kurūruwa, *yin tsawa*,
rubsa (*rufsa*, *rafsa* or *rapsa*),
kuka ; raise a c. *ḡora kira* ;
c. for joy *ḡuḡa* ; c. wares for
sale *talla*, pl. *tallata* ; there
was a c. of fire *ana ta rigimar*
gobara.
- cubit**, n. *kāmu*, *sabi*, *zira'i**.
- cuckoo**, lark-heel c. or crow
pheasant *ragon maza*.
- cucumber**, African c. *ḡur-*
zunu.
- cucurbita**, n., see **gourd**.
- cud**, chewing the c. *tūka*.
- cultivate**, tr. v. *noma*, *nomi*,
nome ; cultivated land round
a town or village *karkara*,
karikara.
- cultivator**, n. *manomi*, pl.
manoma.
- cummerbund**, *mulufi*, *malufi*.
- cunning**, n., see **craft**.
- cup**, n. *tāsa*, pl. *tāsoshi*, *gora*,
pl. *gorina*, *ḡwariya*, *ḡoko* ;
a large c. *shintali*, *sin-*
tali or *shantali*, pl. *shin-*
talai.
- cup**, to *yin ma wani kafo*.
- cupboard**, n. *loloki**, pl. *lolo-*
*kai**.
- cupping**, n. *yin kafo*, *jiniya*.
- curb**, n. *mūdu*.
- curdle**, to *daskāra* ; to cause
to c. *daskāre*.
- curds**, n., of milk *guntsari*.
- cure**, tr. v. *warkadda* ; to be

- cured *warke*; the fool is incurable *mahaukachi ba shi warkewa*.
- cured, part. *warkakke*, fem. *warkakkiya*, pl. *warkakku*.
- curl, intr. v. (used of a snake) *tākura*.
- curls, a woman's c. *dauri*, *taura*.
- current, (of a stream) *igiyar ruwa*.
- curse, n. *la'ana*, *wada*, *wadda*.
- curse, tr. v. *wa mugunta*, *la'anta*, *la'ane la'anchi*, *zage*, *ḡāchi*, *gāmi* may you be cursed! *tir*, *uss*, *ush*.
- cursed, part. *la'ane*, fem. *la'ana*, pl. *la'anu*.
- curtain, n. (made of fibre and let down in front of a doorway) *tsaiwa*, *bunu*, *arsabari*, *zabori*, *kyawre*.
- cuscus, n. *kuskus**, *kuskus**.
- cuscus-grass, *jema*.
- cushion, n. *laferu*, *leferu*, *laheru*, pl. *laferai*; c. placed on a donkey *akumari*.
- custodian, *mai-riko*.
- custom, n. *ada*, *al'ada*, *ta'ada*, *tāda* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, *sabo**, *hanya**, pl. *hanyoyi**, *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.
- cut, tr. v. *yanka*, *yanke*, *sare*, *keta*, *farke*, *yin saisaya* (or *sosaya*); c. into small pieces *sassabe*, *yanyana* (K.), *yan-yanka*, *fāfa*, *girtsa*; c. into strips *rede*; c. round *shankumbu*; c. down *kade*; c. cloth *shifta*, *shifche*; c. with a hoe *shema*; c. down the harvest, *girbi*; one who cuts off the hands of thieves *birgiji*.
- cut, part. *yankakke*, fem. *yankakka*, pl. *yankakku*; *sararre*, fem. *sararriya*, pl. *sararru*.
- cuticle, *fiska*, see *skin*.
- cutlass, n. *takobi*, pl. *takuba*, *tama*, *tagomas*, *tamogashi*, *adda*.
- cutting off of hands (a punishment for thieving), *yankan hannu*.
- cutting-up, *yanyane*.
- cylinder, c. on which thread is wound for use in shuttle *kwarkwaro*.
- cymbal, a kind of *kuge*.
- dagger, n. *cheru* (S.), *kanga**, *wuka**.
- daily, adv. *kowache rana*.
- dainty, he is d. over his food *shina da taran* (or *tadan*) *abinchi*.
- dais, *tugufa**.
- dam, for catching fish *labuni*.
- damage, n. *ḡarna*, *taskāro* (S.).
- damage, to *ḡarnata*.
- damp, n. *daushi*, *damshi*, *laima*, *rīma* (S.).
- damsel, n. *yarinya*, *buduruwa*.

dance, n. *rawa, lela, zariya, dawara*; a d. performed by young men *hauta, lela*; an inspired d. *bori*.

dance, intr. v. *yin rawa, taka rawa, raya, wura, yin zariya, tsalle, birkida*.

dancer, a *dan foto*.

dancers, e.g. those possessed by a spirit *masu-bori, masu-boli*.

dancing, *tsalle, zariya*.

dandruff, n. *toto, totau, tautau*.

danger, n. *hatsari* (K.), *hadari* (S.), *abin tsoro*; a dangerous place *wurin tsoro*.

dangle, to *wo lilo*.

daring, adj., see **brave**.

dark, adj. *da dūfu*; phr. it is d. *ya yi dūfu* or *rana ta dushe*.

darkness, n. *dūfu, dūfuwa, dushewa*; utter d. *dūfu kirin*.

darn, to *yin lalaftu*, see seq.

darning, *lalaftu, lalaptu, lalabtu, laplaptu**.

dart, n. *hankaltilo, hargi, margi*; a d. used for catching fish *hāgu, zāgo*.

dart, (the name of a bird, Plotus) *kazarruwa, māḍundumi*.

dash together, tr. v. *gwabra, gobure*.

date, n. (tree and fruit) *dabino*;

desert d. *aduwa*; a bunch of dates *zaraba**; dates tied up in a mat *lubiya*; a species

of dark coloured d. *zabiya*, pl. *zabiyoyi*.

date, n. (time of an event) *yayi, zamani**, *lokachi**, *wokachi**.

daub, tr. v. *yāba, yābe, damfara, shafa**, *shafe**.

daubing, *yābe*, pl. *yābe-yābe*.

daughter, n. *diya* (S.), pl. *yam-mata* (for *yan-mata*), *ya* (K.).

dawdle, intr. v. *yin tsaiko*.

dawdling, n. *fatara, tsaiko*.

dawn, n. *wayewa, assuba, fudowa, fudawa*; the first glimmer of light before the d. *aljiḡir, alfiḡir, jijiḡi, jijiḡ, jibjib*; let us start before the d. *mu yi jijiḡi*.

dawn, intr. v. *waye*; the day dawns *gari ya waye* or less commonly *Allah ya waye*.

day, n. (the time from sunrise to sunset) *rana, ran* or *ra*, pl. *ranuka, ranukka* or *ranaku*, used as masc. or fem., *wuni*; a day's work *wunin aiki*; (twenty-four hours) *kwana*, pl. *kwanaki* or *kwanukka*; to-day *yo, yau*; to stay at a place for a d. *yini*; three days ago *wanshekaranjiya*; the d. before yesterday *shekaranjiya*; yesterday *jiya*; the following d. *rana mai-zakuwa*; to-morrow *gobe, kashēgari* (Kats.),

wanshekare (S.); the d. after to-morrow *jibi*; the d. after the d. after to-morrow *gata*; the d. after *gata*, i.e. the fifth d. *chitta*; some d. or other *ko ba dade*; the last d. *ranan gobe* or *ranan kiyama*; the d. on which *randa* (a shortened form of *rana da*); every d. *kowache rana*; all d. *rana duka*; the d. on which a child receives its name *ran suna*. When d. is used with ordinal numbers the singular form is usually employed, thus: three days *rana uku* or *kwana uku*; to do a thing every d. *dimanta*. The days of the week are: Sun. *lahadi* or *ladi*, Mon. *litini*, Tues. *talata*, Wed. *laraba* or *larba*, Thurs. *alhamis*, Fri. *aljimu'a*, *jumma'a*, *jummu'a*, *aljimma*, *jimma'a* or *jimmu'a*, Sat. *assubat*, *assabat* or *assibit*.

dazzle, tr. v., to d. the eyes *makamche*; the lightning has dazzled thine eyes *walkiya ta makamche ka*.

dead, adj. *matache*, fem. *matachiya*, pl. *matattu*, *amache*, *mamachi*, fem. *mamachiya*; a d. body *mushe*, *gawa*, pl. *gawawaki*; (that which has died of itself) *guba*; see **die**.

deaf, adj. *kuruma*, *kurma*, pl.

kurumai; d. and dumb *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

deaf, be, intr. v. *kuruma*

deafness, n. *kurumchi*, *karumta*, *bebantaka*, *tosuwa* (S.).

dealer, a corn d., fem. *maanu niya*.

dear, adj. (costly) *da tsada*; to be d. *tsadanta*; (beloved) *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*, *lele*, *abin kamna**; to be d. *yin tsada*.

dearness, n. (high price) *tsada*.

dearth, n., see **want**.

death, n. *mutuwa*, *machewa*, *rasuwa*, *jinkiri**, *mata**, (lit. last sleep) *makarin barchi*; a natural d. *mutuwar Allah*; sudden d. *saukin mutuwa*; the angel of d. (lit. he who separates) *marabiwa*.

death-watch, (insect) *gunda*, *gumda*, *kichichiya*.

debt, n. *bashi*, pl. *basusuka*, *ramche*, *ranche*; to pay a d. *biya bashi*; to get into d. *chi bashi*; to recover a d. *biyo bashi*, *bim bashi*; surety for payment of a d. *lamuni*, phr. he is in my debt *shina da bashina* or *ina bin sa bashi*.

debtor, n. *mai-chin bashi*, *mai-karban bashi*, *mai-daukan bashi*, *mabachi*, *mabarchi* (K.).

decapitation, *kunḡurus, ku-runḡus, ḡurungus, ḡungurus*.

decay, to *ruḡa, riḡa*.

decayed, *ruḡabbe*, pl. *ruḡabbu*.

deceit, n. *munafuchi* (S.), *manafuchi, munafichi* (K.), *munafuki, barkwanchi, rikichi, haiṅchi, wayo, lābo**, *rudī**, *yaudara, algus, algusu, algushi, rigingini, zankam* (K.); (lit. two hearts) *zuchiya biyu*.

deceitful, adj. *marikichi, mai-rigingini, mai-zalumchi, mai-algus, mai-algusu, azzalumi, marude, mai-rude*, pl. *maruda, mai-yaudara*.

deceitfully, adv. *da zalumchi*; to treat d. *yin zalumchi*; to act d. *rikiche*.

deceive, tr. v. *ruḡa, rudī, rude; chuchi, chuche, yaudara, shamata, shamache, zantara, hāge*.

deceived, be, v. *rudu, rude*.

deceived, part. *rudadde*, fem. *rudadda*, pl. *rudaddu*.

deceiver, n. *marude, mai-rude*, see *deceitful*.

decide, tr. v. (of a judge) *raba, yanka shari'a, yanka magana*.

deck, to *sirta, suturta*.

declaration, e.g. before a judge, *biyayya*.

declare, tr. v. *hadichi, labarta, habarta, faḡa*; d. openly *bayāna, bayēna, chashe*; d.

positively *furuchi, furchi, hurchi, hurta*.

decline, v. (grow less) *karkāta, rage*; the day declines *rana ta tawaya*, see *decrease*; (refuse) *ḡi, ḡiya*.

decorous, adj., see *becoming*.

decrease, n. *rāguwa*.

decrease, tr. v. *rāgi, rāge, tawaya, tauwi*; intr. v. *ragu, tawaya, tawayo, tauwi, tauye, kasas da*.

decree, n. *ajali**.

deed, n., see *act*.

deep, adj. *da zurfi, mai-zurfi*; a d. place (usually with water in it) *gulbi*, pl. *gulabe*.

deer, n., see *antelope*.

defect, n. *lāhani, aibi, aibu*; see *blemish*.

defence, *kāriya, datsiya**.

defend, tr. v., see *guard*.

defer, tr. v. *fāsa*.

defiance, *tamanya, tamayya* (S.).

defile, tr. v. *tozarta, ḡasanta, ḡazamtad da*; see *pollute*.

defraud, tr. and intr. v. *chin kura, chin riba, sāfa* (S.), *zantara*; one who defrauds *maizamba, mai-chin kura*; see *cheat*.

defy, to *harzuka ga, hasala ga*.

degradation, *ḡanḡanchi*.

degrade, to *maida baya*.

dejected, see **disheartened**.

delay, n. *fāshi*, *yauchi*, *dadewa*, *indainda*, *jinkiri*; without d. *babu fashi*.

delay, intr. v. *yin fāshi*, *yin yauchi*, *wanzu*, *dada*; to d. to deliver a message *ida labari*; he delays to come *ya yi nauwa* or *ya yi yauchin zakuwa*; to d., tr. *fāsa*.

deliberate, intr. v. *yin shāwara*.

deliberately, adv. *da gangan*.

deliberation, n. *shāwara*, pl. *shawarori*, *shawaruna*, *shāwarwara*; place of d. *wurin shāwara*.

delicacy, a *abin marmari*.

delight, tr. v., see **please**.

delirious, adj., d. persons *masu-bori*, *masu-boli*, *yan-bori*.

deliver, tr. v. (give over) *bada*, *bashi*, *yarda*; (save) *cheto*, *cheche*, *tsiras da*, *tsirad da*, *tsarda*, *chira*, *kwache*, *kwashi*.

deliverance, n. *cheto*, *tsiraro*, *machechiya*, *tsira*, *fansa*, *pansa*, *hansa*.

delivered, be, v. *haifu*.

deliverer, n. *machechi*, pl. *macheta*.

demon, n. *aljan*, *aljani*, fem. *aljana*, pl. *aljannu* or *aljinnu*, *jinnu*; *bori*, pl. *borurūka*, *borurūwa*.

demonstrate, to *yin tabbas*.

demonstration, *gaye*.

denial, n. (dispute in which something is denied) *gardama*, *musu*, *jayaiyya*.

deny, tr. v. *musu*, *hana**, *ki*.

depart, intr. v. *fīta*, *rāsu*, *rabu*, *harā*.

departure, n. *fīta*.

deposit, n. *amāna*, *karo*, *lamuni**; to steal a d. *chin amāna*; those who steal a d. *masu-tabin amāna*; a place in which to d. anything *maaji*.

depression, a *kwāri*, *kware* (S.).

deprivation, n., e.g. of goods *wofi*.

depth, n. *zurfi*; he got out of his d. *ruwa ya sha kansa*; it is out of a man's d. here *ruwa ya shake mutum a nan*.

depute, to *wākala*.

deputy, *māmayi*, *na'ibi*; see **regent**.

deranged, a person, n. *mai-wauta*, *mahaukachi*; to act as one d. *yin raurawa*.

deride, tr. v. *yin ba'a*, *ba'a*, *zunda*, *yin zunde*.

derision, n. *ba'a*, *zunde*, *zumde*.

descend, intr. v. *shida* or *shida*, *shide*, *shido*, *jida*, *sabka*, *sapka*; descend! *jido*.

descendants, *zuri'a*.

desert, n. (i.e. a solitary place) *dāwa*, *daji*, *sabra**, *saura**, *hamāda*, *jeji*.

desert, (worthiness) *chinchinta*, *chanchanta*.

deserter, n. (in war) *kazum*.

designedly, adv. *da gangan*.

desire, n. 1. (wish) *so*, *kamna**, *marādi* (S.), *murādi* (K.), *fata*; eager d. *kwalama* (K.), *kaḡara*, *marmari*; desires *zuchiya**, *nafsi**, *koḡai*, *kwadai*; evil d. *shawa*, *sha'awa*, *gūri*.

2. (the thing wished for) *abinso*, *maradi*, *muradi*, *guri*, *nūfi*, *nūfe*; he accomplished his d. *ya chika haḡama*.

desire, tr. v. *so*, *nūfe*, *nūfi*, *yin kaḡara*, *yin fāta*; to burn with d. *ḡona*, *ḡuna**, *ḡone*, *kwadaye*, *lamiranta*; intr. v. direct the d. *maida kamna*.

desist, intr. v. *daina*, *dena*, *bari*, *bar*.

desolate, to make d. *yin kaḡaita*.

desolation, n. *kango*, pl. *kangogi* or *kanguna*; *afko*, *kaḡaita*, *riḡawa*, *riḡawa*, *ruzgawa* (S.), *rubzawa* (K.).

despair, to *fida zuchiya*.

despicable, adj., see **despised**.

despise, tr. v. *rena*, *kyale*, *yin tsantsani*, *tarsa**.

despised, part. *renanne*, fem. *renanna*, pl. *renannu*, *kaḡastache*, pl. *kaḡastu*.

despising, part. *renawa*, *reni*; the d. of advice *renin wayo*.

despoil, tr. v. (in war) *yin buruntu*, *chin ganima*.

destiny, n. *ajali*, *jinkiri*, *ḡudira*, *ḡudura*, *ḡadara*, *rābo**.

destitute, one who is, n. *gande*, *gindau*, *gyande*, fem. *gyanduwa*, pl. *gyandaye*, *fanko*, *matsiyachi*, pl. *matsiyata*, *mayunwachi**, pl. *mayanwata**, *ḡomaro*, *karare*; cf. *rashi*, *maras*.

destroy, tr. v. *bāta*, *bāche*, *ḡachi*, *bātas*, *halāka*, *afka*, *fāsa*, *ḡanna*, *yakuta*, *chi**.

destroyed, be, v. *lalache*, *gurḡache*, *yakuche*, *yamutse**; about to be d. *mai-afkawa*.

destroyed, part. *bātache*, fem. *bātachiya*, pl. *bātattu*.

destruction, n. *afko*, *halaka*, *lalata*, *ta'adi*, *ta'ada*, *bātachi*.

detain, tr. v. *riko*, *tsaida*, *tsai-she*, *tsayas da*, *tsere*, *hana*.

detect, tr. v. (e.g. in a fault) *ritse*, *rutse*.

detention, *riko*.

deter, tr. v., see **prevent**.

determined, one who is d. *mai-daurin anniya*.

detour, to make a d. *zaga*.

devastate, tr. v. *yin afko*, *yin kaḡaita*, *waso*.

developed, i.e. full-grown *gawurtache*, fem. *gawurtachiya*, pl. *gawurtatu*; *kaḡaitache*.

deviate, intr. v. (from a straight course) *bauda*, *baude* used

with *hanya*; *ratsa*, *yin ratse*; causing to d. *baudewa*.

deviation, *ratse*, *ratsowa*.

device, n. *hila*, *fila*.

devil, n. *shaitan*, *shetan*, *shaitani*, *iblis*, *ibilis*; see **demon**.

devoid of, see **without**.

devour, tr. v. *rida*, *chinye*, *chanye*, *chingi*, *hadiye*, *rushe* (K.).

dew, n. *rāba*; a drop of d. *digar rāba*.

dialect, *yare*, *halshe**

diarrhoea, n. *gūdawa*, *gūdun-daji*, *zawo*, *zawayi*; a medicine for d. *filasko*.

dibble, (hoe) *sungumi*.

dice, n. *kuri'a*, *karen chacha*; a throw of d. *jefan kuri'a*; to cast d. *yin modi* (cowrie shells are generally used instead of d. for purposes of gambling).

dictation, writing from d. *shibta**

die, intr. v. *mache*, *machi*, *mutu* (this is seldom used except to denote the past tense), *rāsu*; d. a natural death *yin mushe*.

differ, intr. v. *yin dabam*, *yin daban*, *yin bambam*.

difference, n. *dabamchi*, *bambamchi*, *bambanta*, *barambaran*; what is the d. between this and that?

minene bambamchin wannan da wanchan? or *ina marabin wannan da wanchan?* there is no d. *ba su bambanta*; differences (points of variance) *tsakankani*.

different, adj. *dabam*, *daban*, *dabam dabam*; d. from *dabam da*, *dabam dāga*, *bambam dāga*; a d. sort *iri dabam*.

differentiate, to *bambanta*, *yin dabam*.

difficult, adj. *da wuya*; it is d. to know all things *abin duniya da wuyan sani*; it is too d. for me *ya buwaye ni*, *ya faskare ni*, *ya faye ni*, *na kasa* or *ya ji karifina*.

difficulty, n. *wuya*; with d. *dakyat* (S.), *dakyal*, *dakyar* (K.).

dig, tr. v. *gina*, *gino*, *tona**, *haka*; d. in the ground *fuda*, *turbude*, *yasa*, *yashe*, to dig a new well *gina rigiya*; to dig out or clean out an old well *yasa rigiya*; d. up land *karta*, *kirta*; d. with a hoe *shera*, *hira* (S.); d. holes, e.g. for planting trees *bisa*, *būshe*.

dignified, adj., a d. person *datijo*.

dignity, *mutumchi*.

diligence, n. *koḳari*, *himma*, *kwazo*, *anniya*.

- diligent**, be, intr. v. *yin anniya*, *maida himma*, *maida kōkari*; be d. ! *ku bada kōkarinku*.
- diligent**, adj. *da kwazo*, *mai-kwazo*.
- diligently**, adv. *da himma*, *da anniya*.
- dim**, to be, intr. v. *dindimi*, *dundumi*; to become d. *dushe* or *dishe*.
- diminish**, see **decrease**.
- dimness**, n. *dushewa*, *dishewa*; d. of sight *makamchi*, *ḡambarakwai**.
- dip**, tr. v. *tsoma*, *soma**; d. under water *nuta*, *nutse*, *nutsa*; to d. the head in water *yin kunduma*.
- dipping**, (e.g. of meat in soup) *tsomi*.
- direct**, adj., e.g. a d. path *hanya sosai*.
- direction**, *sassa*, *bige*, *guge*, *waje*.
- directly**, adv. *yanzu*, *ko yanzu*, *nan da nan*.
- dirt**, n. *gwiḡa*, *gwiḡa*, *gwiḡi*, *dauda*, *kazāmi*, *kazamta*, *kazanta*.
- dirty**, adj. *da dauda*, *kazami*, fem. *kazama*; to make d. *yin dauda*.
- disagree**, intr. v., see **quarrel**.
- disagreement**, n. *saḡani*, *swaḡani* (S.), see **discord**.
- disappear**, intr. v. *gurbache**, *rutsa**.
- disappointed**, be, intr. v. *kalmashe zuchiya*.
- disapproval**, a gesture of d., the hand being extended and all the fingers pointed forwards, *ambola*, *dakuwa*.
- disaster**, see **misfortune**.
- discern**, tr. v. *ji**, *gane*.
- discernment**, n. *basira*.
- discharge**, tr. v. 1. (fire off) *buga*, *halbi*, *harbi*.
2. (send away) see **dismiss**.
- disciple**, n. *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*.
- discomfort**, n. *maḡo*.
- discontent**, an exclamation of *gasa*.
- discontented**, adj. one who is d. *matsiyachi*, pl. *matsiyata*.
- discord**, n. *fasadi*, *fasada*, *kīyayya*, *swaḡani*, *rikichi**, *fusuma*, *gardama**; see **dispute**.
- discount**, n. *jāra*; a special d. *la'ada*; what d. is allowed? *ina rangwame?*
- discourage**, tr. v. *sake fuska* (lit. to change the face).
- discover**, tr. v. *ḡaga*, see **find**.
- discussion**, n. *maganta*, *magantawa*, *magantirwa*; to hold a d. *yin maganta*.
- disdain**, tr. v., see **despise**.

disease, n. *chiwuta*, *chiwo*.

disgrace, n. *walakanchi*; see shame.

disgrace, tr. v. *falasa*, *fallasa*, *palasa*, *kumyata*.

disgust, n. *kyama*, see dislike.

dish, n., a large wooden d. *akushi*, *akoshi*, pl. *akussa*, *jemo*; a flat d. made of plaited grass *taitai*; d.-cover (made of plaited grass) *fai fai*, pl. *fiyafai*; the knob which forms the top of a d.-cover *tuku*, *tuntu*, *tsoro*, *tukkuwa*.

dishearten, tr. v. *kariya zuchiya*; phr. you d. me *ka kariya ma ni zuchiya*, I am disheartened *zuchiyata ta bachi*; see discourage.

dishonour, n. *kankanchi*, *kumya**.

dishonour, to *kaskasta*, *kuskunta*.

dislike, n. *haushi*, *kiyayya*, *kiyeya*, *kyeya*, *kyama*; see hate.

dislike, tr. v. *ki*, *kiya*, *yankan kamna*, *tsangwama*; they d. him *suna jin haushinsa*.

dislocate, to, a bone *gule*.

dismay, n., see fear.

dismount, intr. v. *shido*, *sabka*, *shida kasa*, *jida*; see alight.

disobedience, n. *kinji*, *kiwuya*, *shishige*, *tayazwa*.

disobedient, he is d. *shi ne mai-kangara*.

disobey, tr. v. *ki ji*, *tayas*.

disperse, tr. v. *kawas da*, *watsa*, *ware*, *walwache*, *warwate*; disperse! *ku waru*.

dispersed, *wararre*.

displease, tr. v. *bata zuchiya*; this displeased him *wannan ya bata zuchiyarsa*; see distress.

disposition, n. (temper) *hali*, pl. *halaye*; good d. *farin jini* (lit. white blood); bad d. *bakin zuchiya* (lit. blackness of heart); *lalata*, *kafirchi*, *mugun gashi**.

dispute, n. *gardama*, *sababi*, *subabi*, *binchiki*, *fusuma*, *swabani*, *tsalmi*, *tsarmi*.

dispute, intr. v. *yin gardama*, *yin kokanto*.

disregard, tr. v. *rena*, *kyale*, *shamuqe*; see despise.

disrespectful, d. language or 'contempt of court' *ashar*.

dissemble, intr. v., see pretend.

dissent, intr. v., express d. by turning the head away *kauda kai*, *girgiza kai*.

dissimulation, *riya*.

dissolute, adj., see profligate.

dissolve, 1. tr. v. *narke*.

2. intr. v. *narku*.

distance, n. *nesa*, *nisa*, (aloofness) *nesanta*; to place at a d. *nesanta*; to keep a d. from *nesanchi*, *nisanchi*; a

measure of d. (as far as the eye can reach) *jetaka**; I saw him from a d. *na hange shi dāga nesa.*

distant, adj. *dāga nesa, da nesa, nesa*; d. from *nesa dāga.*

distinct, adj., see **different**.

distinguish, to *kebe, kebanche, kebantā, rarrabe*; it was impossible to d. between *ba a rarrabe.*

distorted, *amurgude.*

distrain, to *wāshe.*

distress, n. *nawāya, wuya, wahala, matsiyachi, matsiyata, tsananta.*

distress, tr. v. *tsananche, sa wahala, dawainiyasda, dawainiyashe, nawāya*; that which causes d. *abin da wuya.*

distressed, be, v. *fargaba, firgaba, matsu, masu, jin wahala*; I was d. *na gamu da nawaya.*

distribute, tr. v. *rāba, rābas da, rābas* (without obj.), *kawama.*

district, n. *gari**, *wuri**, *gunduma* (S.).

distrust, to *farga**, *tsangwama.*

ditch, n. *ganwa, wuriya.*

dive, intr. v. *nutsa* (K.), *nuto* (S.), *nutse, nitso, ninkāya, auka.*

divide, tr. v. *rāba, rābi**, *rabas da, rarrabi, rarraba, kāsa*; to d. in half *bāra.*

divided, be, intr. v. *rābu, warwari, wawari.*

divided, part. *rababbe, fem. rababba, pl. rababbu; mararraba.*

divination, *duba.*

diving, n. *nūta.*

division, n. *rābo, rābu, pl. raberabe; mararrabi*; the dividing point of two roads *mararrabin hanya*; d. of a town (within the walls) *shiya, unguwa, pl. unguwai or unguni**; d., i.e. allotted portion, *fasali.*

divorce, n. *sakewa, shiki, yayi**.

divorce, tr. v., d. a woman *shika, saki, kore* all followed by *make.*

dizziness, *jiri.*

do, tr. and intr. v. 1. (act) *yi aiki.*

2. (accomplish) *yi, i, yiwa, iwa, yiwo, iwo, wa, aiki.*

3. (succeed) *yi.*

4. to do a thing once *tāba.*

5. to labour at *aikata*; phr.

it is done *an yi shi*, it does (i.e. it is satisfactory) *ya yi*; I never did so *ban tāba yin haka*; can it be done? *shi yiwu?* it cannot be done *ba shi yiwuwa*; which way did he go? *wanne waje ya yi?* *na yi* I did, is often contracted into *nai.*

doctor, n. *mai-māgani*, *attabibi**, *likita**; a quack d. *boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

dog, n. *kāre*, f. *kāriya*, pl. *kar-nuka*, *auzu*; house d. *kāren gida*; wild hunting d. *kyalkechi*, *karkechi*, *kyarkyechi*, *kirikinji*, *kilikinji*; a mad d. *mahaukachin kāre*.

dollar, n. *dāla* (usually applied to the Austrian Maria Theresa d.), *riyali*, *liyar*, *madafa**.

dominion, n., see **kingdom**.

done, part., see **do**.

donkey, n. *jaki*, fem. *jakanya*, pl. *jakai*, *jakkai* or *jakuna*; d.'s pad *lāheru*, *laferu*; for names of various species of donkeys, see **ass**.

door, n. *ḳoḳa*, pl. *ḳoḳofi*, *ḳoḳofuna* or *ḳoḳai*; *ḳoḳal gida*, *gambu*; doorway *bākin ḳoḳa*; a mat made of grass or reeds let down in front of doorway *tufaniya*, *arsabari*, *askuniya*, *maruḳin ḳoḳa*, *tsabore*, *zabore*, *bunu*, pl. *bunai*, *ḳyaure*, *tsaiwa*, *tsawaya*; a d. made of corn stalks *kwadaḳe* (S.); d. post *ḳwabrin ḳoḳa*, *kulkin ḳoḳa*; pole or bar to keep the d. shut *mataushin ḳoḳa*, *madogara*, *gagarabado*; door-keeper *sarikin ḳoḳa*; a d.

made of palm planks *ḳyauren ḳyami*.

dot, n. (e.g. the d. placed above or below a letter) *gūda* (S.); the large d. placed below the line to denote the sound *e yamalā**, *imala**.

doubt, n. *zuchiya biyu* (lit. two hearts), *tambaba*, *kokanto*, *tantama*, *zulumi*, *zalumi*, *zato*, *shakka*; without d. *babu wawa*, *babu shakka*, *babu shak*, *babu tambaba*; an expression of d. *wai*.

doubt, intr. v. *yin* (or *da*) *zuchiya biyu*, *yin tambaba*, *yin tantama*, *yin shakka*, *hasashi*, *hasashe*.

dough, n. *gaya*.

dove, n. *kurchiya*, pl. *kurāche*, *kurchiyoyi*; ring d. *wala*, pl. *walu*, *aguwa*; red-eyed d. *hasbiya*, *hazbiya*; bronze-winged d. *garda*; long-tailed African d. *bardo*; a rock d. *jāba dutsi*.

down, adv. *a ḳasa*, *a ḳas*; to put d. *sako*.

down, n. (of birds) *sabon gashi*.

dowry, n. *gāra*, *baiko*.

doze, to *gyangyadi*, *yin angaje*.

drag, tr. v. *janye*, *jaye*; see **draw**.

dragon-fly, *masu**.

drain, (ditch) *wuriya*.

drake, n. *zakaran dumya, sa kaza*.

draw, tr. v. *ja, jajaya, kak-kare, karkare*; to d. forth or out *fisge, fizge, fusge, fishshe, zara, tabe, tabi, sakatta, saka-che*; to d. towards oneself *jarwo, zaro*; to d. after one *jaku*; d. a line or a furrow *kirta, karta*; to d. strokes *zāna*; to d. a sketch *sifata, sifache*; to d. out *sabule*; d. a sword *zara, zari*; to d. the foot on the ground *murjekki, mur-tsiki*; to d. water *jan ruwa, gugana, dēbe ruwa, dēbo ruwa, dawka ruwa*; to d. near *dūno**; to d. back *jayi*; to d. out, e.g. from water *tsamo*.

drawer, n. *akodi*, sanduki*, sanduki**.

drawing, (sketch) *sifa*.

dream, n. *mafalki* (S.), *mafarki* (K.).

dream, intr. v. *yin mafalki*.

dregs, n. *gwiba, gwibi*.

dress, n., gorgeous d. *daraja*; see **clothes**.

dress, tr. v. (put on clothes) *sa*; d. leather *jemi*; d. meat *feda nama*.

dressed, part. (prepared) *gyar-tachche*, fem. *gyartatta*, pl. *gyartattu*.

dresser, n. (of leather) *majemi, mai-jima*.

dried, part. *kekasashe*, fem. *kekasashiya*, pl. *kekasassu, busashe, busheshe, bushebushe, sanyaye, shanyaye*, fem. *shanyaya*, pl. *shanyayu*; dried-up tree *kalun itache, kwaurin* (or *kwabrin*) *itache**.

drill, to d. soldiers *birga*.

drill, of soldiers *rawa**.

drink, n. *abinsha*; a d. made of honey, pepper and water *betso, baiso**; a d. made with flour, etc. *koko*; an intoxicating d. made from guinea-corn *giya*; drinking-water *ruwan-sha*.

drink, tr. v. *sha, sharwo, shanye, shanya, shaya*; to d. greedily *dirki*; to give to d. *shadda, shayad da, shayas du*; it is undrinkable *ba shi shayruwa*.

drinking, n. *sha*, pl. *shaye-shaye*.

drippings, e.g. from trees *ruwan ganye*.

drive, tr. v. (d. away) *kōra, kōre, koro, famfare, i ma, iza, ije, yin artai*; d. to a distance *nesanta*; d. away in disgust *kaskasta, kusunkunta*; d. out *fisha, fishshe*.

driver-ant, n. *kwarkwasa, kwalkwasa*.

driving, n. (away in war) *artai, kōra*.

droop, to *lankwasa, lankwashe*.

drooping, *lankwaso*.

drop, n. *ḍiga*, *ḍugo*, pl. *ḍugogi*, *ḍāso*, *ḍarso*, *tarfi*; a d. of dew *ḍugon raba*.

drop, tr. and intr. v. 1. (pour out by drops) *tarfi*, *tarfa*, *yin ḍarshi*; it is dropping *yana ḍiga*.

2. (let fall) *saki*, *tsaga*, *kubche*.

3. intr. v., see **fall**.

dropping, n. *ḍigo*.

dropsy, n. *fāra*.

dross, n. (scum of metals) *kashin tama*, *kwam makera*.

drought, n. *farin yunwa*, *fari**, *firi*, *furi*.

drown, tr. v. *gangante**, *nitsashe**; intr. v. *nitso*, *sha ruwa*; he was drowned *ya sha ruwa*.

drum, n. *kīda*, *kīdi*, *kalango*, *kurkutu* (S.), *kuntukuru**; a large d. *ganga*, pl. *ganguna*, *banga*, *dundufa*, *gangami*, *jāmi**; a small d. *bishi*; a d. shaped like an hour-glass held under the arm, covered with skin in front but open behind *kotso*, *koso*, *jauje*, *juje*; a d. made out of a gourd *talle*; a d. with pointed bottom carried in a royal procession *tambari*; a stringed d. open at one end *kuriya*, *kwuriya*; the sound of a d. *was**, *girib*; large d. used

by a king *tajini*; see *tafashe* (S.).

drum, intr. v. *yin kīdi*, *yin wargi**, *kankada*, *kīda*.

drummer, n. *makīdi*; a mounted d. *masarchi*.

drumming, n. *kīdi*, pl. *kīde-kīde*; (accompanied by dancing) *kīdin dambe*, *garaya*.

drum-stick, *makīdi*, *makādi*.

drunk, to be *yin maye*, *bugu*; particip. *bugage*.

drunkard, n. *mashayi*.

drunkenness, n. *hajijiya*, *maye*.

dry, adj., see **dried**.

dry, 1. tr. v. *kekashe*, *kekasa*, *bushu*, *sanya*, *shanya*, *kāfe*; put out to d. *sanyato*, *jibe*; to d. in the sun *ḥāri**; to d. meat before a fire *kyafa*, *kyapa*.

2. intr. v. *shekare*; to d. up (used of a well) *kāfe*, (wither or d. up as water) *tsotsa**.

dryness, *kekāsa*.

dry season, n. *rani*.

duck, n. *kazan yariba*, *agwagwa*; small water d. *jalili*; African tree d. *kirinjijiya*; comb of a d. *dani*.

duck, v., to d. the head *kauche kai*.

dumb, (d. and deaf person) *bebe*, pl. *bebaye*.

dum-palm, n., see **palm**.

dun, to d. a person for debt *bi*.

dung, n. *kāshi*, *taki*, *artai*, *najasa*, *najasu*, *gaitsi*, *toroso*, *taroso*, *tutu*, *tsura*, *tsula* (S.);

d. of cows or camels *kandilu*;

d. hole *salga*, pl. *salgagi*,

sarga, *salanga* (Zanf.), *bayan*

*gida**, *kwarware*; d. hill

ujai, *jibji*, *birbizo*, *bizo* (S.).

dungeon, n. *kurkuku*, see **prison**.

duration, *matsayi*.

during, prep. *chikin*, *a*, *da*, *ga*, *muddar ransa* d. (or all) his life.

dust, n. *ḡura*, *toka**, pl. *to-kuna**; d. storm *guguwa*, *holoko*, *huluku*.

dwarf, n. *wadā*, fem. *wadaniya*, pl. *wadani*, *kūru*.

dwel, intr. v. *zamna*, *zauna*.

dweller, n. *mai-zamna*.

dwelling, n. *mazamni*, *ma-zauni*, *wurin zamna*, *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* or *shigifofi*.

dye, n. *rīna*; a black d. *kwaloko**; a reddish d. *galura*; a yellow clay used as a d. for women's faces *dāla*; a red d. *majigi*.

dye, tr. v. *rini*, *rina*, *yin tabsa*, *tūra*, *yin tūri*; d. pit *mārīna*, pl. *mārīnai*, *karofi* (K.); a place where clothes are beaten when being dyed

mabugiya; owner of a d. pit or dyer *mārīni*, pl. *ma-surini*.

dyed, part. *rinanne*, fem. *rinanna*, pl. *rinannu*, *tūrarre*, fem. *turara*, pl. *turaru*.

dyeing, *tabsa*, *tausa*, *tūri*, *turanta*, *yanayi*.

dye, n., see **dye**.

dysentery, n. *gudun daji*, *gudun dawa*, *zawo*, *anago*, *ana gudawa*, *atuni*; medicine for d. *domashi*.

each, pron. adj. *kowanne*, fem. *kowache*; e. of us *kowan-nemu*; e. of them *kowan-nensu*.

eager, adj. *da kwarāka*.

eagerness, n. *kwadayi*, *koḡai*, *kwada**, *kwarāka*; see **desire**.

eagle, n. *jisasa* (K.); crested e. *angulun kwakwa*; white-necked e. *gagāfa*.

ear, n. *kunne*, pl. *kunnuwa*; hollow behind the ear *geto*, *gato*; wax in the e. *ḡwanyan kunne*, *daudan kunne*; to erect the ears *kere*; to turn back the ears *lāfe*; e. of corn *kube*, *zangarniya*, *zangarko*; e. of *gero* cooked for eating *tumu*.

early, adv. *wūri*, *da wūri*, *dauri*; very e. *wūri wūri*; e. in the morning *sassafe*,

fudowa, fudawa, tangarai, assuba; e. or an e. start *samako, sammako*.

earnest money, n. *amāna**, *shigam biya*.

earth, n. 1. (the world) *duniya*.

2. (soil) *kāsa*, pl. *kāsashe, kāsaisai, turḡaya, turḡa* (S.); very hard e. *tsandauri*.

earthquakes, *raye-rayen duniya*.

earth-worm, *tana*, pl. *tanu*.

earwig, *tsatso*.

easily, adv. *babu wuya, ba da wuya ba, sannu**, *da sauḡi*.

east, n. *gābas, gābaz**; one who comes from the e. *bagabasi*.

eastward, adv. *gabachi*.

easy, adj. that is easier *ya fi sauḡi*; see **easily**.

eat, tr. v. *chi*; to e. greedily *chanye, chinye, rushe* (K.), *ginsu, gundura, yin hamfude, hamfuḡi, gamba, chingi, dagwiya*; to snatch in order to e. *rida*; anything to e. *abinchi*; plenty to e. *zari, zowari, jibgi, lashe*; that which is good to e. *tutushi*; to give to e. *chida, chishe* or *chiyad da*; eating a little at a time *chiye-chiye*; cf. prov. to eat a little at a time is better than to eat up all at once *chiye-chiye ya fi chainyewa*; eating in secret

ḡurmusu; one who hides himself in order to e. *mai-ḡurmusu*.

eavesdrop, to *lāḡe*.

eavesdropping, *rafake*.

ebony-tree, *kainya, kaiwa*.

echo, n. *kuruwa, koguwa**, *jeji ya amsa*.

eclipse, n., e. of the moon *husufi* (Ar.), *kamunwata, dushewa*; e. of the sun *kusufi*.

ecstasy, n. *hauka, haukachi**.

edge, n. *ḡauye, ḡowi, ḡawachi**; (of stream) *refe, kauyen ruwa*; (of a knife) *kaiji*; (of a sword) *bāki*; (of cloth) *lafe, laji*; *madaji**, *chinkai**.

edged, adj. (sharp e.) *da kaiji*.

educate, tr. v. *yin reno**, *foro**.

education, n. *lādabi, karātu**.

effective, *mai-anfāni*.

egg, n. *ḡwai* (*ḡwoi*), *ḡwan kaza*, pl. *ḡwanyaye*; e. shell *kwasfa, kwasta*, pl. *kosfofi, kwasfofi*; *kambori, ḡamḡaroki, ḡawon ḡwai*; a bad e. *dunge*; yolk of e. *ḡwabduwa, ḡwabdua, ḡwanduwa*; a hen laying eggs *daḡwalwa*; to lay eggs *kanya ḡwai, aje ḡwai, ajiye ḡwai* (K.).

egg-plant, *ḡauta, yalo*.

egret, *zarḡi, zalḡi*; the great white e. or heron *farin zarḡi*; little e. *balbela, badbila, bilbila*.

Egypt, n. *Masar*, *Mazar**; the inhabitants of E. *masarawa*.
eight, adj. *takwas*.
eighteen, adj. *goma sha takwas*, *ishirin biyu babu*.
eighth, adj. *na-takwas*, fem. *ta-takwas*; one e. *sumuni*.
eighty, adj. *tamanin*.
either, adj. *ko*; e... or *ko... ko*; *walau**.
elaeis guineensis, n. (= oil palm) *kwakwa*.
elapse, intr. v. (of time) *shige*; see **finish**.
elasticity, *yauki*, *yabki*.
elbow, n. *kusuruwan hannu*, *sukuruwan hannu*, *diddigin hannu*, *gwiwar hannu*; from the e. to the shoulder *damtse*, *damchi*, pl. *damatsa* or *damutsa*.
elder, e. brother *wa*, pl. *yeye*; e. sister *ya*.
eldest, adj. *babba**, *ɗan fari*.
elect, tr. v., see **choose**.
elephant, n. *giwa*, pl. *giwaye*; a young e. *parma*; male e. *toron giwa*, *toro*; trunk of e. *hannun giwa*; tusks of e. (i.e. ivory) *hakorin giwa*, *haurin giwa*.
elephantiasis, n. *gugi*, *makulashe*.
eleven, adj. *goma sha ɗaya*, *sha ɗaya*.

eleventh, adj. *na-goma* (fem. *ta-goma*) *sha ɗaya*.
else, see **other**.
emaciated, part. a *rame*, *ramamme*; see **lean**.
emancipate, tr. v. *yanchi*, *bada ɗiyaruchi*.
embankment, *labuni*.
embark, intr. v. *hau jirigi*.
embarrassment, *fulako*, see **shame**.
embezzlement, *hainchi*.
embrace, tr. v. *runguma*, *rungume*.
embroider, tr. v. *yin sharaba*.
embroidered, (e.g. trousers) *mai-surfani*.
embroidery, n. *tindumi*, *sharaba*; e. on a shirt *algaba*, *aska*; e. on front of a tobe *kunkungaba*, *gudungaba*, *mumbari*.
embryo, *tayi* (S.).
emerald, n. *zumurruz**.
emetic, n. *katala*.
emir, n. *amiru*, *amiri*.
emperor, n. *sultan*.
emphasize, to *karfafa*.
employment, *safara* (S.).
emptiness, n. *wofi*, *yofi* (S.).
empty, a place that is e. *kango*, pl. *kangogi* or *kangaye*.
emulation, n. *kishi*, *kishiya*, pl. *kishiyoyi*, *gasa*.
enable, tr. v., see **help**.
encamp, intr. v. *shida*, *shide*, *sapka*, *sabka*, *sauka*.

encampment, n. *sansani, zango, wurin sabka.*

enchantment, *sihiri*; see **sorcery**.

encircling, n. *kewayaya, kewayo.*

enclosure, n. (for cattle, etc.) *garke, garge* (S.), *sayi*; see **fold**.

encompass, tr. v. (e.g. a town in war) *rize*.

encounter, tr. v. *gama da, gamu da, tariye.*

end, n. *kāre, karko, maḳari, maḳare, ḳarshe, makoma*; (boundary) *iyaka.*

end, 1. intr. v. *ḳāre, tsaya, tsayi, mutu**, *yamutse*; come utterly to an e. *ḳarḳāre.*

2. tr. v. *wanya, wanye, wanyi, kāre*; (e. conversation) *yanke magana*; the affair is ended *ya kare.*

endeavour, n. *koḳari.*

endeavour, intr. v. *yin koḳari*; one who endeavours *mai-koḳari.*

ending, *ḳarewa, karko, tuḳewa.*

endurance, *tasiri* (S.), see **courage**.

endure, 1. tr. v. *jimri, daure.*

2. intr. v. (suffer) *dauri*; (continue) *yin karko, daḳa, dadi.*

enduring, part. 1. (lasting) *dadewa, matabbāta.*

2. (suffering) see **patient**.

enemy, n. *abokin gāba, maḳiyi*, pl. *maḳiya, mai-ḳinji, magabchi.*

enfranchise, tr. v., see **free**.

English, adj. wherever the word is known the form *Ingliz* or *Ingilis* borrowed from the Arabs of N. Africa is used; an Englishman would be *mutum Ingilis.*

engrossed, to be e. in anything *shagula, natsu.*

enjoy, tr. v. *sha**, *chi**; to e. the shade *sha inuwa.*

enjoyment, n. *murna, abin murna*; see **joy**.

enlarge, tr. v. *faḳaḳa, yin girma.*

enmity, *gāba, zaman.*

enough, n. *da ya isa, buss, kul*; to have e. *ḳoshi*; one who has eaten e. *ḳosashshe*, pl. *ḳosasu*; it is e. *ya isa, ya ḳoshi**.

enquire, see **inquire**.

ensign, n. *tuta*, pl. *tutochi.*

enslave, tr. v. *maida bawa, bautad da*; to be enslaved *shiga bauta.*

ensure, to *wajabta*, see **certain**.

entangle, to *nanade, dāne**, *jiche* (S.), *ḳifa* (K.), *surmuḳa*; to become entangled *sarḳe.*

enter, tr. v. (go in) *shiga*; (come in) *shigo*; cause to e. *shigas da.*

entice, tr. v. *rude.*

entire, adj., see **complete**.
 entirely, adv. *kap*; see also *faye* and *fi*.
 entrails, *yan chiki*.
 entrance, n. (aperture) *kofa*; e. room (e.g. to palace) *dandali*.
 entrap, tr. v. *yin haƙo*, *yin tarko*.
 entreat, tr. v. *biko*, *roƙo*.
 entrenchment, n. *kāgara*, *kāgaruwa*, pl. *kāgaru*, *sansani*.
 entrust, tr. v. *bada*, *yin sabtu*, *danka*.
 enumerate, to *lisafta*, *lialta*, *lasalta*, *lisabta*, *lisanta*.
 envy, n. *ƙeta*, *ƙiyaiya*, *kishi*, *kishiya*, *hāsada*, *haushi*.
 enwrap, *duntsa*, *duntse*.
 epilepsy, n. *falfada* (S.), *farfada* (K.), *farfadiya*.
 equal, adj. *sosai*, *daidai*, *tangam*, *tangas*; to make e. *daidaita*, *yi ya*; to be e. *isa*; a thing which is e. to *abin gamawa*; this is e. to that *wannan ya yi ya wanchan*.
 equal, (fellow) *tsāra*, pl. *tsarare*.
 equality, *sauwi*.
 equivalent, n. *wato**, *watau**.
 erase, tr. v. *yin maimai*, *shāfa*, *kankara*.
 erect, tr. v. *tashe*, *tada*.
 err, intr. v. *mantuwa*, *manche*, *kuskure*, *saba*.

errand, n. *sako*.
 error, n. *mantuwa*, *kure*, *sabo*.
 eructate, to *yūnkūra*.
 escape, n. place of e. *wurin tsira*.
 escape, intr. v. *fichi*, *furche*, *tsira*, *gudu*, *kurchi*, *kurche*, *kubche*, *subuche*, *subiche*.
 escort, n. *rakiya* (S.), *rako* (K.), *kūto*.
 escort, tr. v. *yin rakiya*, *raka*, *raki*, *rake*, *roma**.
 espy, to *hanga*, *hangi*, *hange*, *hango*; I espied him afar *na hange shi dāga nesa*, he was the first to e. me *ya hango ni*.
 establish, to *tuturta*, *kafa*.
 established, part. (firmly fixed) *tabbatachche*, fem. *tabbatachchiya*; *kāfaffe*, fem. *kafaffiya*, pl. *kāfaffu*.
 esteem, n. *hasafi*.
 estimate, tr. v. *kauwama*, *kawamata**, *kimanta*.
 estrangement, n. *rabuwa*.
 eternal, adj. *hal* (or *har*) *abada*.
 eunuch, n. *babā* or *babani*, pl. *babānni*, *laihi*, *marmāta*.
 euphorbia, n. *kumkumiya*, *fidda-sartse*, *kyarana*, *tinya*.
 European, n. *ba-Ture*, pl. *Turawa**.
 evade, to *zūke*.
 even, adj. 1. (smooth) *da samtsi*.
 2. cf. e. or odd *chika ko mara*.

even, adv. *ko* ; e. now *ko yanzu*.
evening, n. *mareche, maraiche* ;
yamma ; late e. *almuru, almuru, magarub, magariba, mangariba, lisha*, cf. under *rana* ; in the e. *da mareche, da yamma* ; phr. I continue travelling till e. *ina yini tafiya*, it is e. *mareche ya yi* ; to depart in the e. *maraita*.
eventually, adv. *yauyan, yo-yo*.
ever, adv. 1. (at any time) *da-dai, taḅa*, e.g. have you ever seen him ? *ka tāḅa ganinsa* ? have you ever been to Sokoto ? *ka tāḅa je Sakwato* ?
 2. (for ever) *tutul, tutur, tutu, tutuk, tutut, hal* (or *har*) *abadā*.
everlasting, adj. *matuturchi, madawami**, *matabbatawa**.
every, adj. *duka, duk, kullum** ; everyone *kowa, kowanne*, fem. *kowache*, pl. *kowāḍanne*, see Gr. p. 18 ; everything *duka komi, dukachin komi, komi* ; e. day *kowache rana* ; e. morning *kullum safe* ; e. night *kullum dare*.
everywhere, *koīna*.
evil, n. *abin mugu, ḅannai, mugunta, shara, shariri, gaya**, *swaḅo, zunufi* ; *zunubi**, e. desire *sha'awa* ; e. disposition *lalata, mugunta,*

kafarchi, kafirchi ; e. thought *bākar zuchiya* ; e. spirit *ibilis* ; e. speaking *annamimi* ; e. principle existing in the world *duniya** ; e. doer *mai-swaḅo* ; to e. intreat *kan-ḅanta*.
evil, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyagu, mummuna** ; see **bad**.
ewe, n. *tumkiya*, pl. *tumāki*.
exact, adj. *sarai*.
exactly, *rab, rap* ; it fits e. *ya kama rab*.
exactly, adv. *tangas*.
exaggerate, *gina waiwai, yal-wata labari*.
exalt, tr. v. *ḍaukaka, ḍaukake, maida girma*.
exalted, part. (epithet applied to God) *ta'ala, maḍaukaka*.
examine, tr. v. *dandana**, *dandani** ; see **look at**.
example, n. *koyi, nūni, koko-ya** ; his e. *kokoyansa*.
exceed, tr. v. *buwaya, buwaye, fi, zoḅa* (S.) ; *dada** ; e. in strength *gargara, gagara*.
exceed, to e. in (have much of) *yawaita*.
exceedingly, *ainin*.
excel, intr. v. *faye, ḍāra* (S.), *yin fifiko, gota, girme* ; to e. in size *gofa* ; who excelled the other ? *wanene ya fi wani* ?

- excellence**, n. *fiyayya, fiyayye, fiko, kayatazwa, kwari*.
- except**, adv. *sai, sai dai, sai ko*.
- excess**, n. *abinda ya faye, yawa*.
- exchange**, tr. v. *sake, yin musaya, furfura, furfuri*.
- exchange**, in exchange for a *bākin, maimakin, sābad da*.
- exchange**, to (barter) *furfuri*.
- excitement**, n. *karāya*.
- exclamation**, n. (expressing astonishment or incredulity) *hūba, hāba, kaiya, kāsa*; (expressing doubt or grief) *wai*; words used as an e. *maganar zuchiya*; e. of annoyance *kash, gasa*; e. denoting exultation *woho, oho*; (expressing pity or disgust) *asha, hashā*; (e. to attract attention) *ihu, uhu, ufu, yeho*; e. of welcome *māraba*; see also *oho*; an e. used in driving sheep *us, as*; e. of despair *wayuniya**; e. of pleasure *yauro*; see **indeed**.
- excrecence**, e.g. a swelling *gūda* (S.).
- excuse**, n. *huja, yarji*, hamzari, hanzari*; a poor e. *gajeren hamzari*; he made e. *ya yi sāne*.
- excuse**, tr. v. *gafara, yin gafarta*; phr. e. *me ba ni yarji, gafara*.
- executioner**, n. *hauni* (K.).
- exercise**, n. to take e. (by walking) *yawo, wasa jiki*; (by riding) *kilisa*.
- exhausted**, part. *sumamme*; e. land *semu** (S.).
- exhibit**, tr. v. *nuna, nuni, gwada, goda*.
- exhort**, tr. v. *gargada, galgada, wajabta*.
- exhortation**, *gargadi, galgadi*.
- exist**, intr. v. *kashi, kashe, wanzu*; see **be**.
- expand**, 1. tr. v. *shimfida, shimfida*.
2. intr. v. *yalwata, yin auki, yin abki, habama**.
- expansion**, *auki*.
- expect**, tr. v. (to await with expectation) *jira*; (to anticipate) *tamaha, tammaha, yin tamaha, yin zache*.
- expectation**, *halamu, zache, zāto*; unfulfilled expectations *tamanin warabūka*.
- expectorate**, intr. v. *tofi, fesa, furja*.
- expedition**, military *debe, sa'ati*.
- expel**, tr. v. *kora, kore*.
- expense**, n., see **cost**.
- expensive**, adj. *da tsada*; phr. it is too e. *ya fi tsada* or *ya faye tsada*; to be e. *yin tsada*.
- experienced**, part. *gwani, goni*, pl. *gwanaye*.

expert, adj., see prec.

explain, tr. v. *waye*, *nuna*, *nuni*, *hadichi*, *yin fassara*, *fasalta*, *habarta**; phr. e. it to me *ka gāya ma ni*, *ambato ni*.

explanation, n. *wayewa*, *nunawa*, *fassara*, *fassaranta*, *azanchi*.

extend, tr. and intr. v. *yalwata*, see **expand**.

extended, be, intr. v. *miķu*.

extensive, *tafkeke**, *tabkeke**.

extent, n. *matsawa*, *matuķa*; see **limit**.

extinguish, tr. v. *bishe*, *biche*, *kufuli**.

extract, tr. v. *jawo*, *fisge*, *fizge*, *fusge*, *fisha*, *fishshe*, *fushe*; to e. juice etc. *tatsa*.

exult, intr. v. *yin rāha*.

exulting, n. *rāha*.

• **eye**, n. *ido*, pl. *idanu*, *idanduna*, *idanuwa*; eye-ball *ķwayar ido*; e. socket *gurbin ido*, *gulbin ido*; pupil of e. *ijiyar ido*, *matsokachin ido*; eye-brow *gira*, pl. *girare*; e.-lashes *kain ijiya*; ridge over the e. *ķashin ido*; e.-glass *madubin ido*; mucus from the e. *kwamtsa*, *kwamtso*; diseases of the e. *hakiya*, *hakanya*, *chizara*, *shawora*; cataract in the e. *tsauriya* or *tsawariya*; medicine for the eyes *korino*, *fidili*, *giwa-kamba*; a man

with deep-set eyes *mai-ķwarmin ido**; a man with only one e. *mai-ijiya na gūda*, *mai-ķishin ido*; a blemish in the e. *lahani*; watery e. (i.e. desire) *ruwan ido*; evil e. *kandu* or *kandun ido*; one with evil e. *maye*, fem. *mayya*; to put the evil e. on anyone *jifa wani da ido*; e. witness *shaidan ido*; to have dim eyes *dindimi*, *dundumi*; to look with eyes nearly shut *yin ķankānin ido*.

eye-brow, *gira*, pl. *girori*, *girai* or *girgira*.

fable, n. *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi*, *misali*, *almara**, *fira**, *gātana*.

face, n. *fuska*, pl. *fuskoki* and *fuskuna*, *huska**; to f. towards the speaker *gabāto*; to f. in a given direction *fuskanta*; f. to f. *fuska biyu*; to fall on the f. *fadi jiche*; he looks one straight in the f. *idonsa ķirikiri ne*.

fade, intr. v. *fafe*, *fofe*, *yaushi*, *yin yaushi*, (used of cloth) *ķwaki*.

fading, adj. *ķwaki*.

fading away, part. *ķwāķe*.

fail, intr. v. (decay) *rasu*; (f. to keep a promise) *ķuskure*,

kurkura; (fall short of) *kāsa*, *gāza*; f. to get *tābe*, *tafe*; f. to understand *rudi*; cf. he failed me in nothing *ba ya kāsa ma ni komi ba*.

faint, adj. *sumamme*.

faint, intr. v. *yin suma*, *jīn suma*, *suma*, *gaji*.

faintness, n. *suma*, *jiri*, *ku-mallo*, *falfaḍa* (S.), *farfaḍa* (K.).

fair, adj. *kyau*, *da kyau*, *mai-kyau*.

faith, n. *aiman*, *imani*, *aminchi**; the faith of Islam *musulumchi*; see **believe**.

faithful, adj. *yardaji*, *salihī**, pl. *salihai**, *mummuni*, fem. *mummuna*; the f. *amintattu*.

faithfulness, n. *aminchi*.

fakir, *wali* (Ar.), *waliyi*, pl. *waliyai*.

falcon, n. *shafo*, *shaho*.

fall, n. *fāḍuwa*, *saraya*.

fall, intr. v. *fāḍi*, *fāḍa*, *yin saraya*, *kucha**, *sako*; f. down before anyone *rusuna*, *run-suna**; f. in (used of a well) *gabche*, *gache*, *gwabche*, *abka*, *ḥurme*; make to f. *goche ma*; f. upon *falma*, *farma*, *parma*, *haye*; f. in with *tsayi*, *tsaya*; to let a thing f. *fāḍa da*; to f. in price, *yin goino**; to f. out with *sha bambam*.

falling, part. *fāḍuwa*; f. into ruin *rushewa*; sound of f. glass *kilin kilin*, *ḥirin ḥirin*; f. in of a well *ḥurma*.

false, adj. *mara-gaskiya*; to spread f. news *kwarmato*, *chinewa*, *tsinewa*; it is f. *ḥariya ne*; f. witness *shaidan zur*.

falsehood, n. *ḥariya*, *ḥariya-chi*, *zur*.

falsely, adv., to swear f. *yin kafara*.

falsify, to *kirfa*.

fame, n. *yābo*.

familiarity, *sabo*.

family, n., members of f. *iyali*, *uma**, *dangi*.

famine, n. *yunwa*, *farin yunwa*.

fan, n. *fifiche*, *mafuchi*, pl. *mafifichi* (S.), *mafifichi*, *mafirfichi* (K.); (made of woven grass) *faijai*, pl. *fayafai*; f. made of ostrich feathers *figina*, *figini*; (made of palm leaves) *giginya*, pl. *gigangani*, *giginyoyi* or *giginai*; (for winnowing) *bakache*, *matankadi*, *rereya*, *rairaiya*.

fan, tr. v. *fifita*, *fēta*, *bakache*; one who fans *mai-bakache*, *mafechi*.

fancy (supposition) *usuwasi*.

fanning, *fifitā*, *fitara*.

far, adj. *da nesa*.

far, adv. *nesa*; as far as *har*, *hal*, *har ga*, *tun*, *tun da*; to place f. off *nesanta*.

farewell, n., to bid f. *yin ban kwana*, *yin salama*; an expression of f. *sai wata rana*.

farm, n. *gona*, pl. *gonaki* or *gonakai*, *karkara*, pl. *karkarai*; farming *aikin gona*; owner or cultivator of a f. *mai-gona*; a farm lent by a master to a slave *gayayuna**; a f. labourer who works for wages *kwadigo*, *ḍan kwadigo*; f. work *noma*; farming in one place and living in another *nomijide*.

fashion, n. (mode, custom) *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*, *yayi*; rings were the f. *ana yayin mun-daye*.

fast, n. *āzumi*; the f. month *labaran*.

fast, intr. v. *yin āzumi*.

fasten, tr. v. (e.g. with nails) *kāfa*; (tie) *ḍamre*, *ḥalla*.

fastened, part. *kafaffe*, (closed) *girkakke*, fem. *girkakkiya*, pl. *girkakku*.

fastening (or loop), *maḥalli*.

fat, n. *kība*, pl. *kībobi*, *kitse*, *kiche* (S.), *maski* (S.), *kauri*, *kabri*, *gwabi*; f. of meat *mai*.

fat, adj. *da kība*, *da gwabi*, *mai-gwabi*, *da kauri*, *da kabri*, *ginshimi*, *da taiba*,

tunturum; one who is f. *mai-tumbi*, *mai-gato*, *mai-jiki*, *kutumba*, *gandi*, fem. *gandiya*; to grow f. *yin kība*, *taiba*, *yin tiriniya*; to fatten *kibata*.

fate, n. *jinkiri*; see **destiny**.

father, n. *uba*, pl. *ubanne*, *ubannai* or *ubanni*, *bābā*; father-in-law *suruki*.

fathom, *gāba*.

fatigue, n. *gājiya*, *gājewa*, *gajiyawa*, *gayara*.

fatigued, to be f. *gaji*, *yin gajiya*.

fatness, n. *taiba*, *tiriniya*.

fault, n. 1. (defect) *aibi*, *aibu*, pl. *aibobi*.

2. (offence) *laifi*; f. finding *bimbini*.

favour, n. *alhēri*, *tagomashi*.

favourite, *ḍan tatangi*; f. wife *mowa*.

fear, n. *tsoro*, *tunzura*, *ḍimanta* (S.), *tunzuruwa**, *razāna*, *gizo**, *falgaba*, *fargaba*, *raki*; to cause f. *bada tsoro*, *tsoratad da*, *tsorata*.

fear, tr. and intr. v. *jin tsoro*, *razāna*, *rāzani*, *tsantsanta*.

feast, n. *buki*, *biki*, *idi*, *laiya*, *adaras**; to make a f. *yin buki*.

feasting, part. (esp. used of marriage f.) *wasan buki*.

feather, n. *fikafike*, *fiffike*, *fika-fiki*, pl. *fikafikai*; *fukafuki*,

pl. *fukafukai, gashi**; a wing f. *kili*.

fee, n. (paid by recipient of a royal present) *tukuichi, takwichi*; market f. or the commission paid to a broker in the market *lada*; a court f. *ijara, ujera**.

feeble, adj. *kumāma, maras-karifi*.

feebleness, n. *kumamanchi*.

feed, 1. tr. v. (to supply with food) *chida, chishe, kiwata, chisad da, chiyar da*.

2. intr. v. (to eat) *kiwo*.

feeding, *chima*.

feel, tr. v. to perceive by touching *ji, taḅa*; to feel or grope for *lalabe, lalaba*; to be affected *ji*; to f. about whilst searching *fāfake, māmare*; to f. anything in order to test its weight *jinjini*; to f. afraid *jin tso*.

feint, n. (pretended attack) *zanzoma*.

fell, tr. v. (to cut down) *sare*.

fellow, n. (partner, match) *kama*, pl. *kamannu*; *tsara*, pl. *tsarare*; a f. traveller *maraki, marako*.

female, n. (of human beings and animals) *mache*, pl. *māta*; phr. male and f. *wane da wanche*.

female, adj. *ta-mata, ta-mache*.

fence, n. *damfāmi, darni*; a f. round garden *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; a f. made of stalks or thorns to keep in sheep, etc. *shinge, shingi, shimgi, shimge*, pl. *shimgaye*.

fencing, n. (a game) *sharo, takai*.

fern, hare's spear f. *mashin zomo*; elk's horn f. *ḍafaddu*.

ferry, to f. across *yin fito, ketarad da* (S.), *ketaras da* (K.), *ketarshe* (before a pron.).

ferryman, n. *sarikin ruwa, maketari, mai-fitō*.

festival, n. *sallata*.

fetch, tr. v. *kawo, zo da*; see **bring**.

fetish, a f. spot *matsafa*.

fetters, n. *malwa, mulwa* (S.), pl. *mulwoyi* (S.); *māri*, pl. *maruruwa, maluluwa, gigar, sarka, dilka*.

feud, a blood-feud *tarna*.

fever, n. *masassara, zazzabi, jante, janti, gyante, mura*; I have fever *jikina ya yi ḍumi*; a f. which occurs when the guinea-corn is ripe *chiwo na sabon dawa*.

fever, to have f. *yin zazzabi*.

few, adj. *kāḍan, kanḅane*, fem. *kanḅanuwa*, pl. *kanḅana, kanana, tsaraurau, kīma*.

fez, n. *fūla, wula**, *fulan dara, fulad dara, tagiya*.

fibre, n., f. of palm tree *kaba* ;
a f. used for making rope
tsaiwa.

field, n. a cultivated f. *fili*, pl.
filaye ; *fako*, pl. *fagaigai* ;
gona, pl. *gonaki* or *gonakai* ;
a barren f. *sabra*, *saura* (Z.) ;
a very large f. *karkara*, pl.
karkarori.

field-mouse, *gyabji*, *gyauji*.

fierce, adj., to be f. *hawkache*.

fiercely, adv. *da kangara*, *zafi*.

fifteen, adj. *goma sha biyar*
(or *biyal*) *sha biyar*.

fifteenth, adj. *na-goma* (fem.
ta-goma), *sha biyar*.

fifth, adj. *na-biyar*, fem. *ta-
biyar* ; one f. *humusi*.

fifty, adj. *hamsin*.

fig, n., f.-tree *itachen ɓaure* ;
f. fruit *ɓaure* ; for other
species of ficus see *chediya*,
gamji (S.), *ganji* (K.), *durumi*,
ɓawuri or *ɓawari shirinya*,
uwar yara, *wa*, *rubiya*.

fight, n. *fāda*, *fama*, *kokuwa*,
kokowa, *yaki*, *jayaya* or *ja-
yaya*, *sabuwa*.

fight, intr. v. *fāda*, *yin fāda*,
yin fama, *yin kokowa*, *yin
jayaya*.

file, n. *zarto*, *darto**, *maga-
gari**.

file, tr. v. *gurjago*, *gurzago* ;
to f. a sword *yin akaras*.

fill, tr. v. *chika*, *yin fal* ; to

f. full *chikakka* ; to f. up a
hole *turbude* ; phr. fill them
up *kawo chikonsu*.

filled, part. *chikakke*, fem.
chikakkiya, pl. *chikakku* ; to
be f. *chika*.

filling, part. *chikawa*.

filter, n. (usually in form of
small basket through which
water is strained out) *marari*,
abin rīga, *maregi*.

filter, tr. v. *rare*, *twatsa*, *tatsa*,
tache, *rēge* (S.) ; one who filters
mai-rarewa.

filtering, *rīga*, *tachewa*, *tata*.

filth, n. *dauda*.

filthiness, *janaba*.

filthy, adj. *da dauda* ; to be f.
yin najasa.

fin, (of a fish) *ɓāfa*.

finch, a species of, with grey-
blue plumage and red tail
sisita ; black-headed weaver
f. *shaida* ; fire f. *baiwar
Allah* ; widow f. or Whydah
bird, or widow weaver *za-
laidu*, *zulaidu*.

find, n., e.g. treasure-trove
galala.

find, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sami*,
sama ; try to f. *tuske*, *tuski* ;
to f. out (discover) *ɓaga* ; to
f. and bring *samo*.

fine, n. *tara*, *taro*.

fine, l. adj. (thin, delicate)
laushi, *da taushi*.

2. (beautiful) *da kyau*; very f. *kālo kālo*; very f. thread *arafīa*.

fineness, *arafichi, rabshi, roshi, taushi*.

finger, n. *yātsa*, pl. *yātsosi, yātsu*; the little f. *autan yatsa, dan kure*; middle f. *yatsan tsaka*; f.-nail *farchi, farche, kambari, kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* or *kumbai, danuba*.

finish, n., see **end**.

finish, v. *kāre, karki, wanya, wanyi, wanye, gāma, gūma, tuka, tuke, ūda, shide*.

finished, part. *kafaffe*, fem. *kafaffiya* or *kafaffa*, pl. *kafaffu*; phr. it is f. *ya kare, ya tsaya tammāt**; he f. speaking *ya yi magana ya kare*; the month is f. *wata ya mutu*.

fire, n. *wuta*, pl. *wutaitai, wutache*; fire-place *murufu, murfu*; a f. which has burnt down *rufushi, rubshi, rabchi**; restoration of a dying f. *gwamin wuta*; to light a f. *fura wuta, hasa wuta*; to catch f. *chin wuta*; make a large f. *gāsa*; to strike f. with a flint *kyastu wuta*; to miss f. (of a gun) *fasa, yin kariya*; to f. a gun *halbi* (or *buga*) *bindiga*; a f.-swallower *kumuria*.

fire-brand, *bakin wuta*.

fire-finch, *baiwar Allah*.

fire-fly, n. *dimin dawa, make-surwa, mai-kesurwa, mai-kyasuwa*.

firewood, n. *itachen wuta, kirari, kirare*.

fireworks, n. *wasan wuta*; (display of) *wowo*.

firmament, n. *hawa**, *sama**.

first, adj. *na-fari*, fem. *ta-fari*.

first, adv. *na-farko, da farko, da fāri, tukun, tukuna*; to be f. to do anything *wada*, I am the f. to come *na wada zuwa*.

fish, n. *kāfi*, pl. *kifaye, kifofi*; mud- or lung-f. *gairwa*; electric cat-f. *minjiriya, miji-riya, misiriya*; large f. from which oil is obtained *gini, zau*; a kind of dog-f. *karāya*; a shell-f. *kumba**, pl. *kumbuna**; a flat f. with reddish snout *kūma*; cat-fish *ragon ruwa, tarwada, mari, kurungu, gwando* (S.), *gartsa* (K.), *kulme*; sting-ray *kunāmar ruwa*; a f. with a belly like a frog *talibamban*; thread-fin *abokin taru*, Nile perch *givar ruwa*; cichlid perch *karpasa, karfasa, karpashe, gargaza*; tiger-f. *tsage, kawara, shambana*; mormyr *lulu, dan sariki*; a f. like a salmon *faliya, fariya*;

for other species of f. see under *gargaza*, *ḥaramchi*, *bana*, *bodāmi*, *dummi*, *hariya*, *ishi*, *ḳuku*, *milgi*, *rajiya*, *silla*, *sololuwa*, *yauni*; f. bones *ḳayan kifi*; a hand-net for catching f. *koma*, *homa*, *foma*; a spear for catching f. *hagu*; a f. trap *murumuru*, *sankuja* (K.), *sankiya*; wicker-work snares for catching f. *tsatsara*, *sasasara*; a cord or stalk on which f. are carried *lēshi*.

fish, tr. v. *sunta*, *sunche*, intr. *yin fatsa*, *kama kīfi*; f. with small hand-net *su*.

fisherman, n. *masunta*, pl. *masu-su*, *ḍan fatsa*, *masunchi*.

fishing, *sunta*; a place for f. *masunta*.

fishing-basket, *suru*.

fishing-hook, *ḳugiya*, pl. *ḳugiyoyi*, *fatsa*, *ḳugiyar fatsa*.

fishing-line, *igiyar fatsa*, *mamari*, *marimari*, *murumuru*, *murimuri*.

fishing-rod, *itachen fatsa*.

fissure, e.g. in stick or rock *gebe*.

fist, n., to close the f. *tunkushe*; to strike with the f. *danḳwasa*, *danḳwashe*, *naushe*; see **box**.

fit, n. (fainting f.) *gamata*, *falfada*.

fit, to, cf. it fits exactly *ya kama rab* (or *rap*); that which is fitting *sawaba*.

fit, adj. *da ya kamata*, *sawabe**, *sawaba**.

fitting, be, intr. v. *kamata*, *gamshe*, *gama**.

five, adj. *biyar* (K.), *biyal* (Kats.), *biyat* (S.); f. thousand *hamsa**, q.v.

fix, to f. a tax *yanka gandu*; to f. a price *yanka kurḍi*; see **fasten**.

fixed, to be f., e.g. in a tree *rungūma*.

flag, n. *tuta*, pl. *tutochi*.

flame, n. *halshen wuta* (lit. tongue of fire), *balbalniya*.

flap, v., to f. the wings *fuffuka*, *fiffika*.

flapping, e.g. of wings *fuffuka*, *pupuka*.

flat, a f. place without trees *kanga*; he fell f. *ya faḍi kita*.

flatten, tr. v. *nāna*.

flattened, part. *nananne*, *nana-ke*.

flattery, n. *kirari*, *lallashi*, *ban magana*, *godo*, *yin godo*, *ma-abanchi*.

flavour, n. *garḍi*, *zaḳi*, *zazza-ḳa**; the nut has a good f. *gyada tana da garḍi*.

flax, n. string made of f. *kirtani*.

flay, tr. v. *feda, fede, fida, fide, fige*, figi*, saba, sabe.*

flying, *rīda.*

flea, n. *tunkwiyo, tunkwiya, chichifi*; pite pite f. *tsando, kīma.*

flee, intr. v. *gudu, guje, furche, tsire, yin chīri, fīffika, fūffuka, tunzura, sukuwa, suka, sukwanī, ruga, rugo*; a place to which to f. *wurin gudu*; to make to f. *rauga*; see **drive away**.

flesh, n. *nama*, pl. *namomi, namuna*; uncooked f. *nama danye*; (bush-meat) *naman daji*; cooked f. *dāfau.*

flight, n. *gudu, guduwa, chīri, fartat**; toputtof. *bada janfi**.

flint, n. *kyastu, ketu, kyetu*; f. in a f. lock gun *damishi, kankara, dutsim bindiga*; to strike fire with a f. *kyastu wuta*; f. and steel for striking a light *masabi, masebi.*

float, used by fishermen, made of twigs *karu.*

flock, n. *garke, garge* (S.), pl. *garkuna.*

flog, tr. v. *fyada, fyade, doke, buga, yin kurfu, yin bīlāla, fiade.*

flogging, n. *kurafu, kurfu, karfu**, *fyādi, kāshi.*

flood, n. *rigyawa, chikōwa, chichikōwa, tabki, malala*.*

floor, n. 1. (for threshing) *masussuka.*

2. to stamp down a f. *dābe.*

florin, *fataka*, pataka*.*

flour, n. *gāri*; the coarse f. which is separated from the finer f. of wheat *tsāki*; f. mixed with water *taliya*.*

flourish, intr. v. *yahwata.*

flow, intr. v. f. quickly *tumbudu*; to f. together *saje.*

flower, n. *fūre*, pl. *furanyi, furaye*; a plant with a thistle-like flower which grows in cultivated fields (*Vernonia perottetii*) *burzu.*

flute, n. *algaita, algaitu, sarewa, sheshe* (K.); a reed from which flutes are made *kusumburuwa.*

fly, n. (common house f.) *kuda, kuje*, pl. *kudaje, kudaidai*; horse f. *gwarje, bōbuwa, barbaje, damisan dawaki*; a piece of leather placed on horses' eyes to keep off flies *furtali, futali*; fire-fly *dimin dawa*; sand-f. *fīfilwa, filfilwa, kyafirfita, kiyashi, kudān garke*; a large horse f. *makaſon kuda*; dragon-f. *masu*; a large biting f. *tsanji.*

fly, intr. v. (of a bird) *shawage, jawagi*.*

foal, n. *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*,
pl. *dukusai*, *dan dukushi*.

foam, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*, *kumpa*.

foam, to *yin kunfa*.

fodder, *kansuwa*, *kyasuwa*; see
grass.

foetus, of animals *tāyi*.

fog, n. *hāzo*, *kāsashi*.

foggy, adj. *da hazo*.

fold, n. (for sheep, etc.) *garke*,
garge (S.), pl. *garkuna*, *turke*,
pl. *turāku* (K.), *turuka* (S.),
rugga; cutting folds of cloth
kirfawa.

fold, tr. v. (cloth, etc.) *nimka*,
linke, *yāfa*, *yāfo*, *kunsa*,
kunshe, *lavya*, *tākura*.

folding, (the arms) *buḳu*;
f. cloth *rīḳiye*.

foliage, n. *ganyen itache*.

follow, tr. v. *bi*; f. a path *bi
hanya*; to f. in the direction
of the speaker *biyo*; following
(esp. used of loyalty to a
patron) *biyeya*, *biyawa*.

followers, n. *masu-bi*.

folly, n., see foolishness.

fond, adj. to bef. of *yin marmari*.

fondling, n. act of f. *lalaba*,
taushe.

food, n. *chima*, *chimaka*, *abin-
chi*, *tuwo**, *jībi**; much f.
machiya; f. shared in com-
mon *chiyāya*; a calabash
full of f. *kaḳaki*, pl. *kaḳuka*;
remains of f. *sanso*, *sudi*,

marmashi; to gather f. for
the poor *tarbata* (S.).

fool, n. *wawa*, pl. *wawaye*,
hauka, *magagachi*, *afalabu*,
badada, *bada-bada*, *dolo*, *gaḳo*,
hamsoro, *limota* (S.), *loto*, fem.
lotuwa; *mai-waruta*, *mawauta*,
mahaukachi, fem. *mahau-
kachiya*, pl. *mahaukata*;
foolish talking *badagula*, they
talked foolishly *sun yi bo-
bawa*; a f. who pays without
counting *ba-turen chacha*.

foolish, *da wawa*.

foolishness, n. *wawanchi*,
hauka, *mabuya*, *barkwanchi*;
foolish talking *badagula*;
tawa, *gaga* (S.).

foot, n. *ḳāfa*, pl. *ḳafafu*, *ḳafofi*,
ḳafuna; a f. regarded as a
measure of length *tāki*, pl.
tāke-tāke, *tāki-tāki*; a foot-
print *sau*, *sawu*; foot-rings
munduwayen ḳāfa; sole of
f. *tafin ḳāfa*, *mataki*, pl.
matakai; tendons of f.
matsarbaje (S.); on f. a *ḳāfa*;
a f. soldier *ḳan-ḳasa*, *sa'ati**.

footman, e.g. a man who
walks in front of a chief's
horse *zāgi*, pl. *zagagi*.

footstool, *mataki*.

for, l. prep. (for the sake of)
domin, *don*; for his sake
dominsa; see account of;
(in view of) *ga*.

2. conj. (because) *fa, zama.*

forbearance, n. *hankuri, hankura, hakura, hakuri.*

forbid, tr. v. *daḱile, hana.*

force, n. *tīlas, karifi*; by f. *da tilas, tilas, dole, doli*; to use f. *yin tilas, tilasa (K.), tilasda (S.)*; phr. I was forced to go *na tafi tilas* or *wajibi ne na tafi.*

ford, n. *mahayi, maḱetari, mashigi.*

ford, to *hayi.*

forearm, n. *gāba, kusun-hannu, bauni (S.), pl. baunukka.*

forefather, n., see **ancestor.**

forefinger, n. *manuni.*

forehead, n. *goshi.*

foreign, adj. *ajami**; f. (i.e. unintelligible) *bobawa, bau-bawa, pl. bobayi*; f. speech *bauchi.*

foreigner, n. *Ture*, ba-Ture*; that which pertains to a f. *turanchi.*

foresight, *tānadi (S.).*

foreskin, *loḅa, sulli.*

forest, n. *rukuki, daji, dāwa*; dense f. *kurmi, kurumi, kumchi*.*

forethought, n. *hankali, tanadi (S.).*

forge, n. (anvil) *maḱera*; worker at a f. (blacksmith) *maḱeri, mai-kīra, pl. muḱira, maḱeri.*

forge, tr. v. *kīra.*

forget, tr. v. *manche, shāgala da, yin manturwa, manta.*

forgetfulness or **forgetting**, n. *manturwa, sakafchi.*

forgive, tr. v. *yafe, yafe ma, gafarta, yin gafara, yarda*; f. *me ka yi mini gafara.*

forgiveness, n. *gafara, gafarta.*

fork, n. (iron toasting f.) *rino, rinu*; the f. of a bifurcating stick *gōfa, gwafa*; a stick with a f. in it *itache maigōfa.*

forked, adj., a f. stick *shishiniya (S.), shushiniya (K.)*; a f. iron stick on horse's neck *kasagi.*

forlornness, n. *kewa, kiwa.*

form, n. (shape) *kama, supa*, sifa.*

former, adj. *nafari*; the f... the latter *wanchan...wanchan.*

formerly, adv. *dazu, dafari*; in former times *na dā*; as in former times *kaman na dā.*

fornication, n. *shakalichi, fasi-kanchi.*

fornicator, n. *mashakalchi, shakali, bambagi, mai-fasi-kanchi.*

forsake, tr. v. *bari, bar.*

forthwith, adv. *nan da nan, ana nan, ko yanzu.*

fortunate, adj., it was f. *ya yi arziki*; to be f. *yin dawla*; see **lucky.**

fortune, n. (prosperity) *arziki*, a man of f. *mawadachi*, pl. *mawadata*; good f. *gamon-katar*.

forty, adj. *arbain*.

forward, adv. *gaba*; to move a little f. *guso*, *gurguso*.

foster, f. mother *uwal rufi*; f. child *dangana**; one who fosters *tallafi*, *gona*; to act as a f. parent *tallafa*, *taulafa*.

foul, i.e. to make muddy *gurbache*.

foundation, n. *gato*, *gindi*; f. of a wall *tushi*, *tushiya*.

founded, part. *kāfaffe*, fem. *kāfaffiya*, pl. *kāfaffu*.

fountain, n. *maromaro*, *mar-maru*.

four, adj. *fudu*, *hudu* (Zanfara), *puḍu* (Daura), *arba'a**, *arba**; by fours *fudu fudu*; four each *furfudu*.

fourteen, adj. *goma sha fudu*, *sha fudu*.

fourth, adj. *na-fudu*, fem. *ta-fudu*; f. day *chitta*.

fowl, n. *kāza*, pl. *kaji*; speckled fowls *wakewaken kaji*; a f. plucked for cooking *shikir-kita**; a place where fowls are kept *akurki*; a f. laying eggs *dakwaluwa*.

fox, n. long-eared f. *nyanyawa*, *yanyawa*.

fracture, *kariya*, *karaya*; see **break**.

fragment, n. *gutsura*, pl. *gutsure*, *guntu*, *guntun abu*, *fara* (S.); f. of broken pots, etc. *sakaina*, *tsingaro* (S.), *katanga*.

francolin, see **partridge**.

frankincense, n. *turare*; small box for f. *ḍan lulu*; a tuber from which f. is made *kajiji*, *gajiji*; f. tree *hano*, *ararra-bi*.

fraud, n., see **deceit**.

free, adj., one who is f. *ḍa*, *ḍiya*.

free, tr. v. *bari*, *bada ḍiyauchi*, *yanchi*, *yantas*, *yauta ḍu*, *ḍiyanta*, *yanta*, *kwankwanche*, *sāka*, *yin sāki*, *sawanta*.

freed, part. *bararre*, fem. *barar-riya*, pl. *bararru*.

freedom, n. *yanchi*, *ḍiyauchi*, *ḍiyanchi*, *ḍiyantaka*, *sāki*, *sawani*; a certificate of f. *laya*, *layan ḍiyauchi*; f. given to a slave on the death of his master *mudābar* (S.), *madabar*.

frenzy, n. *wāhami*, *hauka*.

frequent, adj., see **often**.

frequent, tr. v. (visit often) expressed by use of *kan* with verbs meaning to go to; he frequents the place *ya saba da wuri*.

fresh, adj. *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sababbi*; applied to plants, etc., fem. *ganye**, *ḍanye*, *danya*, pl. *danyu* or *danyoyi*.

Friday, n. *aljimma*, *aljimmu'a*, *jumma'a*, *jummu'a*, *jimma'a*, *jimmu'a*.

fried, part. *soyayye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

friend, n. *aboki*, fem. *abokiya*, *abuya*, pl. *abokai*, *abokanai*, *ḳawa*; *masoyi*, fem. *masoya*, pl. *masoyu*; *maso*, pl. *masowa*; *tsara*, *kama*, pl. *kamanu*; *ḍan-uwa*, pl. *yan-uwa*; *zumu*, fem. *zumunya*, *juna*, *amīni**, *sahibi**, *sahabi**, *dangi*, *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; *maḳwabchi*, pl. *maḳwabta*; friends *tsarare*; my friends *yan-uwana*.

friendship, n. *abuta*, *zumunchi*, *zumunta*, *halin aboki*, *shiriya*, *ḍan-dadi-dadi*.

fright, n. *tunzuru*, *tunzururuwa*, *tsoro*.

frighten, tr. v. *tsorata*, *bada tsoro*, *yin ruba*, *burga*; to f. or be frightened *firgita*, *firgiche*, *razana*.

fringe, *giraza*, *geza*; a f. for horses' eyes *hutali*, *futali*, *furtali*.

fro, going to and f. *yauchi*, *zāgo*; to go to and f. *zazzaga*, *zazzage*, *kai da karwo*.

frog, n. *talibambam**, *kwado*, pl. *kwaddi*, *kwadodi*; small dark coloured f. *warnu*; an edible f. *burdudugi*, *burtutiki*; tree f. *tsumbe*; bull f. *ḳozo*.

frog-spit, or cuckoo-spit, *kumfa*, *kakas*.

from, prep. *dāga*; (when followed by the personal pronouns) *dāga gare*; *tun*, f. birth *tun haifuwa*; f. within *dāga chiki*; f. afar *dāga nesa*.

front, n. *gāba*, pl. *gābobi*, *goshi*; in f. *a gāba*; in f. of *gāban*; to go in f. *tsaitse*; go in f. *ku chi gāba*; he got in f. of us *shi ya riga mu*.

front, to *doshi*, *dosa*, *doso*; he fronted them *ya doshe su*.

frontier, *iyaka*; a f. town *kain iyaka*.

froth, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*; f. skimmed off in making bread, etc. *ḳulli*, *ḳullu*; f. at mouth of a dying man *dafara*.

frown, intr. v. *ḍamre fuska*, *yin bakin* (or *bakar*) *fuska*, *jirkita fuska*, *murtsuka fuska*.

frowning, n. *harāra**.

fruit, n. (of trees) *ḍan itache*, *ḍiyan itache*, *yayan itache*; (of grains, etc.) *ḳwara*, *ḳwaya*; the f. of the earth *ḍiyan ḳasa*, *yan ḳasa*.

fruitful, adj., an epithet applied to corn *mai-ido*.

fruitless, adj., e.g. f. toil *aikin wofi*.
fry, tr. v. *soya*.
frying, *suya*.
fuel, n., see **firewood**.
fugitive, n. *gujaje, mai-gudu, korarre*, pl. *korarru*; *maguje, maguji*, pl. *magudane, maguda*.
Fulah, pr. n., a F. native *ba-Fillache, ba-Fillata, ba-Fillatana, Fulata*, pl. *Fillani, Fulani*; the F. language *Fillanchi, Fulatanchi*; the F. people *Fulbe*.
fulfil, to *chika*; to f. a promise *chika alkawali*.
full, adj. *chikakke*, fem. *chikakkiya*, pl. *chikakku*; a *chike*, fem. a *chika*, pl. a *chiku*; (f. to the brim) *fau*; see **complete**.
fulness, n. *yayalwachi*.
funeral, n. *biso*; lamentations at a f. *makoki*.
fungus, a club-shaped f. which grows on ant-heaps *tumukun suri*.
funnel, *mazurari*.
furbish, tr. v. (e.g. a sword) *kuda*.
furrow, n. *kwäri*, pl. *kwaruruwa, kwäre* (S.), *rumaniya*; to draw a f. *karta*; furrows on the cheeks *karrara maya* (S.).
further, adj. (= more distant) *mafi nisa*.

future, adj. (= that is to come) *mai-zuwa*; in f., adv. *zuwa gäba*.

gadfly, *bobuwa, bubu* (S.).

gag, n. *majanga*.

gain, n. *riba*; unlawful g. *küra, riba, harämiya*; to make unlawful g. *chin riba, chin haramiya, chin küra*.

gall, n. *madachi, saifa, dwatana, ruwan dwatana*; g. bladder *matsarmama*.

gallant, *mai-dauki*.

gallantry, n. *dauki*.

gallop, n. *suka*, pl. *sukaikai*; at a g. a *sukwane*.

gallop, intr. v. *yin sukuwa, sukuwa, sukaya, sukayo, sukani, sukwani*; a place for horses to g. *masukwani, fage*.

galloping, a place for g. *masukwani*.

gambler, n. *bakanchi, dan chacha*; see *ba-turen chacha*.

gambling, n., a game for g. *chacha, alfowa, dära, modä*; to throw down money in g. *yin wasa da kurädi*; see *mu-zuru*.

gambol, *kiriniya, tsalle-tsalle*.

game, n. *wargi*; games played by children *karkachi, dare gäre, gyauga, lambe* (S.), *lai laya, langa, shillalo, tulatuki ubulunguwi, runfuki, wäha*

dokin wuya, *zure*, *izgili*; g. played by fortune-tellers in order to discover secrets *dirka*; a g. played with cowry shells *dara*; a gambling g. *chacha*; a call to join in a g. *shu*, *shiyu*, or *shiyu*; a wrestling g. *gumaza*; a fencing g. *takai*, *sharo*.

game, n. (food) *naman daji*.

gaol, see **prison**.

gap, e.g. between two teeth *wishiriya*.

gape, intr. v. *yin hamma*.

gaping, n. *hamma*.

garden, n. *danga*, pl. *dangogi*; *lambu*, pl. *lambuna*, *aljanna**.

gardener, n. *mai-gona**.

gargle, n. *wanken makoshi*.

gargling, n. *kurkura*.

garlic, n. *tafarnuwa*, pl. *tafarnai*; *taparnuwa*.

garment, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; old garments *tsumma*, pl. *tsummoki*, *keso*, pl. *kyassa*, *ragga*; see **clothes**.

garner, n. (a place for storing grain) *rufogo*, *rafoniya*, *rumbu*, *rufewa*.

garnished, part. *gyartache*, fem. *gyartachiya*, pl. *gyartattu*.

gasp, intr. v. (for breath) *yin fuka*, *shesheka*, *shasheka*; one who gasps *mai-fuchi*.

gaspings, n. *haki* (S.), *shashaki*.

gate, n. *kofa*, pl. *kofafi*; gateway, see **doorway**.

gather together, l. tr. v. *tara*.
2. intr. v. *taru*, *gayya*.

gathered, part. a *tara*, a *taru*, *tararre*, fem. *tararra*, pl. *tararru*.

gathering, n., e.g. of people before a king *kindigaye*; see **assembly**.

gaze, n. *kallo*, *tsokachi*.

gaze at, tr. v. *kallo*, *tsokachi*, *chokachi*, *dauro*, *doro**, *nuri**, (generally in a bad sense) *yin zuru*.

gazelle, n., see **antelope**.

generosity, n. *baiwa*.

generous, adj. *da kara*.

genii, n. *jinnu*; see **demons**.

gently, adv. *sanu*, *sannu*, *lako-lako*, *sako-sako*.

genuine, adj., g. money *kurɗi tsaba*.

Germany, pr. n. (used in North Africa) *Bursiya*.

gesture, a g. expressing disapproval *ambola*, *dakuwa*.

get, tr. v. *samu*, *same*, *sami*, *sama*, *samo*; g. out! *je ka*, fem. *je ki*; g. along *ku yi ta tafiya*.

ghost, n. *fatalwa*, *magiro*.

giant, n. *gazaguru*.

giddiness, n. *gigichi*, *jiri*, *hanani*.

giddy, adj. phr. I am g. *kaina*

- shina kewayewa* or *ina jin jiri*; to be g. *gigita*; to make g. *dāme, dāma*.
- gift**, n. *kyauta, kaya*, pl. *kaya-yaki, abin gaisuwa, baiko*; free g. *alheri*; g. given to conciliate *tsaraba*, see **bribe**; gifts coll. *baiwa*.
- gimlet**, n. *berīma, mararaki*.
- gin**, n. (for animals) *tarko*.
- gin**, n. (a spirit) *baraza, barasa*.
- ginger**, *chitafo, chitan Afo*.
- giraffe**, *raḳumin daji, raḳumin dāwa*.
- gird**, tr. v. *damre, daure, damra, yin damāra, darmi**.
- girded**, part. *damrarre*, pl. *damrarru*.
- girdle**, n. *damarichiki, damāra, maḍamrin chiki, tamantaka**; a g. made with copper *tagula, tugula, tagura*; a g. of cloth *taraya*; a woman's g. *gyauto, dan gyauto, jigida*; a woman's g. of beads *tsakiya, kwātana*; a g. of cowries *kiribi*.
- girl**, n. *yarinya*, pl. *yam-mata, diya*; a young g. *tantabara*.
- girth**, n. (of a horse) *bauji*; a g. strap *majayi, kaitaro*.
- give**, tr. v. *ba, bāda, bashi, bayas, baya**; to g. back *bayas da*; to g. up *bayas, bayar, sallame, bāda, bashi, yarda bashi**; to g. alms *yin sadaka*.
- giver**, n. *mai-bada, mabaya**.
- gizzard**, of a bird *ḳundu*.
- glad**, to be, intr. v. *yin farin-chiki, yin (or jin) murna*.
- gladden**, tr. v. *bada (or sa) murna, faralta*.
- gladiolus**, a wild *rimana, ru-mana*.
- gladness**, n. *farin-chiki, murna*.
- gland**, *kaluluwa*.
- glass**, n. *mādūbi*; a dish made of g. *tamgaram, kwachiya**, pl. *kwachaye*; a looking-g. *mādūbin ido, matsokachi*; the sound of falling g. *ḳilin ḳilin, ḳiri ḳiri, girin-girin*.
- glean**, tr. v. *kālāta, yin kāla, rore, yin saura (or sabra)*.
- gleaning**, *roro*.
- gleanings**, n. (of a harvest) *kāla, saura**.
- glorious**, adj. (of God) *jalla**.
- glory**, n. *daraja, darajiya, girma**.
- glove**, n. *rigar hannu*.
- glue**, n. *danko**.
- glutton**, n. *mai-loma, machi*, pl. *machiya, mai-rida, mafā-lashi, mai-kwaraka*.
- gluttonous**, *zwari*.
- gluttony**, *mayin chi, zwari, zari*; see **greed**.
- gnash**, tr. v. *tamna haḳori*.
- gnashing**, n. (of teeth) *tsukun haḳori*.

gnaw, to *chisga*, *chizga*, *gur-gura*.

go, intr. v. *taji*, *je*, *zaka*, *zatsa**, to be about to go *za* ; to go round a place *ziyara*, *zaga*, *zagi* ; to go before *gabāta*, *gabāche* ; to go forth *fita* ; to go away *kau* ; to go constantly to a place *shishiga* ; to go as far as *tusga*, *tusge* ; go with a person *tare* ; to go to meet *tariye* ; go out of *fita* ; to go by night *bi dare* ; to go after a wife in order to bring her home *biko* ; phr. go on with what you are doing *yi ta yi*.

goat, n. *akwiya*, *akuya*, *akwuya*, pl. *awaki* ; he-goat *bunsūru*, pl. *bunsūrai* or *bunsūraye* ; a young g. *burguma* ; a long-haired species of g. *buzuruwa* ; a speckled g. *gitsawa* (S.), *gwalande* ; a vicious g. *watsatsi*, fem. *watsatsiya* ; old lean g. *guzuma* ; a castrated g. *tabre*, *taure* ; beard of a g. *rairo*, *rero* ; a g. in milk *karduwa*.

goat-sucker, see **night-jar**.

God, pr. n. *Allah*, the plural *allohi* is used of idols.

going, part. *tafiya* ; they are g. *suna tafiya* ; a g. away *maraita**.

gold, n. *zinariya*.

gonorrhoea, *chiwon sanyi*, *masuna*, *fyauka*.

good, adj. *nāgari*, fem. *tāgari*, pl. *nāgargaru*, *mai-kyau*, *kyau*, *kekyawa*, *salih* ; phr. g. or bad *fari ko baki* ; g. used as an exclamation *to* ; g. morning *sanu da safe*, *sanu da rana* ; g. evening (on parting) *sai da safe*, (on meeting) *sanu da dare* ; good-bye for the present *sai an jima* ; g. news *albishir* ; g. news for you *albishirinka* ; a g. disposition *kyakyawan hali* ; something g. *abin kiriki* ; see under *sanu*.

good-bye, to say *ban kwana*.

goodness, n. *nagarta*, *nagar-chi*, *kyauta* ; (of flavour, etc.) *zaki*.

goods, n. *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukiyoyi* ; *kaya*, pl. *kayayaki* ; g. for sale *haja*, *faja** ; (property) *tarkache*.

goose, n. *dumya*, *dinya* ; a wild g. *gāba**.

gore, n. *jini*.

gore, tr. v. (of horned animals) *tune*, *tunkuda*, *tunkuji* or *tunkwiyi*, e.g. the bull and the cow gored each the other *sa da saniya suka tunkuda junansu* ; *soka*, *soke* or *soki* with intens. *soosoke*.

gorge, n. l. see **throat**.

2. (a narrow defile) *kwa-zazzabo*.

gorgeous, adj. (splendid) *na ado*, e.g. g. robes *riguna na ado* (or *masu-kawa*).

goro-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gwarra*; see **kola-nut**.

gory, adj. *da jini, na jini, sai jini*.

gospels, the *linjila*.

gossip, n. 1. (talk) *raushi, roshi, tadi, waiwai, algungu-manchi, kwarmato, azuzanchi, hira*.

2. concr. an idle talker, a gossip *algungumi*, pl. *algunguma, azūji, sururi* (S.).

gourd, n., a plant whose fruit is either eaten or formed into cups and calabashes; among the various kinds which are eaten are *kabēwa* (K.), *kubewa* (S.), *goji, kabus, karamiya*; among those used as vessels are *kwariya, korya, kurtu, masaki, maseki*, and *duma*; see also *baska, gūro* (S.), *jallo* (K.), *tsana* (S.).

gourds, roots of, coll. n. *yado*.

govern, v. (rule, reign) *mal-laka*; see **rule**.

governor, n. *hākimi**, pl. *hākimai, masarauchi, wakili*; *sariki* is sometimes used in this sense.

gown, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*,

salaha; the body of a g. as opposed to the sleeves (*han-nuwa*) *uwar riga*.

grace, n. (favour, free gift) *jinkai, aikin gafara, alhēri, kyauta*; he showed g. to us *ya yi ma mu alhēri*.

graceful, *da nasiya, da nasiha*.

gracious, adj. (of God) *karīmu*; good g. ! *haba mana*.

grain, n. 1. *kwara, kwaya*, pl. *kwarori*; g. that springs up of itself *gyamro*; g. which has been kept a long time *suna*; g. which has been husked *surfe*.

2. fig. grains (as of sand) *barbadi*.

grain, receptacle for, n. *taska*, pl. *taskoki, rufogo* (K.), *rufoniya, rufewa* (S.), *rumbu, tsunjiya*.

grammar, *nahau, nahauri*; one who is learned in g. *malamin nahau*.

grand, adj. (important) *babba*, pl. *manya*; *mai-girma*, pl. *masu-girma*.

grandchild, n. *jika*, fem. *jikanya*, pl. *jikoki, jikannu*; a great g. *taḅakunne*.

granddaughter, n., see prec.

grandfather, n. *kāka*, pl. *kakanni, uban uba*, e.g. your g. *uban ubanka*.

grandmother, n. *kākanya*.

grandson, n., see **grandchild**.

grapes, forest g. *tsibir-kinkini*, *chibir-kinkini*.

grasp, with the hand, tr. v. *jimka*, *rumchi*, *rumtse*, *jimke*; with the arms (to embrace) *rungume*.

grasping, adj. fig. (covetous, greedy) *da rowwa*, *marowachi*.

grasping disposition, n. *rowwa*, *kawazuchi*.

grass, n. 1. gen. *ch̄iyawa*, pl. *ch̄iyayi*, *yayi*, *haki*, pl. *hakūkuwa*; green g. *ch̄iyawa*, *danye*, *hāki*, pl. *hākuwa*; green g. which has recently sprung up *tsatse* (S.).

2. spec. of various kinds and uses: Bermuda or dub-g. *kiri-kiri* or *tsirkiyar zomo*; comb fringe g. *gude-gude*; cuscus g. or Vetiver g. *jema*; elephant g. *yambama*, *hambama*, *dawar kada*; prickly bur g. *karangiya*; Spanish reed g. *gabara*; a grass used for filling cushions *roba*, pl. *roboba*, *robuna*; a g. appendage worn by certain pagan tribes *takatsara*; dried or chopped g. for horses *ingirichi* or *ingirochi*; undried g. as fodder *kansuwa*, *k̄yasuwa*, *komayya*; a g. eaten in times of famine

(*Eragrostis tremula*) *bumburuwa*, *bubburwa*; a low coarse g. *birbiro*, *birobiro*; a g. eaten by horses *gadagi*, *garaji*, *lambusu*; a g. for making brooms *tsintsiya*; plaited g. *tsaiwa*, *tsawa*; a soft hairy g. *yan-hutu*; g. used for thatching *shifchi*, *yāma*, *yantso*, *būnu*, pl. *būnai*, *daudau*; a g. used in making mortar *datsi*; a g. shelter or hut *dabi* (S.); see also *bun-surun daji*, *gazama*, *karareyo*, *machara* (K.), *tuji* (Eleusine indica), *burgu* (*Panicum* sp.), *har̄kiya* or *har̄kiya* (*Digitaria debilis*).

grasshopper, *dindiba*, *dunkurkuda*; green g. *askalaya* (S.); spotted g. *wūkar sariki* (lit. king's knife).

gratitude, *maida girma*.

gratuitous, adj. *banza*.

grave, n. *kushewa*, *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *kushewoyi*, *makwanchi*, *kābari*, *kabri*, *wurin bisne*, *wurin kushewa*.

gravel, n. *tsākuwa*.

graze, v. 1. tr. *kiwo*.

2. intr. of cattle id.

grease, n. *mai*.

greasy, to be or become *nāshe*, *nāshi*.

great, adj. 1. (both physically and morally) *babba*, pl. *manya*

or *maya*, *mai-girma*, *da girma*; a g. king *sariki babba* or *babban sariki*; very g. (very important) *manya manya*.

2. (quantitatively and of degree) *da yawa*.

3. spec. applied to God *jalla**, *jalala**, *akbar**.

4. of one in authority as a king or prince *madaukaki*.

great, to declare g., v. 1. (to honour) *girmama*.

2. *kabbar**, e.g. to declare that God is g. *kabbar ga allah akbar*.

3. to be g. *bunkāsa, kasaita*.

greater, adj. comp. *mafi-girma*, pl. *masu-fi-girma*; in the absence of superl. forms the idea is expr. by phr. *ya fi duka* or *ya fi kowa* appended to the adj.; he was greater than he *ya fifiche shi*.

greatness, n. *girma, zati*.

greed, n. *rowwa, marowwachi, tsumulmula* (K.).

greedy, adj. *da rowwa, zargi, bahilchi, mayinchi, hadama, kanwa, kwalama, machi, zwari, makwadaita, mai-kwaraka, mafalashi, mai-kurmusu**, *marowwachi*.

green, adj. 1. (the colour) *algashi*, fem. *algasa*, pl. *algasai*,

algasu, tsanwa, chanwa; dark g. *kore*, fem. *koriya*, pl. *kwarrai*; light g. *kore-kore*; g. esp. applied to g. dyed leather *korino*.

2. (fresh) of plants etc. *danye* or *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi, danyu*.

greet, tr. v. 1. *gaida, gaishe, gaisa, yin fawo*, e.g. I greeted the man and he accepted my greeting *na gaida mutum ya karɓa gaisuwata*; we g. *muna gaisuwa*; I g. thee *a gaishe ka*.

2. (of religious salutation) *yin salatu*; we g. *muna salmawa*.

3. to g. by shaking the hand *jinjina*; to wave or extend the hand in greeting *miɓa hannu*, e.g. I greeted them with my hand and departed *na miɓa ma su hannu na tafi*.

greeting, n. *gaisuwa*.

grey, *efo*, turning g., as from age *furfura*.

grief, n. 1. (pain of mind, sorrow) *nadāma, ladāma*.

2. (cause of pain or sorrow) *wahala*.

3. (expression of grief) *kuka*, e.g. he made great g. over him *ya yi kuka dayawa a bisansa*.

grieved, be, intr. v. *wahalda*,
jin wahala.

grimace, a *gwalo*, *kogama*,
zumde.

grind, tr. v. 1. gen. *nika*, *tusa*,
tushe, *reda*, *daka*, intensive
to g. to powder *daddaka*,
dandaka, *daddaga*; to g.
thoroughly *barza*; to g. rice
etc. *tingama*.

2. (to whet or sharpen)
wasa, *gyarta*.

grinding, of wheat, n. esp. used
of regrinding *barzawa*, *tushi*.

grindstone, *mawashi*, *niki*;
a stone for smoothing a g.
makoŋi.

grip, to *kwakwume*, *damka*; to
g. the throat *kwakwume wuya*.

gripe, tr. v. (of medicine)
murda.

gristle, n. *gurunguntsi*.

groan, intr. v. *yin nishi*.

groaning, n. *nishi*.

groom, n. 1. *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai*,
dan muri, *dan turke*.

2. (bridegroom) *ango*, pl.
anguna.

grope, v. *lalabe*, *mamare*; (to
search one's way with the
hands in the dark) *burkuti*,
bulkuchi, *dundumi*.

ground, n. 1. (surface of the
earth) *kasa*; on the g. a *kasa*
or a *kas*; hard flat g. *kekwa*.

2. (cause) *sababi* or *suba-*

*bi** without g. (or grounds)
babu sababi.

3. (first principle or founda-
tion) *gutsu*.

ground, to (of a boat) *kafa*.

ground, pass. participle 1.
(finely) *raushi*, *roshi*, *rabshi*.

2. (roughly) *da tsaki*;
badly ground flour *barzo*.

ground-nut, n., i.e. *Arachis*
hypogaea gyada; a smaller
species of g.-n. *gujiya*, pl.
gujiyoyi, *gujeye*; oil extracted
from g.-n. *man gyada*.

grouse, sand-g. *barwa*, *kwanta-*
toi, *suwaka*, *ladin rogo*.

grow, intr. v. 1. of plants *tsira*,
tsire, *tsiro*, *chira*.

2. to increase in size *girma*,
yin girma.

3. to g. (i.e. to become)
zama; to g. old *tsufa*.

growing, *matashi*.

growl, to (of a lion) *babaki*.

growling, *gurnani*, *ruri*.

grown, full g. *rikakke*, *kasai-*
tache.

gruel, n., made of guinea-corn
kunu; a thin g. *salala*.

grumble, v. *yin gunaguni*, *yin*
guri, *yin bimbini*.

grumbling, n. *bimbini*, *bibini*,
zargi, *gunaguni*.

grunting, (of a pig) n. *tsuwa*.

guarantee, to *lamunta*.

guard, n. 1. (heed, care) *tsari*,

e.g. be on your g. against
ka nema tsari.

2. (soldier of king's body-guard) *dakare*, pl. *dakaru*,
dogari, pl. *dogarai.*

guard, tr. v. *tsära*, *tsäri*, *tsäre*,
tsäro, *batäka*, *ritse*, *rutse*, *ratse.*

guardian, *mai-tsari*, *mai-tsaro.*

guard-room, *jaru**, *jarum*.*

guest, n. *baço*, fem. *baçuwa*,
pl. *baçuna*, *baçi* or *baçokuna.*

guide, n. *jagaba*, *shugaba*, pl.
shugabai, *koranga* (K.), *ma-*
jan-hanya.

guide, tr. v. (lead, - conduct)
kai, *bida*, *bishe*; (to instruct)
galgade, *gargadi.*

guile, n. *munafuchi*, *munafun-*
chi, or *manafuchi*; (cunning)
wayo, with g. *da wayo.*

guilt, n. *laiſi.*

guiltless, adj. *babu laiſi*, *maras-*
laiſi.

guilty, to declare, v. *kada*,
bada laiſi, *kayas*.*

guinea-corn, n. *däwa* (Sor-
ghum vulgare), *tsaba* (S.),
*gero**. There are four chief
kinds of *däwa*: *kaura* used
for feeding horses, *farafara*,
farfara used when ground
for making gruel, *murmura*
or *muramura** eaten whole
when cooked, *giwakamba*
used as a medicine for rub-
bing on the eyes; the red

or grey g.-c. with close-
growing head *janjare*; husks
of g.-c. *kwardo*; g.-c. pod
tsirgagiya; an intoxicating
drink made from g.-c. *giya*,
g.-c. fever, occurring when
the g.-c. ripens *chiwo na*
sabon däwa; g.-c. which has
sprung up in an unsown
farm *kakarya*; see *badawa*,
dan-jigäwa, *gangariya*, *malle*,
shinkafar-talaka.

guinea-fowl, n. *zabo*, fem.
zabuwa, pl. *zabi*, *kazar ya-*
raba; cry of the g.-f. *kikal*,
kukui.

guinea-pig, *beran turawa.*

guinea-worm, n. *kurkunu*,
girgamo; a small plant used
as a medicine for g. *daman-*
käda, *dumankäda*; a swell-
ing caused by g. *hangara.*

guitar, n., a kind of *koſsa.*

gullet, n. *janai* (S.), *janyaro*
(K.).

gully, a dry g. *kozazzabe*, *kwa-*
zazzabo.

gum, n. *danko*, *jirai*; spec. a
g. put in ink *käro*; a g. used
in perfumes *karon maje*,
bafur; gum-bearing trees
chiriri, *dakwara*, *düli*, *dum-*
she, *dundu*, *karçara*, *kwar-*
kware, *fara çaya*, *taura.*

gums, n. (seat of the teeth)
däsashi (K.), *dasori* (S.).

gun, n. *bindiga*, pl. *bindigogi*; *adakka**; a double-barrelled g. *bindiga da baki* (or *mai-baki*) *biyu*, *tagwayen bindiga*; to load a g. *dora* or *chika bindiga*; to discharge a g. *halbi* (or *halbe* or *buga*) *bindiga*; flint of a g. *kankara*, *dutsim bindiga*; report of a g. *kārar bindiga*, *āmo*; a flint-lock g. *mai-kamsir*, *mantampas* (S.); a maxim g. *mai-ruwa**; a long-barrelled Arab g. *sawaila*, *tsawila*.

gunpowder, n. *albarus* or *albarushi*.

gush out, intr. v. *zuba*, *zubo*; to g. out abundantly *gushes-gushe*.

gusset, n. *tsumma*, pl. *tsummoki*; cloth g. in a tobe *shiga*.

gypsum, n. *aljibus*, *alzibus*.

habit, n. *ta'ada*, *tāda* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, *ada*, *hali*, *kabiya**, *sabo**, the last especially of aptitude acquired by practice, phr. nothing can be done except by practice *aikin duniya duka sai sabo*; see **habituated**.

habitation, n. *mazamni*.

habituated, to be, intr. v. *saba* constr. with *da*.

haggle, intr. v. *yin chiniki*,

tallata, *yin talla*; see **bar-gain**.

hagglings, *talla*.

hail, n. *kankara*, *ruwa da kankara*.

hail! exclamation = welcome! *sanu*, a *gaishe ka*, *sai lafiya*.

hair, n. *gashi*, pl. *gususuwu*; spec. head of h. when cut off *suma*; h. on the cheeks *saje*; h. of tail of horse, elephant, etc. *tsagiya*; abundance of h. *gizo*; absence of h. on head *kundumin kai*; long ridge of h. left in shaving *shasanda*; tuft of h. in the middle of head *zanko*; h. of woman plaited *bijaji*, *bujaji*, *buji-buji*; h. worn by women in curls down their cheeks *kitso*; twisted locks of woman's h. at side of face *dauri*; grey h. *furfura*; h. on cheeks and upper lip *washēfe*; h. tied in knots with a ridge in the middle *shetambuwa*; a head of h. *sura** (S.); a tuft of h. of a young man *toliya*; the h. came off *gashi ya tūshe*.

hairdresser, n. *mai-kitso*, fem. *makitsiya*, *wanzami*, *maikalmishiya*.

hairy, adj. *da gashi*, e.g. its face is all h. *fuskassa duk da gashi* or *fuskassa sai gashi*;

- a h. person *galgasa, gargasa* ;
h. all over *duguza*.
- half**, n. *shashi, shashe, sashe, rābi, nusufi** ; h. a piece of cloth, paper, etc. *ausagi, bāre*.
- hall**, n., entrance h. *zauze*, pl. *zauruka*.
- halt**, adj. *gurgu*, pl. *guragu, makasari*.
- halt**, intr. v. 1. (to limp) *yin gurgunta*.
2. (to stop marching, to stand still) *tsayi, tsaya, tsai*.
3. spec. to h. for the night *shida* or *shide*.
4. fig. to h. between two opinions *yin zuchiya biyu*.
- halter**, n., also a leading-rope for horses, etc. *āsawayi, rāgama*.
- halting**, n. *tsayi* ; (limping) *gurgunta, gurmunta, gurgunchi*.
- halting-place**, for the night, n. *zango, mashidi*, the last in the sense of a lodging or khan ; spec. temporary h. for carriers *loko*.
- halve**, tr. v. *bare, bara* ; in less strict sense (to divide) *raba*.
- hamlet**, *unguwa, anguwa, tūnga*, pl. *tungaigai*.
- hammer**, n. *kwarikwasa** ; a blacksmith's h. *masāba*, pl. *masābai* ; a large h. *ama-deshi** ; a small h. *matalaga*,

muntalaga ; h. of a gun *kunāma*.

hammock, *rāga**.

hand, n. 1. *hānnu*, pl. *hānnu-wa, hannāye* ; the right h. *dama* or *hannu na dama* ; the left h. *hagum, hagu, hauni, hannu na hagum* or *hānnu na hauni* ; the palm of the h. *tāfin hānnu* ; the back of the h. *bayan hannu*.

2. of place or direction, right h. *dama, wajen dama* ; left h. *hagum, hagu, hauni* or *wajen hagum*, etc. ; of time, at h. *kusa, da kusa* ; to raise the h. *chira hannu* ; see **hands**.

handed, left-, adj. *bahago*.

handful, n. (of mud, flour, etc.) *dunḡule, churi, damka, jimki* ; to take a h. *jimke, chura, chibra* (S.), *damke, dimtso, jimka*.

handkerchief, n. *maharma, maharama, adiko, mai-yani, mayani* ; spec. a h. on woman's head *kallabi* ; h. to bind round woman's head *alfuta*, pl. *alfutai*.

handle, n. *mariki*, pl. *marika, makāma, maḡauki, maratayi* ; h. of axe *bakin gatari, ḡota* (Kats.), *ḡota* (K.) ; h. of box *makama, ḡota, zoben kaya*.

handle, tr. v. *tāba*.

hands, to clap the, v. *tafa, tafi, tabi* (S.); to shake h. *yin musafiha, ban hannu*.

hands, a man with his h. tied to his neck, n. *kukumtache*, pl. *kukumtattu*; the tying of a man's h. *kukumi, kunkumi*; shaking h. *masafiha, musafiha*.

handsome, adj. *da kyau, mai-kyau*; a building h. to look at *gida da kyaun gani*.

hang, tr. v. *rataya, rataye, yin rataya*; to h. up *rataya, yin rataya*; to h. up meat *done, kere*.

hanging, n. (curtain, etc.) *reto, rataya*.

hanging, n. (e.g. h. up of curtains) *yani*.

hanging, 1. adj. (suspended) *a rataye*.

2. part. *ratayawa*.

hank, of yarn *sulu* (S.).

happen, intr. v. 1. *afku, abku, faru*, e.g. it happened *ya faru*, what has happened? *mi ya faru?*

2. (i.e. befall) *same, sama, sami, samo, gudana*, e.g. what has happened to you? (i.e. what is the matter with you?) *mi ya same ka?*

happiness, n. 1. (satisfaction) *dadi, dadin zuchiya, alhēri, murna**; *fārin-chiki, gatan-chi*.

2. (in a religious sense) *sa'ada**.

happy, feel, intr. v. *jin dadi*.

harass, tr. v. *tsananche, tsananta*.

hard, adj. 1. phys. *tattaura*, fem. *tattauriya, da tauri, tsandauri*; see seq.; also morally hard, obstinate.

2. (difficult of accomplishment, etc.) *da wuya*.

harden, 1. intr. v. (to become hard) *yin tauri, taurare*.

2. tr. v. to h. *taurata, tsaurata, yin tauri*.

hard-headed, n. (an obstinate person) *mai-kin ji, mai-taurin zuchiya*.

hardness, n. *tauri, tsauri* (Zanf.); also in a moral sense, e.g. *taurin zuchiya* h. of heart.

hare, n. *zomo*, pl. *zomai*.

harlot, n. *shakaliya*, pl. *shakalai*; *sarkachiya, bombegi**; child of harlot *dan-farka*.

harlotry, n. *sakarchi, shakalchi*.

harm, n. *hanna, laifi*, e.g. there is no h. in it *babu laifi*.

harm, tr. v. *bata, bache*.

Harmattan wind, *iskan buda*.

harpoon, n., for river fishing *zāgo, hagu, margi*; an iron-tipped h. fired from a gun *sango*.

hart, n., see **deer**.

hartebeest (*Damaliscus Senegalensis*) *dāri*; West African

- h. *kanki*, pl. *kanoki*, *kan-kuna*.
- harvest**, n. *girbi*, (i.e. the season) *kaka*.
- harvest**, to cut down the, v. *girba*; see **reap**.
- haste**, n. *sauri*, *samri*, *anniya*, *garaje*.
- hasten**, intr. v. *yin anniya*, *hanzarta* (K.), *hamzarta*, *hamzanta* (S.), *kwarare*, *gau-gata*, *gagauta*, *gagawa*; to h. after *zazari*; h. to catch up *ku chika*; to h.; i.e. to accelerate *hamzarta*.
- hastening**, n. *garaje*, *gaugawa*.
- hastily**, adv. *da sauri*, *da hamzari*.
- hat**, straw, n. *gurumfa*, *garumfa*, *garunfa*; a large straw h. *mālafā*, *mālfā*, pl. *mālafuna*, *mālafai*; *ɗan gurumfa* designates a small trader, who carries goods on his head; see **cap**.
- hatch**, tr. v. *kyankyashe*, *kyan-kyasa**.
- hatchet**, n. *gātari*, pl. *gātara*, *gātura*, *gāturuwa*, *gāfiya*, *wal-waɗa*, *warwaɗa*; small h. *ɗan gatari*; handle of a h. *bakin gatari*; spec. small h. for cutting grass for fodder *kurāda*, *kuradda*; h. with broad blade *barandami*, *tsi-taka*.
- hate**, n. *kiyeya*, *kiyaiya*, *kiyo*, *kiwo*.
- hate**, tr. v. *ki*, *kiya**.
- hater**, n. ag. *maḳiyi*, pl. *maḳiya*.
- hatred**, *kiyaiya*, see **anger**.
- haughtiness**, n. *fāɗin rai*, *fāɗin zuchiya*, *girman kai*, *girman rai*, *homa*, *foma*, *toma*.
- haughty**, adj. *da girman rai*, *tomo*.
- haul**, tr. v. *ja*.
- haunch**, n. (of a cow) *kwan-kwaso*.
- Hausa**, pr. n., the Hausa nation, country, language *Hausa*; a H. native *ba-Haushe*, pl. *Hausawa*; the H. language *Hausa*, *magana Hausa*, *hal-shen Hausa*, after the manner of the Hausas *Hausanchi*, I understand H. *ina jin magana Hausa*, to speak H. *yin magana Hausa*; see **language**.
- have**, tr. v. (to possess) *na da*, *ke da*, also expr. by *ga* (to), or with pronouns *gare*, e.g. I h. a friend named Hassan *ina da aboki sunansa Hasan*, a certain man has a camel *wani mutum shina da raku-mi*, we h. *mu ke da*, I h. much money *kurɗi dayawa gare ni*.
- haversack**, *amasai*.
- hawk**, n. *shirwa*, pl. *shirwoyi*,

or *shirwuna*, *karamāta*, *tankarki*, *tsinkaki*, *shahu**, *shafo*; swoop of a h. *bara*, *sura*.

hay, n. *baro*, *ingirichi*, *ingirochi*.

haze, n. *hazo*, *kāsashi*.

hazel nut, n. *chanza*.

hazy, adj. *da hazo*.

he, pers. pron. *shi*, *ya*, *yi*, *i**; *shi* is emphatic and used as separate pron. before *ya*, e.g. but my brother he saw her afar off *amma kanena shi ya gan ta da nesa*, it is also used with dependent clauses and wishes; *ya* is used in the aorist and in impersonal expressions as *ya isa* it is enough.

head, n. 1. (of animated beings) *kai*, pl. *kanuwa*, *kawana*, *kawuna*.

2. (chief point or substance of a statement) *kai*.

3. (chief person) see **chief**; back part of h. *keya*; a man whose h. protrudes at the back *mai-kyeya*; a person with a large h. *mai-kai*; standing on the h. *rimi*; to hang the h. *sunkwiya da kai* (K.); leaning the h. on the hand in token of distress *tagumi*.

headache, n. *chiwon-kai*, *jiri*, *jeri*.

head-dress, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawunna*; (of a woman) *fatala*, *patala*.

headlong, adj. and adv. *da gangara*; to fall h. *sulla da kai*, *fada da kai*.

headman, 1. (of a village, place, etc.) *sariki* or *sarki*, q.v., *dagachi*, pl. *dagatai*, *kunduda*, *makwayo*, *haki-mi**.

2. (of a caravan) *madugu*, pl. *madugawa*.

heal, tr. v. *warke*, *warkad da*; pass. to be healed *warke* and the pass. form, e.g. remain here until he be healed *ku zamna a wurin nan sai ya warke* or *sai a warke shi*.

healed, particip. (h. in body or restored in mind) *warkakke*, fem. *warkakkiya*, pl. *warkakku*.

healing, *warkasuwa*.

health, n. (i.e. good h.) *lāfiya*; in h. *lāfiya* and *da lafiya*, frequently used in salutations, e.g. are you in h.? *kana lāfiya?* ans. in very good h. *lāfiya lau*; to be in good h. *yin lāfiya*; to improve in h. *jin dama*, *warware*; restoration to h. *afuwa*; he recovers his h., he becomes better *ya samu afuwa* (or *lāfiya*), *ya ji rangwame*; one

in bad h., sick, a patient
maras-lafiya.

healthy, adj. *lafiyaye*.

heap, n. *taro* or *taru*, pl. *tarori*,
tūli or *tulli*, pl. *tuloli*, *kitila*;
a h. of branches, etc. *zubugi*.

heap up, tr. v. *haɗa*, *ɗora*;
spec. to h. up earth round
plants *firi*, *furi*, yin *maimai*,
q.v.

hear, tr. v. *ji*.

heart, n. 1. (the bodily organ)
zuchiya, pl. *zukata*, *zuchiyoyi*,
zutochi or *zukochi*, *gaba**.

2. (the feelings) *zuchiya*,
e.g. *zuchiyata ta ɓache* my h.
was broken; to be cut to the
h. *jin zafin zuchiya*; to learn
by h. *samu harda*; to know
by h. *yin harda*, *hardache*;
to say off by h. *yin tulawa*;
they lost h. *hankullansu*
duka sun tashi.

heartburn, *kwarnafi*, *kwan-*
nafi.

heartless, adj. *magaya* or *ma-*
gauchi, pl. *magauta* or *magata*.

heat, n. *zāfi*, *zufa*; spec. h. of
the sun *gumi*.

heathen, n. *arne*, pl. *asna*, *azna*,
arna; *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and
kafirawa; *majusi*, pl. *majusa-*
wa; *ba-Maguje*, pl. *Maguzawa*.

heathenism, n. *kafirchi**, *ka-*
*furchi**, *halin kafirai**, *as-*
nanchi, *aznanchi*, *arnanchi*.

heave, tr. v., to h. a sigh *aje*
zuchiya, yin *sheda*.

heaven, n. *sāma*, pl. *samaniya*,
sammai, *samomi*, *gidan da-*
wama; h. and hell (the after-
world) *lahira*; the Moham-
medan paradise *aljanna*.

heaviness, n. (great weight)
navyi.

heavy, adj. *da navyi*, *mai-*
navyi.

heddles (of a loom), *allera*,
annera (S.).

hedge, n. (fence) *darni*, *danga*,
damfāmi, *shimge*, *shinge*, pl.
shimgaye, *kiliya*.

hedgehog, n. *bushiya*, *baushi-*
ya, *babagumi*.

hedges, a plant used in making,
n. *fidda sartse*, *bi-ni-da-zugu*,
chi-ni-da-zugu.

heed, n. *tsāri*; take h. *nema*
tsāri.

heed, v. 1. (to take notice
of anything) *kūla*, *tuna*,
tunane, all constr. with *da*.

2. (to attend to what is
said) *saurara*, *ji*; spec. to
take h. to an agreement, etc.
ɗamre magana.

heel, n. *dudduge* or *diddigi*,
duga-duga, pl. *dugadugai*,
dunduniya.

heifer, *karsana*.

height, n. *tsawa*, *tsawo*, *tsai*,
tsayi, *hawa*, e.g. it is three

cubits in h. *tsawonsa kamu uku*.

heir, n. *magadi, magaji*, pl. *magata, magada, māmayi*; h. to the throne *chiroma, yarīma*; h. to the throne *majiran gado*, at Kano *wambai, daudu, dauda*; to have as h., i.e. to be succeeded by *gāda da*.

Hejira, the, n. *hijira*.

held, particip. *rikakke*, fem. *rikakkiya*, pl. *rikakku*.

hell, n. *jahannama, jahīma*; h. and heaven (the future world) *lahira*.

hell-fire, n. *jahīma*.

helmet, n. *bushiya, kwalkwali, buke*.

help, n. *tamayi, taimako, taimakawa, sauḳi, agaji, agaza, shalli, tanyo* (Zanf.); h. especially in war *gudummuwa, gudummawa, gudunmawa*; to ask for h. *zukatta*; to obtain h. *samu sauḳi*; to send h. *koro sauḳi*.

help, tr. v. *taya, tanya* (S.), *tanye, tanyo, yin taya, taimaka, taimaki, taimake, tamaya, yin taimako, agaje, sauḳi, sauwaka, sarwaka, yin shalli*; to ask for h. *gāyato*.

helper, n. ag. *mataimaki, matanyi, abokin tayo*.

hem, n. *lafi* or *lafe shafi*,

shafe; to make a h. *kalmāsa, kalmashe*; to h. round *dāje*.

hemorrhoids, *bāsur*.

hemp, African bowstring h. *moda*; Indian h. *rama*.

hen, n. *kāza*, pl. *kaji*; a hen laying eggs *daḳwalwa, daḳwalwa*; the Hen and Chickens constellation which appears when the rainy season is coming *kaza mai-yaya* or *kaza da yaya*.

hence, adv. *dāga nan, dāga wurin nan*.

hen-coop, n. *akurkin kāza, akurki*.

henna, *lalle*.

her, 1. possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nta*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-lta, -rta*, e.g. h. daughter *ḍiyarta*, h. camel *raḳuminta*; used separately if the object possessed is masc. *nata*, if fem. *tata*, see H. Grammar; these stand also for Engl. 'hers.'

2. pers. pron. objective suffixed to verbs and preps. *-ta*, e.g. he saw h. *ya gan ta*, to h. *gare ta*; and separate (after prepositions) *ita*, e.g. he returned along with h. *ya komo tare da ita*.

herb, n. (green blade) *ganye*, fem. *ganya*, pl. *ganyaye*.

herd, n. *garke**, *garge* (S.), pl. *garkuna*.

herdsman, n. *makiyayi*, pl. *makiyaya*, *makyayi*, pl. *makyaya*.

here, adv. *nan*, *a wurin nan*, *dāga nan*, the latter also = from h., from this point, e.g. do you know the way from h. *ka sani hanya dāga nan ko?*

hereditary, an h. profession, *chinikin gida*.

heretofore, adv. (until now) *har yanzu*; h. I have not heard this *dadai ban ji wannan ba*; as h. *kaman na dā*; see **ever**.

hermit, *mai-halwa**, *mai-kiya-mal duniya**, *sufi**.

hero, *gamzo*.

heron, n. *zarbi*, *zarbe*, *zalbi*; great white h. or egret *farin zarbi*; see **egret**.

hers, separ. possess. pron. *nata*, *tata*; see **her**.

hesitate, intr. v. *yin zuchiya biyu*.

hesitation, n. *zuchiya biyu*.

hiccough, n. *shākuwa*, *chiwon shākuwa*.

hid, to be, v. *boye*, *boyi*.

hidden, particip. *boyaya*, *boyu*, *rufaffe*, fem. *rufaffa*, pl. *rufaffu*.

hide, n. *kilāgo*, pl. *kilāgai*;

kilabo, *kirgi*, the latter used of h. after tanning, the untanned h. is called *fata*.

hide, 1. tr. v. *rufe*, *rufi* or *rife**, *boye*, *boyi*, *sakaye*, *sulle*.

2. intr. v. (to hide oneself) *boye*, *boyi*, *lābe* (S.), *raḅe* (K.), *fāke*, see **ambush**; to h. behind a person in fear *rafake*, *ranfake*, *rampaki*; to h. oneself *boyo*; to h. right away or completely *bobboye*.

hiding, n. *boyewa*.

hiding-place, n. *maḅoya*, *ma-ḅoyi*, *mafaka*, *fako**; a place for hiding or laying up anything *ma-aje*, *ma-aji*.

higgle, v. *talla**.

high, adj. *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *da tsawo*.

hill, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi* or *tuduna*, *tsauni*, pl. *tsaunoni*, *tsaunaye*, *tsaununa*; a h. covered with sand *jiggawa* or *jigawa*, pl. *jigawoyi* or *jigawuna*; hillock *burji*, *birji*.

himself, pron. both emphatic as *shi da kansa*, and also reflexive, e.g. prov. he who weeps for another weeps for h. *kowa shi ke kuka da wani shi kuka da kansa*.

hinder, adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*.

hinder, tr. v. *hāna*, *kwāḅe*

kwaba, kwabo, laruranta, tankosa, tankwasa.

hip-bone, n. *kātāra.*

hippopotamus, n. *dorina*, pl. *dorinai* or *dorinnai.*

hire, n. (wages) *lada, sūfuri, alāro, ijāra*; a hired labourer *kwadigo, dan kwadigo*; a person seeking h. *mai-koda*; to work for h. *yin sufuri.*

hire, tr. v. *yin sufuri, sufurche, sufurta, sufurchi, jinganta, ijarta.*

hiring, n. *ijarchi.*

his, possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nsa*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-lsa, -rsa*, e.g. h. camel *rakuminsa*, h. mare *godiyarsa*; as separate pron. if the object possessed is masc. *nasa* or *nai*, if fem. *tasa* or *tai.*

hiss, intr. v. *yin fuchi.*

hissing, n. *shishita*; of snakes *fuchi.*

histry, *tāriyo**.

hit, tr. v., see **strike.**

hither, adv. *nan**, *ga wurin nan**.

ho! interj. to call attention *kai.*

hoard, to *tsimi da.*

hobble, a rope used to h. horses, n. *dabaibayi, dabai-biya* (S.), *tabaibayi, tarnāki.*

hobgoblin, n. *fatalwa.*

hoe, n. *fatanya, fartanya, hanyaya*, pl. *hanyu, hanyuna* or *hanyoyi, mashemi, kyante, kuruga*; spec. a large h. bent like small plough *galma* (S.), *garma* (K.); a long-handled h. with triangular blade *kūmbu, kūmbuwa*; a h. with long handle and broad blade used for cutting stubble *kwasa*; a h. used as a dibble *sungumi.*

hoe, tr. v., to dig or stir the ground *noma, nomi, nome, chira, furi, firi, fuda, hūda*; to cut down grass with a h. *shema*; the first hoeing after sowing *gwarzo* (S.), *turbe, chirbe* (Z.); the first hoeing before sowing *kaftu, kabtu, kufurtu*; clearing ground for hoeing *zāfa* (S.).

hoed, *nomamme*, fem. *nomam-miya*, pl. *nomammu.*

hog, n., see **pig.**

hoist, to h. a flag *chira tuta bīsa.*

hold, tr. v. *rika, riķe, riķi, riske, riski, ruska, aje**, e.g. he held the door *ya aje kofa*; to h. fast in the mind *riķe, riķa, riķi*; to lay h. on *kama*; to h. up at arm's length *dāga*; to h. back *turke, zamne**; to h. the breath *hadīye* (*hadē* or *ḍauki*) *lumfashi.*

holding fast, n. *rikawa*.

hole, n. *rami*, *rame* (S.), pl. *ramuna*, *ramu*, *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*, *ɓariya* or *babbariya* (S.), *faffago*, *fāgo*, *fūji*, *kurfi*, pl. *kurfofi*, *kurfu*, *pampama* (S.), *mashiga*, *sāra*; h. for game to fall into *hāko*, pl. *hākōki*, *bima*; a h. for dung *kwakwari*, *masai*, *salga*; a back entrance to a fox or rat h. *ɓuga*; a h. in which grain is planted *kamfa*; a h. in a wall *kuɓfa*, *kusuwa* (S.); h. where dirty water is thrown *katami*, *kwatami*; a h. to look out at *taga*; h. for storing corn *tsunjiya*; h. made in nose of ox for rope *asirka*, *zari*; h. for entrance *kofo*; h. in a seam *ɓarāka*; to make many holes *huhuda*, *fuffuda*.

hollow-backed, adj. *gantsarwa*.

holy, adj. *da tsarki*; a holy man *sharif*.

homage, n. *chaffa*, *chappa*, *mubaya*, *mabaya*.

homage, to do (by kneeling down) intr. v. *durkusa*, *yin chaffa*.

home, n. *gida*; at h. *chikin gida*.

honest, adj. *mai-gaskiya*, *da gaskiya*; an h. man *mutumen gaskiya*.

honey, n. *zūmmuwa*, *zūma*, *ruwan zummuwa*; a stick of h. *algarwai*.

honey-guide (bird), *gunda*, *maganiya*, *ɗan zuma*.

honour, n. *yabo*, *daraja*, *dara-jiya*, *manyanchi*, *mayanchi*, *girma*, *ɗaukaka*.

honour, tr. v. *yin yabo*, *girmama*, *bāda girma*, *ba* (or *bāda*) *daraja*.

honoured, participial adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

hoof, n. *kofato*, pl. *kofatai*.

hook, n. *ɓugiya*, pl. *ɓugiyoyi* or *ɓugiyuna*; large wooden h. *kwandariya*; hooks on a fishing-line, coll. *mammari*, *murumuru*; a fish h. *fatsa*, *ɓugiyar fātsa*.

hook, to h. on to *kalgame* (S.); to stick with a h. *makāta*.

hoopoe, *chigi da tukku*, *katutu*.

hop, to h. on one foot, intr. v. *lange*, *bira*, *ɗira*.

hope, n. *bege*, see **expectation**

hope, intr. v. *yin bege*, *ta maha*, *yin tamaha*.

hopping, n. *langa*, *lange*.

hopping, n. *dire*; a h. game *shillalo*.

horn, n. *kafo*, pl. *kafo* and *kafo*, *kafo*; (a trumpet *kafo*, *waza*; a cow with a h. growing downwards *saniy*

mai-dauri; without horns
dugūmi.

hornbill (*Bucorvus pyrrhops*),
ground h. *burtu*; African h.
chilikowa; *shamo*, *shamuwa*;
see also *ka-ki-ganin Allah*.

horned, *da káfo*.

hornet, n. *rina*, pl. *rinoni*,
rinainai.

horse, n. *doki*, fem. *godīya*,
pl. *dawaki*, *dawakai*; spec.
young h. *sāfi*, *sāfe*, fem.
sāfiya; *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*,
pl. *dukusai*; old lean h.
guzuma, *gwabta*; war h. *in-*
garma, pl. *ingarmu*; a h.
that walks with its ankles
on ground *mai-takin biri*; a
h. with a hollow back *doki*
mai-lotso; a bay h. *furde*,
sari; a black h. *akawali*,
kyara, *kiyara*; a speckled
black and white h. *chichiro*;
a brown h. *aharas*, *ahara-*
shi, fem. *aharasa*; a cream-
coloured h. *akaza*; a light
brown h. *gunya*, *sira* (S.); a
bay or dun h. *sari*; white-
faced h. *bola*; a white h.
kili, fem. *kiliya*; a roan h.
bidi, *dandas sakī*; a black
and white h. *kilikamya* (S.),
sheji; h. speckled white with
black *alshafi*, fem. *alshafa*.

Horse's harness, diseases,
etc.: small bells on h. head

chikasaura, *chikasabra*; strap
round h. head *maraya*; h.
breast-band *dan gāba*; h.
breast-strap fastened to
saddle *majayi*; h. cloth put
under saddle *kafu*; a disease
of h. foot just above the hoof
alafa; a skin disease in a h.
siminya; a disease on legs of
a h. *tijo*; a medicine poured
into h. mouth *chushe*; a
place for horses *shamāki*, pl.
shamākai; a h. disease which
causes the hair to fall off
dasusu; a runner in front
of a h. *gurgure*.

horseback, on, adv. phr. *bisa*
(or *bisan*) *doki*; a man on h.
mai-doki, pl. *masu-doki*; to
mount on h. *haru bisa doki*;
to take exercise on h. *ki-*
lisa.

horse-fly, n. *barbaje*; also
called *damisan dawaki* being
spotted like a leopard; a
large buzzing h. *gwarje*.

horseman, n. *mai-doki*, pl.
masu-doki.

horse-raddish, tree (*Moringa*
pterygosperma) *zagalagandi*.

hospitality, to show h. *yin*
baƙonchi.

host, n., entertainer *mai-mā-*
shidi, *mai-masabki*; a great
multitude *babban taro*.

hot, adj. *da zafi*, *ɗumi*, *da ɗumi*,

ḍimi, *da ḍimi*; h. water *ruwan zafi* or *ruwan ḍumi*; it is h. (of the weather) *rana da ḍumi*; the h. or dry season *rani*; the hottest part of the dry season just as the rains are beginning *bāzara*; the h. month at end of rains *agazari* (K.), *agajeri* (S.).

hot-tempered, *mai-jaji*.

hound, n., see **dog**.

hour, *sa'a*; the hours of the day are only reckoned approximately by the Hausas, they are: *jijifi* the twilight just before the dawn; *assuba* or *azuba** the dawn; *hantsi* two hours after dawn, i.e. circ. 8 a.m.; *walaha* circ. 10 a.m.; *rana tsāka* or *tsākar rana* mid-day; *zawal* circ. 2 p.m.; *azuhur*, *azahar*, time of the call to prayer, circ. 2 or 2.30 p.m.; *la'asar* 4 to 5 p.m.; *magariba* or *magarub* just before sunset; *mareche* late in the evening; *almauru*, *lisha* very late in the evening; *dare* time between *lisha* and *jijifi*.

house, n. *gīda*, pl. *gīdaje*, *gīdadaji*, *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*; a four-cornered thatched h. *tafarfara*, see **hut**; h. of one room *ḍāki*, pl. *ḍakuna*; he is in the h. *yana ḍaka*;

top of h. or upper storey of h. *kan ḍaki*; a desolate ruined h. *kango*, pl. *kangogi*, *kan-gaye*; all the people belonging to one h. *kabila*; master of h. *mai-gīda*; a flat-roofed h. *soro* (K.), pl. *soraye*.

household, n. *gīda*; father of the h. *ubangida*, fem. *uwalgīda* or *uwargīda*.

householder, n. *mai-gīda*.

hovering, (of a bird) *shawāgi*, *jewa*.

how, adv. 1. interrog. *ḡaḡa*.

2. rel. *ḡaḡa*, *kanda*, *yaya* (S.), *wāda*, *yāda*, *yadda*; h. dost thou know? *ḡaḡa ne ka sani*; h. are you going to manage? *ḡaḡa za ka yi*; h. long? *har yaushe*, *tun yaushe*; h. many? *nawa* or *guda nawa*; h. much? *nawa*; phr. h. many persons were there? *mutum nawa ke nan?* h. long will it be before you finish? *sai yaushe za ka gama?*

however, 1. rel. adv. (in whatever manner) *ko ḡaḡa*.

2. adversative conj. (but) *bari dai*; *fache**.

howl, intr. v. *yin kuka*, *yin hargowa*.

hucksters, *yan shimfīda*, see **retailer**.

hue, n. (of colour) *launi*.

hum, n. *amo*; h. of conversation *dūmi*.

hum, intr. v. *yin amo*.

humanity, n. (the nature of man) *mutumchi*.

humble, adj. *da karamin rai*.

humble person, *ladāfi, la-dābi*.

humble, tr. v. *kaṣkantad da, maida karami*, e.g. he humbled himself *ya maida kansa karami*.

humiliate, to *kaṅkanta*.

humiliation, n. *kaṅkanchi*.

hump, n. *doro, kazaza, kusumbi*; h. on bull, etc. *tozo*; humped cattle *jaḅajaba*; without a h. *muturu*.

hump-backed, adj. *mai-doro, mai-gantsarwa, da kusumbi*.

hunch-back, n. *kazaza, kusumbi, mai-doro*.

hundred, num. *ḍari, miya, minya, zangu*, the last is generally restricted to counting cowries; two h. *ḍari biyu, metin*, metan**.

hunger, n. *yunwa, yunwachi*.

hunger, to suffer, n. *matsu*, matsi, jin yunwa*.

hungry, adj. *da yunwa*; I am h. *ina da yunwa*; a h. person *mayunwachi*, pl. *mayunwata*.

hunt, v. *yin farauta*.

hunter, n. *mafarauchi*, pl. *mafarauta*.

hunting, n. *farauta*.

hurry, n. *garaje*.

hurry, to be in a, v. *gaugata, gagauta*; h. up *ku chika, ku jika* or *ku yi da jika*; I am in a h. *na kosa*.

hurt, tr. v. *fama*; I have h. my leg *na fama kafa*.

husband, n. *miji* or *namiji*, pl. *maza, gwarzo**; h. and wife *miji da mata*.

husk, n. (of grain) *surfe*; a h. of maize *totuwar masara*.

husk, to h. grain, tr. v. *surfe, surfa, swaba, saba, sabe*.

husked, (rice, etc.) *surfaffe*.

husks, coll. *dusa, dussa* (S.); h. from wheat, etc. *tsāki*; h. of guinea-corn *kono* (K.), *konu* (S.); h. enclosing an ear of corn *buniya*.

hut, n. *shigifa*; a h. for storing grain in *shirayi*; a light thatched h. *rudu*; a grass h. *bukka, tsangaya*; a h. with grass walls but with distinct roof *ḍakin zana* (K.), *ḍauke, dabi* (S.); a round h. *kago*; a mud h. *kudandani, tseko*; a h. in a compound reserved for domestic work *tsakakari**; a rectangular h. *tafarfara*.

hyena, *kure**, fem. *kura*, pl.

kuraye, *amīna**, *daguyau* (K.), *gazau**, *shaki* (S.), *sheyaki* (K.); striped h. *sayaki*, *shaki*, *saki*, *sheyaki*; young of h. *barmakai*.

hypocrisy, n. *riya*, pl. *riyoyi*; to practise h. *yin riya*.

hypocrite, n. *mai-riya*, pl. *masu-riya*.

hyrax, West African tree h. (squirrel) *beran bisa*.

I, 1st pers. pron. comm. gender; 1. *na*, prefixed to aor., e.g. I went *na tafi*; I saw him *na gan shi*; with *ba*, often contracted, e.g. I did not see him *ban gan shi ba*; see H. Gram. p. 9.

2. *ni* suffixed to fut. and passives, e.g. I shall go *za ni tafi*; I was wounded by a gunshot *aka halbe ni da bindiga*. As a prefix to a verb *ni* expresses the fut., e.g. *ni tafi* I shall go; prefixed to the aor. it denotes an emphatic past, e.g. It was I who went or I indeed went *ni na tafi*; *ni* is also to be used in emphatic expressions, e.g. I myself *ni da kaina*; I alone *ni kaɗai*; is it I? do you mean me? *niya*.

3. *ina* expresses the present and should be followed by

the participial form if there be such, thus, I am coming *ina tafowa*; but *ina so* I am willing.

ibis, *rara*, *tuntumi*; the African wood i. *tsagagi*; see **stork**.

idiot, n. 1. from birth *saruru**, *shashasha**.

2. fig., see **fool**, **foolish**.

idle, adj. 1. (doing nothing) *lalafu*; an idle person *raggo*, fem. *ragguwa*, pl. *raggaye*, *raggaje*, *raggage*, *ragguna*; *ɗan karma*, *madudu* (S.), *bakurogi*; one who is i. *mai-lalachi*, *malalachi*, *mai-kasala*, *bahili**; to be i. *yin huji*.

2. (in vain, unprofitable) *banza*, *babu anfani*.

idleness, n. *rāgaita*, pl. *rāgaitu*, *ragganchi*, *raggonchi*, *karma*, *lalachi*, *lalafanchi*, *sausanchi*, *sosochi*, the last also of unwillingness to work; to fight shy of work *rāfashe aiki*, *ragaiche*, *yin huji*.

idler, n., see **idle**.

idly, one who saunters about i., n. *mai-ragaita*.

idol, n. *tsāfi*, pl. *tsāfuna* and *tsafaffuka*, *gumki*, *gwumki*, pl. *gwumakai*.

idolater, n. *matsafi*, pl. *mat-safa*.

idolatry, n. *shirku*, *kafirchi*.

if, conj. *idan*, *in*, *kādan* (S.), *kan*, *izan*, *da*, e.g. if I had known, I would not have done it *da na sani da ban yi shi ba*; *kan* (before *b*, *kam*), *kur**, *kul**.

ignoble, adj. *banza*, *na banza*.

ignorance, n. (i.e. religious ignorance) *jahilchi*.

ignorant, adj. (relig.) *jahili*.

To be *i*. in a general sense must be expressed by means of the verbs *sani*, *ji* or (in the case of an art or science) *saba* with negatives.

ignorantly, *da jahilchi*.

iguana, n. *tsari*, *tsare*, *guza*.

ill, n. (misfortune, loss) *ḥarna*, *hasāra*, *asāra*, *tasari*.

ill, adj. 1. (bad) *mugu*, fem. *mugunya*, pl. *miyāgu*, *banza*.

2. (sick) *da chiwo*; to be *i*. *yin chiwo*, *jin chiwo*; he is *i*. *shina da chiwo*; to become *i*. *chiutu*, *chutu*.

illegitimate, child, n. *shege*, *dan shege*, *dan farka*.

illiberal, adj. (stingy) *da taurin zuchiya*; he is *i*. *hannunsa ya bushe* or *hannunsa busashshe ne* lit. his hand is dry.

illiberality, n. *taurin zuchiya*, *kalmashen zuchiya*.

illicit, adj. *haram*.

illness, n. *chiwo*, *chiwuta*.

illuminate, tr. v. 1. gen. *haskaka*.

2. to *i*. a manuscript *zayana*.

image, n. 1. (likeness, picture) *kāma*, pl. *kāmānu*, *kāmānu*.

2. (a graven image or idol) *gumki*, *gwamki*, pl. *gumakai*.

imagination, *wasuwasi**; she imagined within herself *ta yi wasuwasi a zuchiya tata*.

imagine, v. *yin tamaha*, *zato*, *yin zache*; see **suppose**.

imbibe, tr. v. (to drink in or absorb) *sha*.

imitate, tr. v. to *i*. another's pronunciation or actions *kokkoya*, *rikida*, e.g. I imitate him *ina kokkoyonsa*.

imitation, *kokkoyo*.

immediately, adv. *ko yanzu*, *nan da nan*.

immerse, tr. v. *tsoma*, *nuche*, *nutse*, *niche*, *dulmiya*, *yin dunane*.

immigrant, *shigege*.

immorality, (between women) *mādigo*.

impasse, (a place from which there is no outlet) *kūrewa*.

impatience, *garaje*.

impatient, adj. *maras-hankuri*.

impede, tr. v. *hana*.

impediment, n. 1. hindrance *abin hana*.

2. impediment in speech *ininar halshe*.

impertinence, *tsiwa, janjan-chi, giggiwa* (K.), *taurin ido*.

impertinent, adj. *mai-tsiwa, matsiwachi*.

importance, *manyanchi, manyanchi*.

important, adj. *babba*, pl. *manya* or *maya*; an i. person, n. *datijo, kunkumi**.

impossible, it is, impers. v. *ba shi yuuwa, ya gagara, ya faskare, ya gaza, ya kasa*; an i. task *tarki** (S.).

improper, adj. *ba daidai*

improve, tr. v. *gyarta*.

improve, in health, intr. v. *warware, yin rangwame, jin dama*; see **health**.

improvement, e.g. in health *dama*.

impudent, adj., see **impertinent**.

impurity, of water *zartse*.

in, prep. *chikin* or *daga chikin*, *a, gun*, e.g. in the basket *chikin sanfo*; in this place *a wurin nan*.

in order that, conj. phr. *a bisa, domin, don*, e.g. practise diligently in order that you may shoot well *ku yi anniya har da za ka iya halbin bindiga da kyau*, in order that he might hear *domin* or *don shi ji*.

inability, n. *gajewa*.

inasmuch, i. as *da shi ke* or *da ya ke*.

incantation, *tsubbu, dabo*.

incense, n. *turare, kamshi**.

incessant, *madawami*, fem. *madawamiya*.

incline, a steep, n. *gangare* or *gangara*, pl. *gangaru*.

incline, tr. v., to i. the head *tsugunna*; to i. the ear *kar-kata kunne*.

incomplete, to be *yin kwabro*.

incompletely, to do a thing i. *saya*.

incompleteness, *kwabro, kwauro*.

incorrigibility, *shakiyanchi*.

incorrigible, *shakiya*.

increase, n. *daduwa, auki, abki, kari, karuwa*.

increase, v. 1. tr. *kara*; *dada, dadi, yin auki* (or *abki*), *dora, safa, sufa, riba, shirga*.

2. intr. *dada, yin daduwa, yado, yadu, karu, gawurta, gawusta, taska, zarche**.

incredulity, an interj. expressing i. *aya! haba! hubba!*

incurable, e.g. an i. disease *chiwon wofi*; the fool is i. *mahaukachi ba shi warkewa*.

indebted to, intr. v., e.g. I am indebted to you *ina da bashinka*.

indecenty, n. *kazamta, shakiyanchi*.

indecent, adj. *kazāmi*, pl. *kazāmai*, *maras-kumya*, *babu kumya*, *shākiyi*.

indecision, *zara*.

indecorous, adj. *ba daidai*.

indeed, 1. adv. (in truth, in fact) *hakika*, *babu shakka* or *babu shak*, *babu wawa*, *da gaskiya*, *takar* (K.).

2. as affirmative emphatic particle *ai*, *ashe*, *aiwa* or *ewa*, *anche*, *mādala*, *dai* or *de*, the last is enclitic following the word which it is desired to emphasise.

3. interj. of doubt or surprise *to!* *ashe!* *anche!* *haba!* Thus, in question and answer, indeed? indeed! *ashe?* *ashe!* *da gaskiya?* *da gaskiya!*

indemnification, *ramko*.

indemnify, to *ramka*.

independence, *zāman kansa*.

india-rubber, n., see **rubber**.

indicate, v. *nuna*, *nuni*, *gaya*.

indifference, n. (carelessness) *lalachi*.

indigence, n. *talauchi*.

indigenous, *kado*, pl. *haḅe*.

indigent, adj. *talaka*, *talakka* (S.), pl. *talakawa*, *talakkarwa*; an i. person *mai-talaka*.

indigo, n. *bāba*, *shuni*, *talaki**; spec. the second annual crop of i. *kusususu*; an indigo dye-pit *marina*,

pl. *marinai*; old used-up i. *dagwalo*, *dagalo*.

indistinct, to become, intr. v. *dushi*.

indistinctness, n. *dushewa*.

industrious, n. *maaikachi*.

infant, n. (up to one year old) *jinjiri*, pl. *jirajirai*, *jarīri*, *jarīli*.

infantry, coll. n. *kirma*; infantry leader *sarikin kirma*.

infidel, n. *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* and *kafirawa*.

infidelity, n. (in a religious sense) *kafirchi*.

infirm, adj. *kumāma*, see **weak**.

infirmity, n. *kumamanchi*.

inflict, tr. v., to i. blows *buga*, *bubbuga*; see **beat**; to i. punishment *pallashe*, *fallashe*.

influence, n. (authority, power) *hukumchi*.

inform, v. (to bring intelligence, to apprise) *labarta*, *ba labāri*, *sanān da*, *sanās da*, *sanār da*, *sanashe*; to i. against *sare*, *sara* or *zara**; see **accuse**.

information, n. (news, account) *labāri*.

informer, n. *mai-sara*, pl. *masu-sara*.

ingrate, n. *butulu*, *mai-butulchi*, pl. *masu-butulchi*.

ingratitude, n. *butulchi*.

inhabitant, n. *mai-zamna*, pl. form *mazowa*.

inherit, v. *gāda*, *gāde*, *gādo*, *gāji*, *gāje*.

inheritance, n. *gādo*.

inheriting, *gadowa*.

inheritor, *magaji*, pl. *magada*.

iniquity, n. *mugunta*, *ḡeta*; see **evil**.

injure, tr. v. (to damage) *bāta*, *bāchi*, *ḡarnatadda*.

ink, n. *taddawa*, *adawa*, *tawada* (K.); a tree from the fruit of which i. is made *fara-ḡaya*; a gum which is put in i. *ḡāro*; a powder used in making i. *ḡawiya*, *kunkuniya**.

ink-blot, n. *dangole*.

inn, n. (i.e. a khan or halting place for the night) *mashidi*.

innkeeper, n. *mai-mashidi*.

innocent, adj. *babu laifi*, *bara*; an i. person *maras-laifi*; to be declared i. *kubuta*.

innuendo, *karin-magāna*.

innumerable, adj. expr. by phr. *fi ḡidayawa*, e.g. he has innumerable books *shina da litatafi sun fi ḡidayawa*.

inquire, v. *tambaya*, *yin tambaya*, *yin binchike*.

inquiry, n. *tambaya*, *sha-loga* (K.), *binchike*, *bahasi*, *bahatsi**.

insane, adj., see **mad**.

insanity, *taḡuwa*.

insect, n., spec. minute i. found in kola-nuts *sankara*; a night-flying i. which has a bad smell *buzuzu*; a boring i. *ḡunḡa*, *ḡumḡa*; see **beetle**.

inside, n. *chiki*; i. the house *chikin ḡida*; its inside or inside it may both be expressed by *chikinsa*; see **in**.

insight, n. (clear perception) *lura*.

insipid, adj. *lāmi*, *da lāmi*, *babu zaki*.

insolence, *gigiwa* (K.), *jan-janchi*, *tsiwa*.

insolent, adj. *mai-tsiwa*, *da tsiwa*, *matsiwachi*.

inspire, v. (to breathe in) *tofo*.

instance, n. *nūni*; see **example**.

instantly, adv. *nan da nan*, *koyanzu*.

instead of, prep. *ḡurbin*, *wurin*, *bigeri*, *madadin*, e.g. instead of it *ḡurbinsa*, *ḡunsa**, *wurinsa*, *bigerensa*.

instigate, to *chuna*.

instruct, v. 1. (teach) *koya*, e.g. instruct me in reading *ka koya ma ni karatu*; *ḡaḡade*, *ḡaḡadi*.

2. (of religious instruction especially that combining reproof and threatening) *fora*, *fori*, *fore*, *yin foro*.

instruction, n. *foro*, *wa'azi**, *wa'azu**, *alāma* or *halāma*, pl. *alamomi*, *almajirchi*; all these words refer to religious teaching, i. in a general sense must be expr. by verbs etc., e.g. a man of no i. *wanda bai san komi ba*; he received much i. from them in literature *suka koya masa karatu dayarwa*; self-i. *haye**.

instrument, n. 1. (implement) *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*, *makami*.

2. (musical i.) *kidi* or *kida*, any kind of wind i. *busa*, pl. *bushé-bushé*; spec. a kind of stringed i. *machirkiya*, *matirkiya*; a wind i. *pampami*, *famfami*; wind i., flute *sarewa*; wind i. resembling bagpipes *algaita* or *algaitu*; a player on a musical i. *makidi*; see **music**.

insubordination, *tayasawa*, *kin ji*, *kangara*.

insufficient, to be *yin kwabro*.

integrity, n. (honesty) *gaskiya*.

intelligence, n. 1. (mental power), *tsimi*, *hasikanchi*, *wayo*, *fasaha**; see **understanding**.

2. (news) *labāri*, e.g. let me give you i. of the war *im ba ka labārin yaƙi*.

intelligent, adj. *gwani*, *mai-tsimi*, *da tsimi*, *hasiki*.

intend, v. for the idiomatic use of *da* to express unfulfilled intention see Gr. pp. 34, 46, e.g. I intended to go *da za ni tafiya*, had I known I would not have thrown her down on purpose *da na sani da ba na jefa ta da gangan ba*.

intention, n. (purpose) *kūli*, *ganganchi*; (fixed application) *anniya*, *alāma*; see prec.

intentionally, adv. *da gangan*.

intercede, to i. for *cheta*, *chetas*.

interceder, *mai-chechi*.

interceding, *fafa*.

intercession, *machechiya*.

interest, on money *ruwa*, *fifi-ko*, *riƙa*.

interfere, v. *shiga shāgali*, *yin karambani*.

interference, n. *gadanniya*, *janjanchi*, *shishigi**; i. with what does not concern one *karambani*, *kazallaha*, *izgili*, *isgili*.

interior, n. (the inside of anything) *chiki*.

interloper, *shigege*.

intermarry, to *garwaye*.

intermingle, tr. v. *hautsina*; intr. v. *saje* (K.), *sade* (S.).

intermingling, *surki*, see **mixing**.

interpret, v. 1. (to translate) *juya da magana* or *juya*

magana, *yin fasara*, *fasarta*, *mayas da*; he interprets *ya rabbi fasalinsa*.

2. (to explain) *waye*.

interpretation, n. (both translation and explanation) *fasara*, *fasali**, *wayewa*.

interpreter, n. *alfākani*, *tafurta*, *mayayi**.

interrogative. This sense is expr. by a change in the intonation, by *ko* placed at the beginning or end or at both beginning and end of a clause, or by adding the phr. *ko ba haka ba?* also by *ba* when answer is in affirmative, *ni ba?* It is I, is it not?

interrupt, to i. *yin shishige*, *tura magana*; a nickname for one who interrupts a conversation *kazallātuwa*.

interruption, n. *fāshi*.

intersection, *gichi*, *gichiya*.

intertwine, to *kalgame*, *kargame*.

intervals, at i. *wuche-wuche*.

intestine, n. spec. the large i. *tumburkuma*, *tuburkuma*, *karera*, *mazawuri*; the intestines coll. *hanji*.

into, prep. *chikin* or *dāga chikin*, e.g. he fell i. the water *ya fadi chikin ruwa*; he was turned or changed i. a sheep *ya sawya tumkiya*.

intoxicant, n., an i. drink *barasa*, this word is also applied specially to gin; an intoxicating drink which is made from the palm tree (*tukurūwa*) *bammi*, *bam*; an intoxicating drink made from guinea-corn *giya*; an i. drink made with honey, salt and water *buza*; a place of intoxicating drinks *mashaya*.

intoxicated, *maye*.

intoxication, n. *maita*.

introduction, a letter of, n. *bishara*.

invalid, *machuchi*, *majiyachi*, *majinyachi*.

invasion, *farmaki*, *falmaki*, *firmaki*.

invent, to *ḡaga*.

invention, *ḡage* (S.).

investigation, judicial *bahasi*, *binchike*.

invisibility, (the power to vanish at will) *baduhu*, *badufu*.

invocation, n., i.e. to God *zikiri*, *safirchi*, *safirchi*; we make i. *muna zikri*.

invoke, to *sāba*, *sābi*.

invulnerable, *dan tauri*.

iron, n. *karife*, *karfe*, pl. *karafa*, *karfaifai*, *karfuna*; spec. i. wrought into cups, bright i. *zubi*; to burn with hot i. *lalas*; an i. for brand-

ing *zarto*; an i. pot *karife*, *karipe*.

iron, adj. *na karife*, fem. *ta karife*, with plurals *na karife*, e.g. i. bars *sanduna na karife*.

iron ore, n. *tāma*, *matamachi*; i. dross *kashin tāma*.

irons, leg-, n. *gigar*, *malwa*.

irony, *gātse*.

irregular, of i. lengths *saḅe*.

irrigate, to *shayas da*.

irrigated, garden, n. *lambu*.

irritable, adj. *da zafin rai*.

irritated, particip. adj. *husanche**.

irritation, *takaichi*, see **anger**.

is, subst. v. 1. (simple copula) with masc. subject *ne*, with fem. *che*, with either *ke*.

2. (implying real existence = there is) *akwai*; *ina*, *na*, fem. *ta*, thus, there is *ina da shi*, there are many *ina da su dayawa*; *ke* with *nan*, e.g. there is a book which I know *wani litafi ke nan da na sani*; see **be**.

island, n. *gungu**, pl. *gunguna**, *lungu**, *chibiri**, *tsibiri**.

isolate, tr. v. *yin kaḍaita*.

it, pers. pron. neut. *ya*, fem. *ta*; separate and emphatic forms *shi*, fem. *ita*; its *-nshi*, *-nsa*, fem. *-rsa*; *nasa* or *nai*, fem. *tasa*, *tas* or *tai*.

itch, n. *kaikai*, *kaikayi*, *kaswa*,

kazuwa, *susa*, *zuza*, *kurji*; one who has the i. *mai-kurji*.

itch, to *yin susa* or *yin zuza*.

itching, n., spec. i. sore on toes or fingers *kurkushe*, *kusakushi*, *kushekusheya*; a prickly plant that causes i. *karara*.

ivory, n. *hakorin giwa* or *haurin giwa*; a piece of i. *haurin giwa*, *kākara**.

jackal, n. *dila*, pl. *diloli*, *mala-min dāwa*, *kārem b̄uki*, *karrem b̄iki*, *ḍan ba'ura*, *ballo*; the cry of the j. *kyakkyewa*, *kekewa*.

jail, n. *kurkuku*, see **prison**.

jailer, *mariko*.

jam, tr. v. (to press) *mache*, *machi* or *matse*; (to stick fast) *tōkāra**.

jar, small, n. *sintali*, *shintali*, *tulu**.

jaw, n. *kumatu*, *kumche* (S.); fig. jaws *baki*.

jaw-bone, *mummuke*, pl. *mu-kamukai*.

jealous, to be *kisanta*.

jealousy, n. *kishi* or *kishiya*, pl. *kishiyoyi*, *hāsada*, *shamata*.

jeer at, v. *ba'a* or *yin ba'a*, *yin gōri*, *rena*, *kwalla**; *ba dariya*, e.g. they jeered at us *suka ba mu dariya*.

jelly-fish, n. *kawara*.

Jerusalem, pr. n. *birnin kūdus*.
jester, n. (buffoon) *babambaḍe*,
baḍe, *maba'achi*; (foolish
 trifler) *wawa*.

jesting, n. *bananchi*, *annashu-
 wa*.

Jesus, *Isa*, *Yasu'u*, the latter
 form represents the original
 Arabic name.

jet-black, adj. *baḳi kirin*.

Jew, gent. n. *ba-Yahude*, pl.
Yahudawa.

jewel, n. *yakutu**; *dutsi** (stone)
 often denotes a precious stone.

jog, e.g. of a donkey *sassaka*,
 see **trot**.

join, tr. v. *gāma*, *gwarmi**,
riḳa, *liḳa*; to j. heads to-
 gether (in consultation or
 forming a plan) *gama kai*;
 intr. (to fall in with anyone
 by overtaking or meeting
 him) *gamu* or *gamo* constr.
 with prep. *da*; *tarda*, *tarad
 da* and *taras da*, e.g. we
 joined him *mun gamu da shi*
 or *mun taras da shi*; to j.
 issue *ḳulla**; to be joined
 together *ḳullu*.

joiner, n. (carpenter) *masas-
 saḳi*, pl. *masassaḳa*.

joint, n. *ido**, pl. *idanu**, *idan-
 danu**, *idanuwa*; ankle j.
idon sawu, *idon ḳafa*; wrist j.
idon hannu (also = knuckle);
*godawa**; j. of scissors *kwarmi*,

pl. *kwarmu*, *gwarmi*; to be
 out of j. *gochi* and *goche*; j.
 of the body *gāba*, pl. *gaḳoḳi*;
 to suffer from a disease in
 the j. *targade*.

jostle, tr. v. *tunkuḍa*, *ture*.

journey, n. *tafiya*, pl. *tafiyya*;
 provisions for a j. *guzuri*; to
 make provision for a j. *yin
 guzuri*.

journeying, n. *tafiyawa*.

joy, n. (the inward feeling)
farin chiki; (coupled with
 the outward expression)
murna, *bushasha*, *bashasha*,
fara'a; to experience j. (to
 rejoice) *yin fara'a*, *yin* or
jin murna; a cause for
 j. *abin murna*; j. or a cry
 of j. *guḍa*; to cause j. *bada
 murna*.

judge, n. *alkāli*, pl. *alkālai*,
alkallai (S.); the office of a
 j. *alḳalanchi*.

judge, v. 1. gen. (to look into,
 discern) *yin bibiya*; in a
 weaker sense, to imagine,
 or think *tammaha* or *yin
 tammaha*.

2. (of a judge) *yin shari'a*,
kāda, *yin alḳalanchi*.

judgment, n. 1. gen. *bibiya*.

2. (of law and justice)
shari'a, *hakumchi* or *hukum-
 chi*, *fukumchi**, *alhaki*, *hisabi*;
 the j. day *ranan* (or *ran*)

gobe (lit. the day of tomorrow), *gobe*; j. seat *karaga*.

jug, n. *tulu**, *randa**; a brass j. with narrow neck *shintali*, *shantali*; see *jar*.

juggling, *dābo*.

juicy, *mai-mai*.

juju house, (in a pagan village) *gidan dodo*.

jube-tree, *magariya*.

jump, n., of a fish or frog, *bulma*, *burma*; he gave a j. *ya yi wuf*.

jump, intr. v. *tuma*; *dīra*, *dīri*, *dīro*, *dara*, *daro*; *tsalle*, *tsūli*, *tsallache*; to j. backwards and forwards *wura*; to j. down *gangara*, *tsirga*, *tsirgo*; to j. over *haura*.

jumping, n. *dire*, *tsalle*, *tuma*, *tumi*.

just, adj. *da gaskiya*, *daidai*; of things (= lawful) *halal*; a j. man *mutumen gaske* (*gaskiya*) or *mutum na gaskiya*.

just, adv., as in expression j. (now) *ko* (*yanzu*).

justice, n. 1. (administration of the law) *shari'a*.

2. (moral right) *ādilchi*.

justify, tr. v. 1. (to prove to be in the right, to vindicate as true) *gaskanta*.

2. (of a judge etc. to declare in the right, to ascribe right to) *bada gaskiya*,

he was justified *am ba shi gaskiya*.

jute, *malafiya*, *lalu*, *turgunuwa*; bastard j. *rama*.

Kano, *Kano* the chief commercial town of the W. Sudan.

keen, adj. 1. (sharp-edged) *da kaifi*.

2. (of acute intelligence) *mai-lura*, *mai-wayo*.

keep, n. (to retain, hold) *rike*, *rika* or *riki*; (to tend, e.g. sheep or cattle) *kiwo*; to k. carefully *kiyaye*; to k. a promise *chika magana*, *kama magana*; to k. on doing anything *rika*.

kerchief, n. *maharma*; a woman's k. *kallabi*, *alfuta*.

kernel, n. *kwāra*, *kwaya*.

kettle, n. *shintali*, *sintali* or *shantali*, pl. *shintalai*; an earthen k. *karife** or *karipe**.

key, n. *makubli*, *makulli*, *ma-būdi*, *dan makubli*.

kick, n. *shuri*.

kick, tr. v. *shura*, *shure* or *jure**, *bangaje*, *habri* or *harbi* used of horses; to k. forwards *mangara*; to k. away *hanbare*, *hambare*.

kicking, n., e.g. of a donkey *butsāri*.

kid, n. *dan akwiya*, pl. *yan* (or *yayan*) *akwiya*.

kidney, n. *gidibi* (S.), *kidibi*, pl. *gidibai*, *kidiba*; *ƙoda*, *ƙwoda*.

kill, v. *kāshe*, *kāsa*, *kīsa*, with a shortened form *kas*, *kibe*, *fauchi**; he was killed outright *aka yi masa take*.

killing, adj. (murderous) *kā-sau*, *kāso*.

kilt, cf. a man with a k. of grass *mai-bunu a gindi*.

kind, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi**.

kindle, tr. and intr. *toyī*, *towī*, *toya*, *toye*, *tuya*, *tuna*; to re-kindle or blow up a fire which is nearly out *fura*, intr. *furu*, e.g. they re-kindled the fire *suka fura wuta*, the fire was re-kindled *wuta ta furu*; *ɗosana*, *hasa*, *haza*, tr. he kindled the fire *ya hasa wuta*.

kindness, n. (goodness of heart) *nagarta*; (favour, benevolence) *alhēri*, *chiki ɗaya*, *gafara* and *gafarta*, *nīma*, *nema*, *hasali* (S.); an act of k. *kyauta*, *aikin gafara*, *jinkai*; to do an act of k. *yin alhēri*, *yin kyau*, e.g. they did me an act of k. *sun yi ma ni kyau*.

kindred, n. *kabila**, *dangi*, *danga* or *dagi**, pl. *dangogi*.

king, n. *sarki* or *sariki*, pl.

sarakuna or *sarakai*, *sarāki*, *sultan**; a king's son *yarima*, *gimba*, pl. *gimbayi*; daughter of a k. *gimbiya*; epithet applied to a k. *dan furdi*; a reigning k. *sariki mai-chi*; a deposed k. *fitachen sariki*.

kingdom, n. *sarauta*, *sarota*, *daula*; to gain possession of a k. *chin sarauta*; see **accede**.

kingfisher, pied k. *chinoya*, *chinuya*; African belted k. *machi tsundum*; blue k. *tsitar* or *tsintar*.

kiss, n. *sumba*.

kiss, tr. v. *tsotsa*, *sumbunta*, *sumbunche*; to k. hands to *yin sumba*.

kissing, *tsotso*.

kitchen, n. *madafi*, pl. *mada-fai*, *wurin ɗāfurwa*.

kite, n. (the bird) *shafu*, *shahu*, *kōlo*, *shirwa*.

knead, to k. together, tr. v. *garwaya*.

knee, n. *gwiwa*, pl. *gwiwaye*, *gwiwoyi*, *gwiwu*, *guwawu*; pushing with the k. *gūla*.

kneel, intr. v. *durƙūsa*; kneeling *dulkūshi*, *durƙūshi*; to k. down or prostrate oneself *gurfana* (S.).

knickerbockers, *dan wando*.

knife, n. *wuƙa*, pl. *wuƙaƙe*, *wuƙaikai* (usually with two

edges); *barho* (with one edge); *mayanki*; to sharpen or whet a k. *gyarta* (or *wasā*) *wuka*, *yuka* (Zanf.); spec. a small k. *almōsa*; a k. used by women *kududuri*; a kind of k. with handle to fit wrist and blade projecting backwards *kan-gar* or *kanga*; a k. carried up the sleeve, attached by a leathern ring *wuḡar hannu*; a scoop-shaped k. *mafitsara*; a sort of missile k. *gāriyo*, q.v.; handle of a k. *ḡota*, *ḡota* (K.); see *kijigi*.

knit, v. *sharāḡa**.

knock, v. gen. *buga*; to k. against, intr. *gochi*, *goche*, *gwabche*, *kābra*, *kafra*, tr. as the hand against a wall *gwabra*, *gwabre*, *gwabure*, *gwabri*, *gumbari*; to k., e.g. with a stick *zungura*; to k. or kick *bangaje*; to k. at a door *buga ḡofa*, *ḡwanḡwasa*; to k. down *tankade*, *bige* (K.), *kirme* (K.), *kilme* (S.).

knit, n. *kulli*, pl. *kullai*, *kulloli*; a k. made in thread to prevent the strands from unravelling *hanchi*; to tie in a k. *kumbuche*; to get into a k. *sarḡe*.

know, v. *sāni*, *shīna*, *rabe da*; to k. clearly *shaidani*, *fahim-ta**; to k. and understand well *sansanche*; to k.

certainly *tabbache*, *tabbata*, e.g. do you k. for certain? *ka tabbata?* had you known? *da kun sani?* it cannot be known *ba ta sanuwa*.

knowledge, n. *azanchi*, *lura*, *shini*, *shīna*, *sāni*.

known, to make, v. *ambachi*, *gaya*, *chashe*.

knuckle, n. *gwiwar yatsa*, *idon hannu*.

kola-nut, n. *goro*, pl. *gwarra*; *gamagari*; spec. a variety of k.-n. from Gwanja *ataras*, from Yoruba *ibi*; a light-coloured k.-n. *ganjigaga*; see also *labuje*, *gamagari*, *ibi*, *kursan-goro*, *gazari*, *sandahu*, *hannun ruwa*; a bad k.-n. *gobro**; a large k.-n. *goriya*; packing placed round k.-nuts *fufu*, *huhu*; an insect found in the k.-n. *sankara*; a basket of palm fronds in which k.-nuts are packed *makara*, *mankara*; a late crop of k.-nuts *janḡarago*; large selected k.-nuts *marsa*; large and small k.-nuts mixed *saranwaga*; little k.-nuts *minu*; an early crop of k.-nuts *nata*.

koran, n. *ḡuran*, *alḡorani*, *al-korani*; the all-night reading of the k. *tḡkuri*; saying the k. by rote *tulawa**.

labour, n. *aiki*, pl. *ayuyuka*, *ayuka*, *aikoki* or *aikuna*; farm l. *aikin gona*; l. pains *wahalar haifuwa*, *naƙudar haifuwa*.

labour, v. *yin aiki*; *aiki*.

labourer, n. *maaiiki*, fem. *maiikiya*, pl. *masu-aiki*, *maiiki*, *maiikiya*, *maiikiya*; *kwadigo*, *dan kwadigo*.

lack, n. *rashi*.

lack, tr. v. *taɓe*, *tafe*, *rasa*, *kāsa*, *tozarta**; they l. money *suna da rashin kurɗi*, see seq.

lacking, adj. *mai-rashi*, by prefixing *mara*, e.g. l. sense *mara-hankali*.

lad, n. *yaro*, pl. *yara*.

ladder, n. *mahayi**, *ƙaran-gama*, *kuranga* (K.), *kwaran-ga* (S.), *uwaranga* (S.), *tsani*, *matakara*, *matakala*.

laden, participial adj. *labche* or *labtache*.

Lagos, the town of *Iko*.

lair, *makwanchi*.

lake, n. *kogi**, pl. *koguna*, *kogina* or *kogai*, *ƙorama**.

lamb, n. *ɗan tumkiya*, pl. *yan tumkiya*; the paschal l. *ragon lahiya*.

lame, adj. *gurgu*, fem. *gurguwa*, pl. *gurāgu*, *gurmū* (S.), *mai-gwami*, pl. *masu-gwami*, *amurgude*, *makasari*, fem. *makasariya*.

lame, to be, intr. v. *yin gurgunta*, *ɗangyasa*, *ɗungashi*, *targade**; he goes l. *yana takwashi* or *tarkoshi*; to make l. *gugurta*.

lameness, n. *gurgunchi*, *gurgunta*, *gurmunta*, *gwami*, *takwashi*, *tarkoshi*, *dangyashi*, *ɗungashi*, *ɗingishi*, *ƙage**.

lament, v. *yin kuka*, see seq.

lamentation, n. *kuka*, pl. *koke-koke*; l. at a funeral *makōki*; to make l. *takaba*; see **cry**.

lamp, n. *fitila*, pl. *fitilu*, *fitilai* or *fitiloli*; l. oil *man fitila*; he lit the l. *ya kunna fitila*; we are working by l. light *muna yin aikin fitila*; l. wick *lagwani*.

lance, n. *mashi*, pl. *masusuka* or *masu*.

land, n. (phys.) *ƙāsa*, pl. *ƙāsa-she*, *ƙasaisai*; (country) *ƙāsa* and *gari*, pl. *garuruwa*, *garuruka* or *garigari*.

landing place, n. *mafichi*.

landlord, *hākimī**.

landslip, *matusge**.

language, n. 1. (speech) *magana*.

2. (tongue of particular nation) *yare*, *magana*; to speak the Hausa l. *yin magana Hausa*; *halshe*, *harshe* pl. *halshina* or *halassa hausa**, pl. *harata**; they

have no l. but Hausa *ba su da yare sai Hausa*.

3. (literary expression) *karatu*.

lapwing, see **plover**.

large, adj. *babba*, pl. *manya*, *girma*; a l. book *babban litafi* or *litafi babba*; very l. *ban-kami*.

large, to become, intr. v. *girma* and *yin girma*.

larynx, *raƙumin wuya*.

lasciviousness, *kwartonchi*.

lasso, to *zarge*.

last, the, n. (final state or case) *maƙarshe*, *maƙari*, *maƙare*, *maƙara*; *ƙarshe* used adverbially = at the last, at last.

last, adj. *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*; phr. the l. day *ranan* (or *ran*) *gobe*, *gobe*; the l. sleep (death) *maƙarin barchi*; l. night *jiya da dare*; l. month *watan jiya*; l. year *bara*; at l. adv. *yauyau*, *ƙarshe*.

last, to, intr. v. *dāda*, *dādi*, see **continue**.

lasting, n. (state of continuance) *dādawa*.

lasting, adj. *matabbata**, *mada-wami*; long l. *madawami*, fem. *madawamiya*.

latchet, *maɓalli*.

late evening, n. of time *magarub* or *magariba*, *mangariba*; later evening *lisha*.

late, to be, v. *jinkirta*, *nawa*, *yin nawa*, *yin yauchi*, e.g. he was l. in arriving *ya yi yauchin zakuwa*; to be l. in doing anything *maƙāra*; one who is l. *mai-maƙāra*.

lateness, n. *maƙāra*, *nawa*; (delay) *yauchi*.

laths, thin wooden, coll. *ka-tamba**, *kwangi*.

latrine, *makewayi*, *shadda*.

laud, tr. v. *yin kirari*, *yin yabo* also with pres. form *na*, e.g. I laud thee *ina yabonka*.

laudation, n. *kirari*, *yabo*; see **praise**.

laugh, intr. v. *yin dariya*; to cause to l. *ba* (or *bada*) *dariya*, e.g. *ya ba ni dariya* he made me l.; to l. at *zunda*, *yin zunda*, *yin zumda* (S.), *dāra*, e.g. they laughed at me *sun darani*; he laughed at him *yai gātse ga shi*; to l. heartily *ƙeta da dariya*.

laughter, n. *dariya*.

law, n. gen. *shari'a*, *haddi**, *umarni*; to decide in l. *raba shari'a*; (religious ordinance) *sunna*, *kaida*; a prohibitory l. *doka**.

lawful, adj. *halal*, *halas*; to be l. *halalta*, *halatta*, *halasta*.

lay, tr. v. *sa*; of a bird, to l. eggs *aje* (*jefa*, *saka* or *yi*) *ƙwai*; to l. aside *sa*; to l.

down *kwantad da* ; to l. hold of or on *kama* ; to l. down, e.g. a load *sabkad da*.

laziness, n. *raggonchi, ragaita, kiwuya, kuya, lalafanchi*.

lazy, adj. *lalafa*, (idle) *raggo, kumāma, mai-raggo, mai-ragaita, mai-son jiki, maga-jiji, shallali*.

lead, v. *bida, bishe*.

lead, n. (the metal) *dalma, darma* ; l. for making bullets *harsasshe*.

leader, n. *babba, tunari**, *koranga* (K.), also *uba*, pl. *ubanne* and *ubanai*, e.g. their l. *babbansu* ; l. of a fight *uban yaki* ; spec. l. of infantry *sarikin karma* ; l. of caravan (chief) *jaji* ; (the headman who precedes it) *jāgāba* or *shugāba* ; (the man who walks behind it) *madugu*, pl. *madugawa* ; l. in prayer *liman, limami*, pl. *limammai*.

leaf, n. (of tree) *tofo, toho**, pl. *tofuna, waraka**, *ganye, ganya*, pl. *ganyaye, danyen itache* ; l. of a book *warka, waraka* ; spec. a l. used for thatching *fitta*.

league, n. (alliance) *gāya*.

leak, n. *darshi, kāfa, yoyo* ; to stop a l. *toshe*.

leak, intr. v. *darsa, tarāra, tarāro, yin darshi, yin kāfa,*

tsiyaya, yoya, yin yoyo, zuba, zubo.

lean, adj. *ramamme*, fem. *ramammiya*, pl. *ramammu, guzuma, lange-lange*.

lean, to be or become, v. *rame, yin rama*.

lean, intr. v., l. against *jingina, jingine, dangana**, *rābo*, e.g. the fence against which he was leaning *dangan da ya rābo da shi* ; to l. upon *dangana, dōgara*, the last also fig. to l. upon in trust or confidence, e.g. we l. on thee *mun dogare ka*.

leanness, n. *rama, ramuwa, ramanchi* (K.), *ramantaka* (S.), *alala*.

leap, intr. v. *tuma, dira, diro, diri, yin zariya*.

leaping, n. *zariya*.

learn, v. *koya, yin koyo, sanas* ; to l. by heart *samu harda*.

learned, adj. *mai-karatu* ; a l. man *māsani*, pl. *māsana* ; *malami*, pl. *mallamai* ; a l. woman *malama**.

learner, a *bami, makoyi, sabon shīga*.

learning, n. *koyo*.

leather, n. (after it has been tanned) *kirgi* ; (before it has been tanned) *fata* ; spec. strips of l. coll. *gunda* ; strips of black l. coll. *kwaro* ; a

scraper used in dressing l. *kartaje*.

leather-dresser, n. *majemi*, pl. *majema*; *baduku*, pl. *dukawa*, *badukai*.

leathern, case for book, n. *gafaka*, *gafakka* (S.).

leave, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*, *raida* (S.); to l. a thing and come back *baro*; to leave a path or track *sau* (or *sake*) *hanya*; to l. behind *bari* or *bar*, *raga*; to l. off *daina*, *dena*.

leaven, n. *yami*, *ḡullu*; spec. l. made from the acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamiya*.

leaves, coll. *künnen itache*, *ganyen itache*, *sansāmi*, *sansāmin itache*.

leech, n. *matsatsaku*, *turgüni* (S.), *tsatseku* (Zanf.), *chacheku*, *chichekko*.

left, l. (remaining, remainder, rest) *saura*, *kingi*, e.g. there is little l. *sauran kaḡan ya rage*; food l. over *sudi*.

2. (of position) the l. *hawni*, *hagu* or *hagum*; the l. hand *hannu na hawni*; l.-handed *bahago*.

left, part. *bararre*, fem. *bararra*, pl. *bararru*; what is l. ? *mi ya räge*?

leg, n. *ḡafa*, pl. *ḡafafu*, *ḡafafuwa*, *ḡafafe*, *ḡafofi*, *chinya*, pl. *chinyoyi*; l. bone *ḡwabrin*

ḡafa; calf of the l. *dambubu*, *tukatukai* (K.), *sharāḡa*; bent l. (a disease) *ḡwami*; l. bent by disease *ḡwami*, *ḡage**; with bent legs (i.e. through disease) *ḡurgu*, fem. *ḡurguwa*, pl. *ḡuragu*, this also = without legs.

legend, *tariyo**.

leg-irons, n. *malwa*, *ḡigar*.

leisure, *sukuni* (S.), see **opportunity**.

lemon, n. *lemu*, *lemo*.

lemur, a species of (Potto) *ḡeran biḡa**.

lend, v. *bada äro*, *ramta*; see **loan**.

length, n. 1. (of space and time) *tsawa*, *tsawo*, *tsayi*, *tsai*; *tsawanta*, *matsawa*, *tsatḡsawo*.

2. (long continuance), of life *yawan rai*, *tsawon rai*.

lengthen, to *tsawaita*.

leopard, n. *damisa*, pl. *damisai*, *argini**, *tsawarwara**; hunting l. (or cheetah) *rabbi*.

leper, n. *küturu*, pl. *kutare*, *mai-kuturta**, *mai-kuturchi**.

leprosy, n. *kuturchi*, *kuturta*; spec. a mutilating form of l. *machiri*; white l. *albaras*.

less, adv. l. (= minus in computing) *bus*, *gaira*, e.g. *metin goma bus* or *metin gaira goma* = 200 - 10, i.e. 190.

2. (= English negative suffix -less) *maras-* (used as prefix), e.g. shameless *maras-kumya*.

less, much l., comp. adv. *balē*, *balanta*, *balante*, *barshe*, e.g. this man was not able to walk, much less take up his load *wannan ba ya iya yin tafiya bale shi dauke kayansa*.

less, to grow or make l., see seq.

lessen, v. tr. and intr. *rāgi* or *rāge*, *tawaya*, *towi*, *tawye*; intr. *ragu*, *tawaya*, *tawwi*, *kasad da*; the waters are lessening *ruwaye suna raguwa*; see seq.

lessening, participial n. *raguwa*.

lest, conj. (for fear that, that... not) *kāda*, e.g. he took the medicine lest he should die *ya haɗiye magani kāda shi mutu*; *don kāda*.

let, tr. v. (allow) *bari*, *bar*; to l. alone *bari*, *bar*, *kyale**; to l. go *shika*; to l. down *sabka*, *sabki* or *sauka*, also (with *da*) *sabkas* or *sapkas*, *shida*, e.g. I l. down the load *na sabke kaya* or *na sabkas da kaya* or *na shida da kaya*; particip., l. down *sabbakke*; to l. go *sallame*, *sāka*, *sāke*,

sāki; to l. loose *saki*, *kunche*, *kwanche*, *banya*, *banye*; to l. out (of hire, etc.) *sufuri*, *sufurchi*, *yin sufuri* or *yin sufurchi*; the particle *in* or *im* before a following *b* is sometimes elliptically used to express l., e.g. l. me follow you *im bi ka*.

letter, n. l. (epistle) *watika*, *wasika*, *wasichi**, pl. *watiku*, *wasiku*; *takarda*, pl. *takardu*, *laya**.

2. (a sign of the alphabet) *harafi*, *harifi*, pl. *haruffa*.

lettuce, n., spec. water l. *kainuwa*.

level, adj. and adv. *sosai*, *tangam*, *tangas*; it is l. *ya yi sosai*, *ya bazu*.

level, to, e.g. a road *baji*, *baje*; to rub smooth *darje*; levelled *bazu*.

liar, n. *maḡariyachi*, fem. *maḡariyachiya*, pl. *maḡariyata*.

liberality, n. *baiwa*.

liberate, tr. v. *yanchi*, *yantas*, see **free**.

liberation, from slavery, n. *ɗiyauchi* or *ɗiyanchi*.

liberty, n. *yanchi*.

lice, coll. *kwalkwata*, *kwar-kwata*, see **louse**.

lichen, n. *toto* (S.), *tautaru* (K.).

lick, or lick up, v. *lāsa*, *lashe*, *suda*; to l. the hand *tanda*.

licking, *tandewa*; l. of fingers, etc. *tsotso*.

lie, intr. v., to l. down *kwanche*; to l. down to sleep *kwana* and *kwanta*; to l. face downwards *rubda chiki*; a place to l. down *makwanchi*; to l. in wait *yin fako*; a place to l. in wait *mafaka*; to l. with *güfa* (S.).

lie, n. *kariya, kēri*.

lie, intr. v. (to tell lies) *yanke kariya, yin kēri*; to give the l. to *kariyata*.

life, n. *rai*, pl. *rayu* or *rayūka, rayukka, rawuka*; in more general sense (= Engl. time) *zamani, yayi*, e.g. during the l. (= in the time) of the prophet *zamanin annabi*; to come or come back to l. *rayu*; coming back to l., participial n. *rayuwa*; to restore to l. *raya*; position in l. *mutumchi*; a l.-time *kwakwaro*; l.-long *matseyi*.

lift up, tr. v. *chira, chire, chiro* or *tsira, tsire, tsiro, tāda, tashe, tsaida, hauda, haushi, hausa, daukaka, dokaka*; spec. to l. up a heavy weight *sunguma*.

light, adj. (not heavy) *shakap, sakwap, säkai, sakat*.

light, adj. (full of light) *mai-haske*; l. coloured *patsi*.

light, n. *haske*, pl. *haskoki, haskaikai*; see seq.

light, tr. v. l. (to give light) *haskaka, bada haske*, e.g. the moon gives light *wata shina bada haske*.

2. (to set alight) to l. a fire *hāsa (hāza, āza), wuta, fūra* (or *hūra*) *wuta, yāda wuta, dosana, kūna, kunna*; the fire is lit *wuta ta furu*; to l. a lamp *kunna fitila*.

light upon, intr. v. *tsaya*.

lighten, tr. v. l. (to illuminate) *haskaka*, sarasara*.

2. (of lightning) *yin wal-kiya*.

lighting, (of a fire, etc.) *yādiya*.

lightning, n. *walkiya*.

like, adv. *tamka, tamkar, tamkan, tamkat, tankat, tanfari, kāma, kakakat*, kāman* or *kāmal*, e.g. this is l. that *wannan shi ne tamkat wan-čan*; *ya, yi, ta'ada**; adj. *tanfari* or *tanfari*; the following are substantival (as in Engl. one's l.) *kama*, pl. *kamannu*, e.g. his l. *kamansa, misalina*; see **likeness**; what is l. to something *mai-maki, wani*, e.g. l. him *waninsa, shige*, e.g. l. them *shigensu, kwatanchi*, e.g. l. this *kwatanchin haka, misali*, see seq.

like, adj. *mai-kāma*; it is more l. this than that *ya yi kāma da wannan ya fi wanchan*.

like, as, adv. *tamkar da or tankar da, kāma or kāmad da* and *kāman da, misali**, *awa, kamar yadda*; l. this *kwatan-chin hāka*.

like, to make, tr. v. *daidaita*; pass. it is made l. unto a *kwatan-chi*; to be l., i.e. to resemble *yin daidaiche, yin kāma da*.

like, tr. v. *so, marmari*.

liken to, tr. v. *kwatan-chi, kwatamchi* (S.), *kādara, kudira*.

likeness, n. *kāma*, pl. *kāman-nu, misali, supa**, *sifa, wani**, e.g. his l. *kamansa, supansa, waninsa* or *misalinsa*; he gave me his l. (his portrait) *ya ba ni kamansa*.

likewise, adv. *kuwa, ma**.

liking, n. *kauna, kamna* (S.).

lilac, African and Persian l. (pride of India) *kurnan nasara*.

lily, water *kwala* (K.), *bādo, kola bādo* (S.); climbing l. *baurere*; spider l. *hatsin manoma*.

limb, of body *gāba*, pl. *gaḷoḷi*.

lime, n. (the fruit) *lemu, lemo*.

limit, n. *iyaka, iyakachi, matuka*.

limping, *dangyashi, dingishi*.

line, n. (row, series) *jeri*, pl. *jerori, zāne**; in a l. a *jera* or a *jere*; spec. a l. formed for prayer *saffu*; a broad blue l. in cloth *saki*, or *swaki*; to draw up a l. of battle *ja dāga*; they are forming l. *sunu jeruwa*; it is arranged in l. *ya jeru*; a l. of writing *shatsāra, shadāra*; to arrange in l. *zura, jera, jere*; to form a l. *yin saffu*; a l. of men *bata*; to go in l. *ja bata*; see **lines**.

line, a l. of writing *shadāra, shatsara*.

lineage, n. *zuriya, usali, asali*.

linen, n. *alḡamura*.

lines, coll. *zane*; to draw l. *zana* or *zani*.

linger, intr. v. *dāde, daḍa, nauwa*; to l. about *lalata*.

lingerer, n. *mai-nauwa*; a l. at home in time of war *kazum*.

lint, made from cotton *taffa, tappa*.

lintel, n. *almanāni*.

lion, n. *zaki, zaiki**, fem. *zakanya*, pl. *zakoki, furdi**, *wan dāwa, manyan dāwa*; a male l. *toron zaki*; a young l. *ḍan zaki*; a strong l. *wan dāwa*; the adj. *gadanga* strong is specially used as an epithet of the lion.

lioness, n. *zakanya*.

lip, n. *lebo*, *lebe*, pl. *lebu*, *leḅuna*; lips *dāḅuri*, pl. *dāḅurori*; a disease of the lips *chizal*; a disease on the under lip *beli* (K.), *chande* (S.); a disk embedded in the lips of pagans *maran lebo*, *pelele**; thickness of lips *nāḅuwa*.

list, n. (written) *zumami*, *ta-karda*, pl. *takardu*, *lisafi*.

listen, v. (to hear with attention) *saurara*, *sorara* or *jurare**; (to eavesdrop) *lābe*; to l. intently with bowed head *karkata* and *karkasa* used with or without *kunne* (ear).

listener, n. *majiya*, *sauraro*.

little, adj. *ḅarami*, fem. *ḅarama*, *ḅaramiya*, pl. *ḅaramu*; *ḅanḅane*, *ḅanḅani*, fem. *ḅanḅanuwa*, pl. *ḅanḅana*, *ḅanana*; substantively (= a l., also few) *kādan*, *sama sama*, *kīma*, *tsarari*; very l. *kādan kādan*, *kīma kīma*; I ate but very l. *ban chi ba sai kādan kādan*; wait a l. while *jima kādan* or *jim kādan*; to take very l. of *tsakāra* or *tsakūra*; a l. *chim*.

littleness, *ḅanḅanta*, *ḅaramchi*.

live, intr. v. *yin rai*.

liveliness, *zaman duniya*.

liver, n. *hanta*, *anta*, *kidibi**, *gidibe**.

living, adj. *da rai*, e.g. this is not a l. child *wagga ba ḅiya mai-rai ba che*.

living One, the, adj., epithet of God *mai-haya**.

lizard, n. *ḅadangare*, fem. *ḅadangariya*, *ḅadangarwa*, pl. *ḅadangarru*; *gwada*, *sharindo*, *sharundo*; skink *kulḅa*; Sudan monitor (Varanus exanthematicus) *damo*; Nile monitor *tsari*, *guza*; a small brown l. (Gecko) *tsāka*; *sarekutup*, *sarekutu*, a small black-headed l. *gaguware*; a l. with orange and black bars (Scinopus fasciatus) which buries itself in the sand *dama-tsiri** (which also = the green snake); when the male l. puts on its mating colours it is called *kutu* in Kano, *kiski* in Sokoto, and *jangwada* in Zaria.

lo! *bum**, *duba*.

load, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayaki*, *fu-gūma*, *karḅa*; heavy l. *adila* or *adilan kaya*, *alaro*, *sanji*; a small addition to a carrier's l. *ḅoriya*; to get ready a l. *gyāra kaya*; to pack up a l. *labda*; I took his l. *na taḅoshi*.

load, tr. v. *labda*; to l. a gun *ḅura* (or *chika*) *bindiga*, *kimsa*, *yin kimshi*; to l. up *ḅura*.

- loadstone, n. *mijin karife*.
- loaf, n., of salt or sugar *kantu*.
- loafer, n. *dan karma*; see idle.
- loan, n. *āro, bashi**, *ramche*; a cooperativel. *adashi, adashe, wujiji*; see lend.
- loathe, tr. v. *jin kyama*.
- loathing, *kyama, tsantsani*.
- locality, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*.
- lock, n. *makuli* (K.), *kubli, kuli*; l. (padlock) of a door *kwadon kofa*.
- lock, tr. v. *kuble, kule*; to lock up, id. it is locked *shina kule*.
- locks, of a woman's hair *taura*; see under hair.
- locust, n. *fara*, pl. *farori, faruna, gam, jinnu, farat tumfafiya*; a large l. *bābe*, fem. *babaniya*, pl. *babaye, babuna*; a black l. *burdu-duwa*, pl. *burduduwuna*; a black l. which flies at night *farandare*; an insect like a l. *taki*, pl. *takoki*; young locusts ('hoppers') *dango*.
- locust-bean, *ḍorowa**, *ḍorawa*; husk of l.-b. *makuba*.
- locust tree, n. *ḍorowa, ḍorawa*, pl. *ḍorowayi*; pod of l. t. *sabāda*.
- lodge, intr. v. *sabka, sauka, sabki* or *sapka*.
- lodging-place, n. *māshidi*,

masabki, masapki, masafki, majidi, masauki.

- log, n. (of wood) *itache* and *iche*, spec. a l. of wood fastened to feet of slaves as a punishment *turu*; a l. of wood tied to the head as a punishment for thieving *kangalai*; l. fastened to the neck to prevent escape *gudungumi*.
- loin, n. *kugu*, pl. *kugogi*; *māra, tsāra*.
- loin-cloth, a man's *bante, banche*; leather l.-c. *warki* (K.), *walki* (S.); a woman's *fatari, mukuru*; a l.-c. which is the badge of a thief *bākin bante*.
- loneliness, n. *kewa*.
- long, adj. 1. (of considerable length) *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye, da tsayi*.
2. (of dimension) expr. by n. *tsawa, tsawo* etc., e.g. it is seven cubits long *tsawonsa kamu bakwai*; see length.
3. (of time) how l.? *tun yaushe?* l. ago *tuntuni*; from a l. time *dadadde*; l. since *tun dadewa*; l. lasting, adj. *mai-dawami*; (of space) a l. way off *daga nesa, da nesa* and *nesa*; a l. way *da jayawa, da rata, da taḥawa*.
- long for, v. *tuski, tuske, kwa-*

ḍaye, lamiranta; to l. after, e.g. absent friend *yin bege*.

longing, n. (also = l. for) *kwaḍai, kāri, marmari, kāwa* (only used of women); evil l. *guri*; l. for an absent friend *bege*.

look at, v. *dūba, dūbo, yin kallo*, see **behold**; l. at this! *ga shi wannan*; to l. attentively at *tsokachi, yin zuru*; to l. carefully into *yin bibiya*; to l. for (seek) *nema, bīda*; to l. into, constr. with *da* or acc. *lura*; to l. proudly on *yin harāra**; looking round (i.e. spying) *dauroro*; to l. out for *hanga, hangi, hango*; see **espy**; to l. over *leḳe*; looking over the wall *leḳen garu*; to l. like, cf. it looks like him *shina da halamunshi* or *shina da halaman kamanshi*; it looks like rain *sama tana da halamun yin ruwa*.

looking-glass, n. *māḍūbi, māḍūbin fuska, matsokachi*.

loom, n., the pulley on the l. on which the peddles work *chikalkora*; the handle fixed into the pole of a l. *matuki*; the pole of l. on which the woven cloth is wound *takala*.

loop, in a string, n. *zarge*, pl. *zarguna*; *mazargi, maḅalli*.

loose, adj., *kwaranga* (S.), *kwaraprap* (K.); (my shoe) is too l. for me *ya yi kwaro kwaro*.

loosen, tr. v. *kunche, kwanche* (K.), *banya, banye, sassabta, sassafta, sassapta, sunche, ḅamḅare*; to come loose (e.g. of head of an axe) *kwāḅe*.

loosened, particip. *kunchache*, fem. *kunchachiya*, pl. *kunchachu*.

loosening, n. *kunta, kwabiya**.

loot, e.g. the sack of a town *ḅuruntu*.

lop, to *ḳudure*.

lopping, of branches *sāran bisa*.

lord, n. *ubangiji*; *sidi* applied to Mohammed; Lord, an epithet of the Deity, *rabbī**, *ubangiji*.

lose, tr. v. *rāsa, yin rashi, ḅāta, yin hasāra, gagata*, the last constr. with *da, ruḅushi*; to l. the way *rāsa hanya, gagata da hanya, ratse, gochi* and *goche, gwabche* (S.), *ḅāta* (or *ḅāche*) *hanya, ḍimanta, ḍimauta, karkache*, the last also fig. of moral deviation; to l. one's case *kayas ga shar'ā*; they lost heart *han-kulansu duka sun tashi*; losing *ḅāchewa*; see **lost**.

loss, n. *ḅarna*, e.g. they caused

- him l. *su kai ma shi barna*; *rashi, hasāra, asāra, tasari, ta'adi, ta'ada, taskāro* (S.), *tasgāro* (Daura), *ḡampa, ḡamfa*.
- loss**, to suffer, intr. v. *yin hasāra, yin ta'adi*.
- lost**, n., the state of being l., e.g. in the forest *ḡimana**.
- lost**, particip. *lalatachche*, fem. *lalatachchiya, lalatattu*; to be l. *ḡache, makuwa, rāsa*.
- lot**, n. (portion) *rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberabi*.
- lots**, coll. *kuriya*; to draw l. *yin kuriya*.
- louse**, *kwarkwata, kwalkwata, kyaya, kyeya*; crab-l. *ḡan kadafi*; see also **lice**.
- love**, n. *soyaiya, soyaiyya, so-wayya, soyuwa* (S.), *ḡamna, ḡauna, so**, *muhibba*.
- love**, tr. v. *so, san**; (after pronouns ending in *na*) *ḡamna, kamnache*; *soye, yin soyaiya; sha'awa*.
- love-bird** (Agapornis pullaria), *tsiriya*.
- love-charms**, *tsibbu*.
- loved**, one much, n. *lele**, *masoyi**.
- lover**, n. *maso*, pl. *masowa*; *masoyi*, pl. *masoya*.
- low**, intr. v. *yin boda*, see **lowing**.
- low**, adv. a *ḡasa, a ḡas*; lower na *ḡasa*, fem. *ta ḡasa*.
- lower**, tr. v. *ḡasashe, sabka, sapka, safka, sauka, sabki, sauki, sabkas da, saukad da*; to l. to the ground *ḡasa*; to l. a bucket into a well *zire*.
- lowering**, participial n. (a bucket into a well) *zirawa*.
- lowing**, n. (of cow or camel) *boda, umbu*.
- luck**, n. (good) *nasara, arziki, gamon-katar, gata, gatanchi*; he has brought me good l. *ya yi ma ni gata, katar, kātari*.
- lucky**, to be *aruzzuka*; a l. day *buruji, yin dawla*; a l. person *ḡangware, mai-arziki*.
- luggage**, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki*; spec. a woman's l. *fago, faggo* or *pago*.
- lull**, tr. v. *rene*.
- lump**, n. (e.g. of flour) *dunkule; tsāba* or *tsala**, *ḡangori*.
- lunatic**, *ḡabi, tāḡu, tāḡo*, fem. *tāḡuwa*; *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachiya*, pl. *mahaukata, taḡaḡe, shinkinkimi*; see **fool**.
- lung-fish**, Gambian l.-f. or mud-fish, i.e. *Protopterus annectens gawiwa*.
- lungs**, n. *fufu, kufu, sufe* (S.), pl. *sufofi*.
- lust**, n. *ḡūri, sha'awa, kwaḡayi*.
- luxury**, *būki, marmari*.

lying down, n. *kwantawa*; l. on the back with the legs up *rigingini, rigingine*.

lying in wait, n. *fako, kwanto*.
lynx, (caracal) *dage*.

macaroni, n. *taliya**, *wasawa*.

mad, adj. *mahaukachi*, fem. *mahaukachiya*, pl. *mahaukata*; *mai-hauka*; a m. dog *mahaukachin käre*.

mad, to be, intr. v. *hauka, haukache*.

madden, tr. v. *haukata*.

madman, *dolo*, fem. *doluwa*, pl. *dololi*; you m. ! *kai yofi* (S.); see **fool**.

madness, n. *hauka, wāhami, tabuwa*; stark m. *hauka ja*.

maggot, *tsutsa*.

magic, n. *maita, siddabaru, tsibbu, aḱoḱari, dabo*.

magnet, n. *mijin ḱarife*.

magnify, tr. v. (to honour, or extol) *girmama, bada girma, yin yabo*.

magnitude, n. *girma*, e.g. the sun surpasses the moon in m. *rana ta fi wata girma*.

magpie, n., Senegal m. (also used for 'ox-pecker') *charki*.

mahogany, tree *maḱachi*; m.-bean tree *kawo*.

maid, an old m. *tuzuruwa*.

maiden, n. *buduruwa*, pl.

budurai, ḱiya; a young m. *bera*.

maidenhood, n. *budurchi* or *buduruwanchi*.

mail, coat of, n. (made of cloth) *lifidi*; (made of chain) *sulke, safa, kumakumi*.

mail-clad, pl. *masu-lifidi*.

maimed, adj. *ḱuduru*.

maintain, tr. v. 1. (to retain) *riḱe, riḱa, riḱi*.

2. (to feed) *chida*.

maize, n. *masara, dawwa masara* or *ḱamasara** (i.e. *ḱan masara*); roasted m. *ḱamḱara*; a m.-cob *goyon masara*; see **corn**.

make, tr. v. 1. (to construct, fashion, create) *yi, yiwa, yiwo, iwo**, *yo, wa*; I m. *nai = na yi*; (to produce or effect) e.g. to m. an outcry *yin kururuwa*.

2. (to cause) *sa*, e.g. they m. the householder run away *sun sa mai-gida shi guje*.

malady, n. *chiwo, chiwuta*; see under **ill**.

male, adj. and n. *namiji*, pl. *mazaje, toro**; the m. lion *toron zaki*; m. and female *namiji da tamata*.

malice, n. *ḱiyaiya, ḱiyayya, masifa, ḱeta, mugun hali mugunta, tsēgumi*.

malingering, *sāne*.

mallam, (teacher or learned man) n. *malam*, *malami*, pl. *mallamai*; chief m. *liman** or *limami**.

mallet, for beating leather *kantukulo*.

mallow, Jews' m. *malafiya*.

maltreat, tr. v. *walakanta*, *wulakanta*; see **injure**.

maltreatment, n. *walakanchi*.

man, n. *mutum* or *mutume*, pl. *mutane*; (as contrasted with woman and wife) *miji*, pl. *māza*, *mazaje*, *mazaizai*; *mai-miji*; married m. *miji da mache*; the m. with the broom (i.e. a bachelor who has to sweep his own house) *namiji da shara*.

manacles, see **chains**.

manatee, the African species of m. *ayū*.

mane, n. (of horse, etc.) *geza*, pl. *gezuna*, *rabaja* (S.).

mango, *mangoro** (a word used by traders).

manifest, adj. *zahiri*.

manifest, tr. v. *bayāna*, *baiyana*, *gaya*, *gwada*.

manifestation, n. *nunawa*.

manifestly, adv. *zahiri*.

manioc, *rogo*.

manis, n. (i.e. pangolin, a kind of ant-eater) *kirikiri*, *kikiriki*.

mankind, coll. *mutane duka*, *dukan mutane*, *duniya*.

manliness, n. *mazakuta*, *mazakunta*, *mazakunchi*.

manner, n. *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*, *ada*, the latter used especially of religious m.; such is his m. *halinsa ke nan*.

manners, coll., good m. *kumya*, *kunya*, *lādabi*; want of good m. *rashin kumya*.

mantis, *dokin Allah*, *ḍan kama*, *ḷoḷi*.

manumission, n. (of slaves) *mudābar*; a certificate of m. *laya*, *layan ḍiyauchi*.

manure, n. *taki*.

manure, tr. v. *takanta*, *yin taki*.

manuscript, a m. from which a copy has been made *uwa**.

many, adj. *dayawa* and (esp. of persons) *mai-yawa*, pl. *masu-yawa*; *barkatai*, *fal* (S.), *pal*, *pul** (K.), *rututu* (Zanf.); how m.? *nāwa*, *guda nāwa*, e.g. how m. years is it since your birth? *shekara nāwa tun haifuwarka?* how m. were there? *sun yi nāwa?*

marabout, the bastard *jinjimi*.

march, by night in war, n. *kwanan daga*.

mare, n. *goḍiya*, pl. *gwaddi*, *dukusa* (fem. of *dukushi*) pl. *dukusai*; a young m. *ḍan*

dukushi; a large m. *ingarmiya*, *ingaramniya*; a brood m. *kabama*, *kabuma*, *kambama*.

margin, m. of a page *bayala*, *kora*.

mark, n. *tabo*, *tambo* (S.), pl. *tabuna*; a m. on paper or cloth *ḍugo* or *ḍiga*, pl. *ḍigogi*; m. on animals, trees, etc. or of a person unable to write *shaida*, pl. *shaidai*, *shaidu*; a m. on the ground, a land-mark *amara*; for tribal marks see **marks**.

mark, tr. v. 1. (to note, observe) *ji*, *gani*.

2. to make a m. on *shaida* or *yin shaida*, *ḥaḥasta*, *kyaskyasta*; to m. off *keḥe*, *kebanche*, *alamta*; to m. out on the ground *shaya*, *shata*, *shanwuri*.

marker, in book, n. *halāma*, *alāma*, *amara*.

market, for some special article, n. *kasuwa*, *kausuwa* (Zanf.); spec. a very small m. *ḍan kasuwa*; officer of the m. *sankurmi*; president of the m. *sarikin kasuwa*.

marketing, *sayaya*.

marks, coll. (cut on face to point out tribe etc. to which a person belongs) *shaushawa*, *jarfa*, *shatani*, *zūbe*, *kyaskyas-*

tu, e.g. (m. cut from the corners of the mouth) *yambaka*; (m. on cheek nearly horizontal) *bille* (K.); tattoo m. behind the eyes *kadango*; m. painted on faces of women *katambiri*; tribal m. on temple *kurmajo* (Zanf.); the Beriberi tribal mark *tsagan goshi*; to cut tribal m. *shaushauta*.

marksman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *mahalba* or *masu-halbi*.

marriage, n. *amre*, *amri*, *aure*, *arme* (S.), *anganchi*; to give in m. *amrad da*; m. feast *buki* or *biki*, also *wasam buki*; m. presents (wife's) *gāra*; to rejoice at a m. *yin gāra*.

married, adj., a m. man *miji mai-mache*, *magidanchi*; a m. woman *mache maimiji*.

marrow, n. *ḥargo*, *lāka**; m. bone *tantakwashi*.

marry, v. *amre*, *aure* or *yin amre*, *ḍamre amre*, *ḍarme arme* (S.).

marsh, n. *fādama*, *dausayi*.

martyrdom, *shāhada**.

marvel, n. (a wonder) *abin mamaki*, *abin chewa*, *ajub**, *ajaba*.

marvel, v. *yin mamaki*, *jin mamaki*, *yin woba*; to m. at a thing unseen before *kākābi*.

mash, tr. v. *farfasha* or *palpashē*, *kirḥa*, *tūke*.

mashed, participial adj. *dakak-ke*, fem. *dakakka*, pl. *dakakku*.

mashing, n. (e.g. of yams) *kirbi*.

mass, n. *tsaba*; a m. of anything *zuri* (K.).

master, n. *ubangiji*; *uba*, pl. *ubanne*, *ubanai*.

master, tr. v. (to overpower) *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*, *fi**, *i**.

masticate, tr. v. *tamna* or *tauna*, *tsuke*.

masticated, particip. *tamnanne*, fem. *tamnanna*, pl. *tamnannu*.

mat, n. gen. *abin shimfiḍa*, *mashimfiḍi*; a grass m. *leso*; spec. an old grass m. *kēso*; a reed m. *tabarma*; a goat-skin m. *buzu*, *kilishi*; a round m. *tāfin giwa*; a round grass m. *wundi*, *windi* (S.), *asalo*; a mat let down in front of a doorway *asabari*, *tufaniya*, *mayamfadi* (S.); a grass or reed m. for covering the outside of houses *zāna*; a split-cane woven m. *kwāra-kwāra*; a m. used as a door cover *kyaure*; a hanging m. *tihu*, *tifu*; a m. made of palm leaves *mulli*, *murli*, *gazari*; see **mats**.

match, (fellow) *tsāra*, pl. *tsarara-raki*; look for your m. *nema tsaranka*.

matches, *ashana**; to strike m. *kyarta* or *ḱarta ashana*.

mats, coll. (used for roofing) *amāme*; grass used for making m. *tsintsiya**.

matter, n. (subject) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*; what is the m.? *mi ya faru?* what is the m. with you? *mi ya same ka?*

mattress, cloth, n. *darduma*, *katifa*.

mature, adj. and v. *nena*; see **ripe**.

me, personal pron. *ni*, e.g. he caused me fear *ya ba ni tsoro*, they followed me *sun bi ni*; with prep. to me *ma ni*, *gare ni*; exclamatory, me! do you mean me? *niya?*

meal, n. 1. (repast) *kalachi*, which also = midday m.

2. (ground corn etc.) *gari*; see **flour**.

mean, n. (midway position) *matsakaichi*.

mean, adj. (worthless, contemptible) *lalatachche*, fem. *lalatachchiya*, pl. *lalatattu*, *banza*.

meaning, n., e.g. the m. of a word or a phrase *loga*, *gutsu*, *tushe*, *azanachi*, *baichi*, *kāri*, *ma'ana*, *dalili**; e.g. there is no m. in it *babu loga*; what is the m. of it?

minene gutsunsa or *wannan ina ma'ana tasa?*

measles, n. *ḡarambau, ḡarimbau*.

measure, n. 1. gen., both in the strict sense and also of comparison, estimation, proportion, one's m. or standard *ḡwalḡwado, ḡwargwado*.

2. an instrument or means of measuring *abin auna, abin awo, ma-auna, magwadi, magwaji*.

3. spec. the foot regarded as a m. of length *taki*, pl. *take-take*; a m. of length from elbow to tip of middle finger *kamu*; a cloth m. of about 15 feet *zane*, pl. *zannuwa* or *zanna*; a m. of capacity *mūdu* (K.), pl. *muḡduna*; a m. for grain *zakka* (S.); see **span**.

measure, tr. v. *ḡwalḡwada, ḡwargwada, ḡwada, awo, yin awo, auna*; to m. with the thumb and middle finger *ra-tsa*; to m. with the hand *tāka*.

measuring, 1. participial n. *ḡwalḡwadawa*.

2. anything used for m.; see **measure** (2).

meat, n. (flesh used as food) *nama*, pl. *namomi, dāgu* (K.), *yome* (S.); spec. thin strips of cooked m. *kilishi, kilis*;

a piece of m. roasted on a stick *chanchanga, tsire, tsiri*, pl. *tsirare*; a small piece of m. *tsoka* (S.), pl. *tsokoki*; thin strips of m. dried in the sun *yāwara*; the fat of m. *mai, kitse*; epithet applied to broth without m. *da lami*.

meddlesome, *kasarantam*.

meddlesomeness, *karambāni, kazalaha*.

mediator, n. *matsakanchi*.

medicine, n. *māgani*, pl. *maganguna, magunguna*; to take m. *sha* or *haḡe māgani*; to administer m. *sa, ba* or *bada māgani*; a m. for the eyes *korino, ḡiwakamba*; a m. taken to ward off an enemy's blows *sagau*; a m. for children *dauri*; sources of m.—a tree whose root is used as a m. for dysentery *domashi*; a sharp, thorny grass ground up as a m. *rairai*; a root used as a purgative m. *zagarafi*; a plant with small black seeds from which a purgative m. is made *nanāfa*; see also *tsuhu, tsumi*, etc.; m. consisting of charms *tsubbu, tsibbu, dabo*.

Medina, Madina.

meditate, intr. v. *zache*; see **think**.

meditation, n. *tunane*, *tunan-*
ne, pl. *tunannu*.

Mediterranean Sea, *Bahar*
Ilmal.

medium, (average) *tsäka-tsäka* ;
m. sized *matashi*.

mEEK, adj. *da hançuri* ; cf.
seq.

mEEKNESS, n. *hançuri*, *han-*
çura.

meet, adj. *daidai*, and in
stronger sense *halal*, *halas* ;
not m. *haram*, *ba daidai*, *ba*
halal etc. ; cf. seq. (2).

meet, v. 1. *täriye*, *tära*, *yin*
täriya, (to assemble) *tära* ;
to m. as in conflict or op-
position *karo* with *da* ; to m.
with *gämu* or *gamo da* ; *tare*
or *tarda*, *taras da*, *tariyo** ;
tsaya da ; *same* or *samo* ;
häda da, *çaramta da*, *sädu* ; to
m. a person coming from the
opposite direction *çaramta*
da ; to m. (i.e. to reach to)
taras ; to go to m. *tarba* (S.) ;
to m. unexpectedly *chin käro*.

2. (to m. so as to be fit,
suitable, sufficient) *gamshe*,
ishe ; this meets our case
wannan ya ishe mu.

meeting, n. *taruwa*, (assem-
bling) *täriya* ; m. of rivers
(confluence) *magangami* ; a
day of m. (with God on the
last day) *ran gamu* ; an un-

expected m. *kachibis*, *kitibis* ;
they have met *sun yi kachi-*
bis.

melon, n. *dila** ; spec. water-
m. *guna*, *kançana*.

melt, tr. v. (e.g. metals) *narke*,
narka ; it is just at melting
point *ina kan narkewa*.

melted, be, intr. v. *narku*.

melted, participle *narkakke*,
fem. *narkakka*, pl. *narkakku*.

melting, n. *narki*.

memorandum, of goods, writ-
ten on paper, n. *zumami*,
zumame.

memorial, n. *ambäto*.

memory, n. *tunane**, *tuna**,
famu.

men, n. 1. (males) *mäza*, *ma-*
zaje, *mazaizai*.

2. (human beings) *mutane*.

mend, tr. v. 1. *gyarta*, *gyara*.

2. to patch clothes etc.

banke, *lallaça*, *toshe*, *tarishe*.

3. fig. (to set right, to 'm.
matters') *gyara*.

4. to m. a road *täda*
hanya.

mendicant, n., see *beggar*.

mending, participial form
gyartawa.

mention, tr. v. *ambäta*, *am-*
bäto, *ambache*.

merchandise, n. *bukäta*, *abin*
chiniki, *fatauchi*, *urula*.

merchant, n. *falke*, fem. *fal-*

kiya, pl. *fatake*, *ātajiri* or *tājiri*, *mai-fatauchi*, *dan garumfa**; see **trader**.

merciful, adj. (epithet applied to God only) *errahimi**.

mercy, n. *jinkai*, *tausayi**; see **compassion**.

merely, adv. *sai dai*, *sai*.

message, n. (errand, mission) *sako*, (news or information brought) *labāri*, *jawābi*; to complete the delivery of a m. *ida labāri*.

messenger, n. *maaike*, *maaike*, pl. *masu-aike*; *jekāda*, *jakāda*, fem. *jekādiya*, *makirayi*; *manzo*, pl. *manzanni*, which is also specially used of a king's m.

messiah, the *almasihu*.

meteorite, *gatarin arādu*.

midday, n., of time *tsakar rana*.

middle, n. *tsākiya*, *tsāka*, a *tsāka*; the space between two places or things *tsākani*; in the m. of (prepositional phr.) *tsākani*; to be in the m. *tsākaita*.

midge, ('sand-fly') *kyashi*, *kyar-firfitu*.

midnight, *tsākan dāre*.

midst, n., see **middle**.

midwife, n. *ungozuma*, *ungozoma*, *unguwanzoma*, *ingozoma*.

might, n. *iko*, (of physical power) *karifi*, *karfi*; with m. *da iko*.

mighty, adj. *mai-iko*, *mai-karifi*, *bajini**, *gugara**; (as epithets of God) *jabbaru*, *aljabbaru*, *jalala*; see **powerful**.

mignonette, an amaranth plant with a flower like m. *zaki banza*. It is closely related to the native spinach; cf. *alayafu*.

migrate, to *zakuda*, *zauḍa*.

migration, *ḡaura*; a place to which anyone migrates *ma-ḡaurachi*.

mildew, n. *fumfunu*, *funfunu*, *fufuna*, *damshi*, *laima*, *lamniya*, *rima*.

milk, n. *nono*, pl. *nonuna*; sweet or fresh m. *mādara*; curds of m. *guntṣari*; m. and water *tsararauka*; a herb, the root of which is put in m. to preserve it *loda*, *dafara*; to skim m. *yade*.

milk, tr v. *tatsa*, *tatse*, *twache*, *twatsa* (S.).

milkweed, gigantic m. or Dead Sea apple (*Calotropis procera*) *tumfafiya*.

mill, n., see **millstone**.

mill, tr. v. (to grind) *nika*.

miller and mill-owner, n. *mai-reda*.

- millet**, n., bastard m. *tumbin jaki*; bulrush or pearl m. *gero, maiwa*; great m. *dawa*; 'marua' or 'ragi' m. *tamba*; the first ripe heads of m. before the general crop is ripe *tumu*; m. which has sprung up by itself on an unsown farm *yābāri*.
- million**, adj. *alif alif*; *dubu dari goma*.
- millipede**, *kadandoniya, aimaka*; see **centipede**.
- millstone**, n. *dutsin nika, niki, maredi*, pl. *maredai*.
- mimosa**, *kaidaji*; Egyptian m. *bagaruwa*.
- minaret**, *hasumiya* (S.), *sumiya* (S.), *sumaya* (K.).
- mince**, tr. v. (cut into very small pieces) *yanyana*.
- mind**, n. *zuchiya**; I am of two minds *ina da zuchiya biyu*.
- mind**, v. (to regard, heed) *kula* with *da*, see **care**.
- mine**, sep. possess. pron. *nawa* when obj. possessed is masc., *tawa* when fem., e.g. your horse is stronger than m. *dokinka ya fi nawa karifi*.
- mingle**, tr. v. *chudaya*, see **mix**.
- minimum**, *kadane**.
- minister**, a king's, n. *bafade*, pl. *mafadawa*; m. of the household *magaji*.
- minstrel**, n. *zabiya*, pl. *zabiyoyi*.
- minute**, n., of time *gari**, *ḍiga*.
- mirage**, n. *ḍiyal-rana* (lit. child of the sun), *ḥawalwalniya*.
- mire**, n. *lāka, taḥo*, pl. *taḥuna*; see **mud**.
- mirror**, n. *madubi, madubin ido, madubin fuska, matso-kachi*.
- miscarry**, v. *ḥari, yasda ḍiya, ḥata chiki**, *lalache*.
- mischievous**, n. *ḥeta, masīfa, ḥarna*; to do m. *yin sabābi*; m. making *kwarmato**.
- mischievous person**, n. *mai-masīfa, mai-ta'adi*.
- miser**, n. *bahili, marowachi*.
- miserable**, to be or to render m. *sinihī*.
- misery**, n., see **distress**.
- misfortune**, n. *hasāra, asāra, tasari, sababi, mayāta, masīfa, halaka* or *hallaka*.
- mislead**, tr. v. *ruḍe*; one who misleads *maruḍe* or *mai-ruḍe*, pl. *maruḍa*.
- misled**, particip. *ruḍadde*, fem. *ruḍadḍa*, pl. *ruḍadḍu*.
- miss**, n., used of an arrow, gun, etc. *kuskurewa*.
- miss**, v. (e.g. to pass over, omit words in a book) *ratsa**

- fātara*; to m. the way *ratsa hanya*; to m. (of an arrow) *kuskure, kurkura, küre* (S.), *yin kundu*; to m. fire *fāsa*; to m. one's aim *baude*; *shan kuskure, shan bara*; to m. or fail to meet *yin swabāni*.
- missing**, used of two persons m. each other on a road *swabani*.
- mist**, n. *hāzo, feshi, kāsashi*.
- mistake**, n. *mantuwa, rikichi*, pl. *rikita, rikichewa*; *kure*, pl. *kurakuri*; I made a m. *na yi kure*; to make a m. *manta, manche, yin mantuwa, bata zanche*.
- mistletoe**, West Indian m. *kauchi*.
- mistress**, n., m. of the house *uwargida, uwalgida*, m. of slaves *uwargijiya*.
- misty**, adj. *da hāzo*.
- misunderstand**, v. *gigiche*.
- misunderstanding**, *gigi*.
- mix**, tr. v. *dāme* or *dāma, garwaya, gangama, kwābe, kwāba, gauraye, hautsina, kaḍa*; to m. together *chuda* or *chudaya, surka, yamutsa, yamuče*; to m. mud *chuda yimbu, chuda*; mixing *chudawa*.
- mixed**, what is, e.g. mortar, n. *damamiya*.
- mixing**, *gāmawa, gauraya, kwābi, surki*.
- moat**, *baza, gwalalo*.
- mob**, *gungu*.
- mock**, v. *bananche, yin ba'a, yin gori, reda*.
- mockery**, *ba'a, bananchi, gaiya, gori, izgiti*.
- mode**, n. *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.
- moderate size**, n., a thing of m. s. *madaidaichi*.
- moderately**, adv. *da dama dama*.
- modest**, adj. (bashful, or under a sense of shame) *da kumya*.
- modesty**, n. (sense of shame, bashfulness) *kumya, kunya*.
- Mohammed**, pr. n. *Muham-madu, Muhammad, Ahmadu, Ahamadu, dan Amina*.
- mohammedan**, a, n. *musulmi*, pl. *musulmai*; the m. religion *musulumchi*; to be a m. *musulumta*; I changed from a heathen to a m. *na sauyad da arna musulmi*.
- moist**, m. ground *dausayi, laima, dimau* (S.).
- moisten**, tr. v. *jika, jike*.
- moisture**, n. *damshi, rima*; see **damp**.
- molar**, a m. tooth *matamni*, pl. *matamna*.
- molasses**, a kind of, n. *mādi, maḍiya*.
- mole**, n. (birth-mark) *tadawal Allah*; an animal resembling a large m. *gyabji*.

molest, tr. v. *tsananta*, *alale*.

moment, n., of time *kyapta-wan ido*, *gari**; in a m. (forthwith) *nan da nan*.

Monday, n. *litini*, *latini* and *ranal latini*, *attanin* (S.).

money, n. *kurđi*, *kud̄i*; for m., on payment of m. *da kurđi*; (the only money regularly used by the Hausas consists of cowrie shells, about 2000 of which are equivalent in value to a shilling; the Austrian dollar is occasionally used, see *dala*); ready m., i.e. cash down *hannu da hannu*; much m. *kurđaidai*, *kurade* (S.).

money-bag, small, n. *tsalet̄a*.

mongoose, a species of *ayarabi*.

monitor, *guza*, *damo*, *tsari*.

monkey, n. *b̄iri*, fem. *birinya*, pl. *b̄irai*, *b̄iraye* or *b̄iruna*; different species are: *jan biri*, *kirka*, *bi kuka*, *gata* or *gatan biri*; a small reddish m. *tsula*; an old m. *gauji*; a baboon *gogo*, *gwaggwo*, *yimki* (K.), *bika* (masc.).

monkey-bread, tree, n., i.e. the baobab *kuka*.

monkey-nut, n. *gyada*; oil from the m.-n. *main gyada*.

month, n. masc. *wata*, pl. *watanni*; this m. *watan yau*; last m. *watan jiya*; next

m. *watan gobe*; the m. after next *watan jibi*; four months *wata fuđu*; the fourth m. *wata na-fuđu*.

monument, n., see **memorial**.

moon, n. *wata*, pl. *watanni*, masc.; the new m. *sabon wata*, *farin wata*, *jinjirin wata* (S.); a new m. when seen with the old m. *amariyan wata*; moon-light *farin wata*; a bright m. *wata farifat*; a halo round the m. *sansani*; phr. the m. is ended *wata ya mutu*; the m. is new *wata ya tsaya*.

more, adj. 1. (greater in amount) *mafi-yawa*, e.g. he gave him books m. than ours *ya ba shi litatafi mafi-yawa dāga namu*; m. considerable than this *mafi-girma dāga nan*.

2. (to a greater degree) as in our comparison of adj. and adv. *fi*, e.g. he is m. cunning than a ground squirrel *ya fi kurege wayo*; he likes me m. than you *ya fi so na da kai*; *faye*, *faskare*, e.g. you ask m. than I am equal to *kana son abin da (ya faye ma ni or) ya faskare ni*.

3. (m. in addition, further) *kara*, e.g. add m. (to the price in bargaining) *ka kara ma ni*; give me m. money

dada ma ni kurđi; he is asking for m. *ya ke neman kari*; although they made every attempt to console him, he cried the m. *koda suka yi kōkari dayawa sun ba shi han-kuri shi ya kara kuka*; he stabbed him, then he moved no m. *ya yanke shi baya nan bai kara yin motsi ba*; a little m. *da dama*; much m. *bale, bare, balanta*, e.g. he would receive anyone, much m. would he receive me *ya dawki kowa balanta niya*.

moreover, adv. *bayan hāka, fa**, *ananan*.

morning, n., the early m. *safe* and *safiya*; when m. came *da safe ya yi*; in the m. *da safe*; every m. *kowache safiya*; good morning! *sanu da safe* or *sanu da rana*; very early in the m. *sassafe*; m. two hours after sunrise *hantsi*.

morning-glory, (plant) *yako, yaryadi*.

morrow, n. *gobe, rana mai-zuwa*; good-bye till to-morrow *sai gobe*; for 'day after to-morrow' etc., see **day**.

morsel, n. *gutsura*, pl. *gutsure*.

mortar, n. 1. (made by scooping out a log) *turumi*, pl. *turame*.

2. (building cement) *dama-miya, damamma* (S.); to mix m. *dāme* or *dāma*.

mortgage, to *tolma*, see **pledge**.

moslem, n. *musulmi*, pl. *musulmai*; see **mohammedan**.

mosque, n. *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai* or *masallataye*.

mosquito, *sābro, sauro, samro*, pl. *sabrana* or *sabraye*.

most, adv. 1. (denoting the relative superlative) is expressed by a defining phr. *mafi* (or *ya fi*) *duka* (or *kowa*), i.e. surpassing all or any, e.g. he is the m. powerful *shina da karifi ya fi duka*; for similar phrases cf. the m. excellent Mohammed *Muhammadu ya fi kowa*; He (i.e. God) who is m. powerful *mai-iko da kowa*.

2. the absolute superlative (= in a very high degree) *faye*, e.g. the cat is m. addicted to crying at night *kyanwa ta faye yin kuka da dare*.

moth, n. *gishi, majibari, buta wuta, bamota**; spec. a m. from a black caterpillar *aso, asu*; a m. with red abdomen, white thorax and black and orange wings *gamadidi*.

mother, n. *uwa, iya, inna* (S.), *jatoma**, *gyatuma**; children of one m. *chiki daya*.

mother-in-law, n. *sarakuwa, surūka*.

motion, n. *motsi*.

mould, n. *alashaf*.

mound, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi*.

mount, v. *hawa* or *hau*; to m. a horse or to m. on horse-back *hawa doki* or *hawa bisa doki*; to m. up or upon *tāka, taki, taska*; to cause to m. *hawas da, haushe*.

mountain, n. *tudu*, pl. *tudodi, tudunduna, tsauni*.

mourn, v. *yin tākaba, yin kuka, yin makoki*.

mouse, n. *bera* (K.) or *ḥira, dam bera, dambariya, kūsū* (S.), pl. *kusa*; the striped or zebra m. *ḥarewar kusu*; water m. (or cane-rat) *ḥeran kyamro*; a poison used to destroy mice *maḍat, maḍas*; a special name given to a m. *mi-kwana-ka-ba-ni*.

mouth, n. *baki*, pl. *bakuna*; also fig. of the opening or entrance to anything, e.g. the m. of a well *bakin rijiya*; spec. a disease at the corners of the m. *dacha, datsa*; to fill the m. *gumde*.

mouthful, n. *loma, laruma**.

move, v. tr. and intr. *motsa*,

intr. *yin motsi*; to m. away from *gurgusa, gurgushe*; to m. a little back *gusa, gulgusa, gurgusa*; to m. a little forward *guso* or *gurguso*; to m. backwards and forwards *gusa, guso*; to m. forward or backward so as to make room *zakuda, zauda*; to m. nearer to the speaker *zakudo*; to m. from a place *gurgushe*; to m. towards *gurguso*; it cannot be moved *ya ki motsuwa*.

movement, n. *motsi*.

moving, m. a little away, particip. *gusawa*.

mow, tr. v. *yanka* or *yanke*.

much, l. adj. and adv. (in great quantity) *yawa**, *dayawa, mai-yarwa*, e.g. m. money *kurḍi dayawa*; he rejoiced m. *ya yi murna dayawa*; *yawa* connective form *yawan, da gugu*, connect. *gugun, gugin, tuli, rututu* (Zanf.), *sununu*, e.g. m. sand *gugun rairai*; how m. ? *nāwa, nauwa* ? e.g. how m. money am I to give you ? *kurḍi nāwa ni ba ka* ? to do something very m. *faye*, e.g. children laugh very m. *yara sun faye yin dariya*; to be too m. for *buwaya* or *buwaye, faskare*, e.g. it is too m. for

- me *ya buwaye ni*; it is too m. *ba shi kai hakanan ba or ya faskare*; m. more *bale, bare, barshe*, or with preceding negative much less; very m. *pal* (K.), *fal* (S.).
- mucus**, from the eyes, n. *kwamtsa, kwantsa, kwamtso*.
- mud**, n. *yimbu, yambu, yumbu, taḅo*, pl. *tabuna, lāka, k̄āfo, k̄āfau, potopoto*; spec. a handful of m. *churi*; a round piece of m. *chibirin kasa*; slippery m. *talalabiya**; m. or sand in water *yashi*.
- muddy**, adj. *da taḅo*; m. water *gwiba, gwibi, gurbatachen ruwa*; to make m. *gurbata*.
- mud-fish**, or Gambian lungfish, i.e. *Protopterus annectens*, n. *gaiwa*; noise made by the m.-f. *chiwuki, tsuki* (S.).
- muezzin**, n. *ladān, ladāni, wazanu* (S.), *wazinu, maikiran salla*.
- mule**, n. *alfadari, fem. alfadara*, pl. *alfadaru, alfadarai*.
- multiply**, tr. v. *yawanta, kara**, *riba*; I multiplied it by ten *na riba shi goma*.
- multitude**, n. *yawa, taro or taru*, pl. *tarori*.
- murder**, n. *kāshinkai, kisan-kai*.
- murder**, intr. v. *yin kāshinkai, yin kisan-kai*.
- murderer**, n. *makashi, makashinkai*, see **kill**.
- murmur**, intr. v. *yin gunaguni*.
- muscular person**, n. *gyande*, fem. *gyandiya*.
- mushroom**, *naman kaza*.
- music**, n. *molo, maulo*, pl. *moluna*; to play music *yin wasa*.
- musical instrument**, n. *abin molo, kida, kidi*; any kind of wind m. i. *busa*, pl. *bushebushe*; to play on a m. i. that is touched or struck *yin kidi*; spec. a m. i. like a guitar *gurumi* or *gurimi*; a m. i. held under the arm, a kind of drum *kotso*; a m. i. made of a long gourd *zunguru*; a m. i. played by rubbing on it *kukuma*; a stringed m. i. *matsirkiya*; strings of a m. i. *tsarkiya*; a stick for m. i. *goge*; a m. i. played before a king *pampami, famfami*, a wind m. i. *siriki*, a wind m. i. resembling a bagpipe *algaita, algaitu*; a trumpet or trombone *kakaki*.
- musician**, king's, n. *zabiya* (K.), *zabaya* (S.), pl. *zabiyoyi*; m. who performs on a drum, n. *makidi*; on trumpet *mai-busa*.

musk, n. *muska*.

muslin, n., used for turbans
harsa, hassa, hirsā.

mussel, pond-m. *ḡumba*.

mussulman, to be a, intr. v.
*musulumta**; see moham-
medan.

must, v. (i.e. be obligatory or
necessary) *lalle, kamata*, e.g.
we must work *lalle ne* (or
ya kamata) *mu yi aiki*; see
necessary.

musty smell, as of grain long
kept, n. *suna**.

mutilate, to *gunche, ḡire*;
mutilating *ḡirewa*.

mutilation, e.g. loss of hand
or foot *dungulmi, gundulmi*.

muttering, *jiza*.

muzzle, for goat or donkey,
n. *takunkumi*.

my, possess. pron. 1. suff. *-na*
when the obj. possessed is
masc., *-ta* when fem., e.g.
my father *ubana*, my mother
uwata.

2. separate, *nawa* with
masc., *tawa* and *tata** with
fem., e.g. my horse *doki*
nawa; my mare *ḡodiya tawa*.

myriad, n., of number *ribbi**.

myrrh, *jawal*.

myself, pron. *kaina*; I m. *ni*
da kaina.

nail, finger-n. *ḡumba*, pl.

ḡumbuna or *ḡumbai, farchi,*
farche.

nail, an iron, n. *ḡusa*.

nail, tr. v. *kāfa*.

naked, adj. *tsirara, funtu,*
huntu, da tsiraichi, mai-
tsiraichi or *da funtu, jir*;
a n. person *tumbar**; he is
n. *ya yi tsirara*.

nakedness, n. *tsiraichi, funt-*
unchi, kāsan; *wofi*, e.g. a
naked lie *ḡariyar wofi*.

name, n. *suna*, pl. *sunaye,*
sunanaki; a city whose n.
is Kano *birni sunansa Kano*;
what is his n.? *wa sunansa?*
or *mi an che da shi?* phr.
name its price *ba shi suna*.

name-day, for a child, n. *ran*
suna; a meal connected with
the n.-day *tuwon suna*.

napkin, n. *kalkāfi, maharma*.

narrate, v. *fadi, fada*.

narrative, n. *labāri, aljama*.

narrow, adj. *ḡumchi, ḡunchi,*
ḡunkunta; a n. place *wurin*
matse.

narrow, v. 1. tr. (to make n.)
ḡumtata.

2. intr. (to be n.) *matsu*.

narrowness, n. *ḡumchi, ḡun-*
chi.

natal, adj. *na-haifuwa*, fem.
ta-haifuwa, e.g. your n. day
rana ta haifuwarka or *ranan*
(*ran*) *haifuwarka*.

nation, *alumma* or *al'umma*.

native, 1. adj. (of animals, etc. belonging to a particular country or district) expressed by means of *ḡasa* or *gari*, e.g. the n. trees *itatuwan ḡasa*; the n. fish *kifayen ḡaringa*.

2. gentilic n. (a native) of a country *ba* with terminal vowel *e* or *i*, e.g. a Hausa n. *ba-Haushe*; of a town or locality *ḡa* followed by its name, e.g. a n. of Zaria *ḡan Zazzau*.

nativity, n. *haifuwa*.

natron, n. *kanwa*, *gallo*; a heap of n. *burdumi**.

nature, n. (character) *hali*.

nausea, *tsanda* (K.).

navel, n. *chibi* (S.), *chibiya* (K.), pl. *chibobi*.

near, adv. *da kusa*, *kusa*, e.g. he went n. *ya tafi kusa*; he sat n. at hand *ya zamna kusa*; very n. *kusa-kusa*, *kur-kusa*, *kulkusa*; n. to *kusa da* or *kusa ga*; n. to him *kusa gare shi*.

near, to be etc., v. intr. to be or draw n. *yin kusa*, *kusata*, *kusache*, *kusanta*; to draw n. *dūno*; to draw n. to *gwa-matsi*, *shinkaya**.

near, coming n., participial form *kusatowa*.

nearly, adv. *kusa*; it is n. finished *ya yi kusan ḡarewa* or *ya kusa ḡarewa*; he n. forgot it *ya kusa manta shi*.

nearness, (proximity) *kusa*.

necessary, adj. *wajib*, *wajibi*, *lazumtache*; the necessities of life *abin bukatar rai*.

necessary, to be, v. *wajaba*, *wajiba*, *lazumche*, *kamata*; impers. it is n. *ya wajiba*, *ya kamata*, *lalle ne*.

necessity, n. *larura*, *lalle*, *tīlas*; of n. *da lalle*, *da tīlas*, *da wuya*, *wajib*, *wajibi*.

neck, n. *wuya*, *wiya*, pl. *wiyayi*.

neck-hole, of shirt, n. *wundi*.

necklace, *mākūra*, n. of red beads *kutofi*; (worn by women) *dumbujin zufa*; a n. composed of black seeds *kantururuwa*, *tagode*.

need, n. *bukāta*.

need, v. *bukata*, *yin bukata*; cf. prec.

needful, it is, impers. *ya kamata*, *lalle ne*.

needle, n. *alura*, pl. *alurai*, *maḡunkiya*, *matsiyachiya*, *matsefata**, *tamfasuwa*, *tanfasuwa*; spec. large n. *tsiko*, *sumjiya*, *sumdiya*; a sail-n. *masilla*, *misilla*; a large curved n. used for thatching *bida* (S.); a needle's eye *kāfal alura*.

needle-case, n. *gidan alura*.
needlework, e.g. yellow n. on a burnous, n. *yarrani**.
needy, adj. *maḳaḳaḳaḳaḳi*, pl. *maḳaḳaḳasta*, *talaka*, pl. *talakaḳawa* or *talakka*, *mai-talaka*, pl. *masu-talaka*, *mai-talauchi*, pl. *masu-talauchi*.
neglect, n., e.g. of work *kwatakwana**.
neglect, tr. v. *ḳyale*, *rena*, *shāmuḳe*; (to take no notice of) *zuba idanu*.
neigh, intr. v. *yin haniniya*.
neighbour, n. *maḳofchi* (S.), *maḳobchi*, *maḳubchi*, pl. *maḳofṭa*, *maḳochi* (K.), *maḳwabchi*, pl. *maḳwabta*.
neighing, n. *haniniya*.
neither, adv. *ko**; after a neg. neither...nor *ko...ko*.
nerve, n. *jijiya*, pl. *jijwoji* or *jijyoji*.
nerves, coll. n. *dagura*.
nest, n. *shēḳa*, *sheka* (S.), pl. *shēḳuna* and *shēḳoḳi*, *gurbi*.
net, n. *taru*, pl. *taruna*, *marefiya* (S.); spec. names for fishing-nets also *rāfa* (S.), *rāga*, pl. *ragogi*, *foma*, *homa* (S.), *koma*; a n. used for carrying grass *chali*; the piece of wood to which the (*foma*) net is attached *furnai*.
nettle-tree, *zuwo*.

network, n. *aikin raga*.
never, adv. expressed by v. *tāba* with negative, e.g. I n. acted thus *ban tāba yin wannan ba*; we n. went there *ba mu tāba je nan ba*; n. until now *dadai* with negative verb, e.g. I n. saw it *dadai ban gani ba*.
nevertheless, adv. *saiko*, *tare da wannan*, *koda**, *duk da hāka*.
new, adj. *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sababbi* or *sabbi*; a n. comer *haḳāka*; the n. moon *sābon wata*, *farin wata*; to make n. *sabunta*; making n. (renewing) *sabunchi* (K.), *sabuntaka* (S.).
news, coll. n. *labāri*, *ḳisa**; what is the news? *ina labāri* or *ina labārin duniya*? I heard n. of you *na ji labārinka*; to publish n. *labarta*; to spread false n. *chinewa*, *kwarmāto*.
next, adv. (as a qualification of nouns of time) *gobe*, e.g. n. month *watan gobe*; the n. world *lahira*, *gidan gobe*; the n. day *rana mai-zuwa* or *rana mai-zakuwa*, *kashegari* (K.), *wanshekare* (S.).
nibbling, e.g. of ants, n. *tausani* (*gara*).
nice, adj. *da dadi*; something n. *abin dadi*.

niche, *alkuki*.

nickname, *lakabi, sunan wasa*.

Niger, Hausa name for the river; n. *Kwāra, Kuwara* or *ruwan Kwara*.

nigh, adv. *kusa* or *da kusa*; n. to *kusa da* or *kusa ga*.

night, n. *dare*; *saɓanin yana**; all n. *dare duka*; at n. or by n. *da dare*; good night! *sanu da dare, sai da safe*; last n. *jiya da dare*; it is n. *dare ya yi* or *duniya ta yi dare*; to go by n. *bin dare*; to pass the n. *wuni*; when n. comes or came *da dare ya yi*; the n. overtook him *dare ya yi masa*.

nightjar, (Macrodipteryx macrodipterus) *yaute, yotai, yautai*.

nightshade, black n. *gautan kaji*.

nine, num. *tara*, n. hundred *dari tara*, by nines *tara tara*.

nineteen, num. *goma sha tara, sha tara, ishirin ɗaya babu*.

ninety, num. *tisain, tasain, dari goma bus, dari gaira goma*, the two last = 100 less 10.

ninth, num. 1. ordinal *na-tara*, fem. *ta-tara*.

2. fractional n. *tusu'i*.

no, 1. interj. *a**, *a'a*.

2. adj. *babu, ba*, e.g. no

money *babu kurɗi*; no one *babu kowa, ba kowa, babu wanda* or *ba wanda*.

no, to say, v. *hāna, ƙi, ƙiya*.

nod, to, in assent, v. *kāɗa kai, gyada kai*.

noise, n. *āmo, ɗūmi, ɗimi, hayaniya, hāniya**, *yagatu* (K.), *mita, holo*; loud and angry n. *hargowa*; a vague unexplained n. *burum*; a distant n. *jiɓa*.

nomadic, adj. pl. *masu-tashi*.

none, adj. *babu* (or *ba*) *wanda, babu* (or *ba*) *kowa, babu*, the last applied to things; n. used of persons *babu mutum*.

nonsense, n. *wawa, wawanɗi*; he talks n. *shina magana barkatai*.

noon, n. *tsākar rana*.

noose, n. gen. *zarge*, pl. *zar-guna*; spec. a n. for catching animals *mazargi, azargagi, azazargi* (S.); *ƙiri*, pl. *ƙirra*.

nor, adv. *ko* with negative, e.g. he gave them neither bread n. money for bread *ba ya ba su ko gurasa ko kurɗin gurasa*.

north, n. *arewa*; on the n. or to the n. *da arewa* or *arewachi*.

northern, the, region, n. *arewachi*.

nose, n. *hanchi*; the bridge of

the n. *goral hanchi*; the part of the n. between the nostrils *zozon hanchi*; a man with flattened n. *mai-hanchi nanakke*; to blow the n. *fyache majina*.

nostrils, n. *hanchi*, pl. *hantuna*.

not, adv. *ba*, e.g. I know not *ban sani*; the *ba* is placed before and after the verb or sentence which it negatives, e.g. I did not see the man *ban gani mutum ba*, or less correctly *ban gani ba mutum*; *babu*, e.g. it is not good *babu kyau*; with imperative or subjunctive clauses *kada*, e.g. do not fear *kada ka ji tsoro*; that you may not fall (or lest you fall) *kada ka fadi*; *kada dai*, e.g. let her n. be heard *kada dai a ji ta*; 'or not' when the words form the end of a question *ko ba haka ba?*

notch, n., e.g. in a tree for resting a load against *loko*.

note, v. *duba* or *dubo*, e.g. note this *duba wannan*.

nothing, n. *bābu*, *bābu komi*, *ba...komi* or *ba komi ba*, e.g. who knew n. *wanda bai san komi ba*; n. but *sai*, *sai dai*.

notwithstanding, adv. *sai ko*, *tare da wannan*, *koda*.

nought, n., see **nothing**.

novel, adj. 1. see **new**.

2. (strange) *baḳo*, fem. *baḳuwa*, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* or *baḳoḳuna*, *da baḳo*.

novelty, n. (strangeness) *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

now, adv. *yanzu*, *ko yanzu*, *lokachin nan*; even n. *ko yanzu*, *yanzu yanzu*; just n. *yau yau*; till n. *har yanzu*.

nude, adj., see **naked**.

nullah, n. *ḳorama*, *njere**, *injere**.

numb, to be, v., see **numbness**.

number, n. *gūda*, *lisafi*; five in n. *gūda biyar*; without n., beyond n., is expressed by *fi ḳidaya*, e.g. fishes without n. *ḳifaye su fi ḳidaya*.

number, tr. v. *lisafi*, *ḳilga* or *ḳirga*.

numbering, method of, n. *ḳidaya*, *ḳididdiga*.

numbness, n. *dela*, my hands are numb *dela ya kama hannuwana*, lit. n. has seized my hands.

numeral adverbs, these are formed by prefixing *sau*, *so* or *guda* to the cardinal numbers, e.g. once *sau ḳaya*, thrice *sau uku* or *guda uku*.

numerous, adj., see **many**.

nurse, n. *mai-reno*, *mareniya*, *majiya**.

nurse, tr. v. *rene*.

nursing, n. *reno*.

nut, n. *kwalo*, *kwaluwa*, *girchi* (S.), the small edible ground-n. called also the monkey-n. *gyada* (S.), *gēda* (K.), *gujiya* (S.), pl. *gujeye*, monkey-n. oil *main gyada*; Bambarra ground-n. (Voandzeia) *kwaruru*, *gujiya*, this n. when roasted is called *yaro da dariya*; kola-n. *goro* q.v.; hazel-n. *chanza**, *anza**; shea-n. *kadanya*; tiger-n. *aya*; physic or purging n. *bi ni da zugu*; see also *hawayen zaki*; the inside of a small ground-n. which resembles in colour that of a *bidi* (roan) horse, *bidi*; a dried-up n. *kauda*, *koda*.

O! interj. *ya*, *af*, *ashā*, *ap*.

oak, i.e. African o., n. *gwinki**, *namijin kadanya*.

oath, n. *rantsuwa*, *safirchi**; to take an o. *rantse* and *yin rantsuwa*; a common oath is *wallahi*, i.e. by Allah!

oats, wild o. *bunsurun daji*.

obduracy, n. *taurin zuchiya*, *matauriyar zuchiya*.

obdurate, adj. *da taurin zuchiya*.

obedience, n. *da'a*, *fisa'a* (K.).

obedient, cf. he is disobedient *ba shi da'a*.

obeisance, do, v. *yin sujada*, *runsuna*, *rusuna*, *yin afi*, he did o. to him *ya yi masa afi*.

obey, tr. v. *bi*, *ji*; to o. a command *kiyaye magana*, also *bi* (or *ji*) *magana*.

object, n. *abu*, e.g. a wonderful o. *abin mamaki*; a delightful o. *abin murna*; a sad o. *abin tausayi*.

object, tr. v. *ki*; to o. to labour etc. *yin kiwuya* (or *kyuya*); to o. to an agreement *walwale*.

objection, n. *kiwuya*, *makan-gara*.

obligatory, *lazumtache*, see **necessary**.

obliterate, tr. v., see **blot out**.

observance, religious, n. *ada*.

observe, tr. v. 1. see **notice**.

2. (to comply with, e.g. the commandments of God) *rike*, *rika*, *riki*; to o. a promise *damre magana*, *chika magana*, *kula bisa magana*.

obstinacy, n. *kin ji*, *shishige*, *taurin kai*.

obstinate, adj. *mai-kin ji*, he became more o. *ya kara shishigi*.

obtain, tr. v. *same*, *sami*, *samo*, *riske*, *riski*, *ruska*, *chi**.

obtained, to be, v. *samu**.

obvious, adj. *zahiri*.

occasion, n. (time of an

occurrence) *loto, lotu, lauto* (S.), *lokachi**.

occupation, n. 1. (a being occupied or busied) *shagali, safara* (S.), e.g. the occupations of this world *shagalin duniya*.

2. (a trade, profession etc.) *gwani**, *sana'a, anneshuwa*.

occupied, to be *yin safara*.

odd, adj. 1. (strange) *bako*.

2. (uneven) *mara*; even or o. *chika ko mara*.

odour, n. *wari, wardi*, frequently of a bad, disagreeable odour, so also *doyi, dwai* (S.); an agreeable or sweet o. *kamshi*; concr. a thing producing an agreeable o. or scent *abin kamshi*; to get or emit a bad o. *zaman wari, yin wari, ruɓa* or *riɓa*; to perceive such an o. *jin wari*.

oesophagus, *garera, jannai* (S.).

of, prep. (genitive) *na*, fem. *ta*; also expressed by the connective forms in *-n*, fem. *-r, -l*; e.g. history of the kings *labari na sarakuna* or *labarin sarakuna*. The genitive relation is often expressed by the addition of a possessive pronoun, thus, the house of the king *gidan sariki* or sometimes *sariki gidansa*.

off, adv., e.g. far off, at a distance *off daga nesa*; to be o. (to depart) *tafi*; to come o. (to happen) *faru*; to go o. (to escape) *fiche, tsira, gudu**; be o. ! *arr*.

offence, n. 1. (displeasure) *haushi*; to feel o. *jin haushi*.

2. (transgression, sin) *zamba* or *zanba, zunufi* or *zunubi*, pl. *zunufai*.

3. (an annoyance) *alale, abin alale*.

offend, tr. v. 1. (to commit a transgression) *yin zamba, yin zunufi*.

2. (to annoy) *alale*.

offer, in bargaining, to make an, v. *taya, yin tayi*; an o. is made *an taya*.

officer, n. *zarumi, zaromi, zarmi* or *jarumi*, pl. *zarumai*; spec. o. at court *turaki, bafada*.

officers, n., a king's o. *fadawa*, q.v.; spec. one of the chief o. *ma'aji*; for non-commissioned o. in English employ *masu-igiya* (i.e. bearers of stripes) is used.

official, n. *galadima**.

offspring, n. *diya, iri*, pl. *irare, zuriya, zuri'a*.

often, adv. *sau tari, sau dayawa*.

oil, n. *mai*; any dark o. *ala-*

yadi; spec. castor o. *main zurma*; o. from ground or monkey-nut *main gyada*; o. from the *kwakwa* palm *main ja*, *alayadi*; o. obtained by distillation from sesamum seed (cf. *samsam*) *main ridi*; o. from the seeds of the shea-butter tree *main kadanya*; *meni* o. tree *mamijin kadanya*; a large fish from which o. for eating is obtained *gini*, *shambana* (S.), *zau*; o. palm *kwakwa*, *gima* (S.).

oily, to be or become *nāshe*, *nāshi*.

ointment, n. *main shafewa*, *jibda*.

okra, (plant) *kubewa*.

old, adj. *tsofo*, fem. *tsofuwa*, pl. *tsoffi*, *tsojaffi*, *tsofoffi*; o. age *tsufa*; to grow o. *tsofa*, *tsofe*, *tsufa* and *yin tsufa*; he is o. *yayinsa ya wuche*; an o. man with bent back *takoko*; o. woman *gyatuma*, *jatuma*; to be older than *girme*; o. clothes *ragga*, pl. *ragguna*; to make o. (i.e. to wear out) *tsofe*; see **aged**.

old, of, adv. *dā* and *lokachin dā*; as of o. *kaman na dā*.

olden, in...time, adv. phr., see prec.

olive, tree, n. *zaiti**.

on, prep. *bisa* and *a bisa*, e.g.

o. a horse *bisa doki*; o. a hill *a bisa tudu*.

once, adv. *sau daya*; to do a thing o. *taḅa*, e.g. I saw him o. *na taḅa ganinsa*; at o. (forthwith), I will go at o. *zan riḅa tafiya*; o. (in former times) *lokachin dā*; in a weaker sense (on one occasion), e.g. there was o. a man *mutum ke nan* or *akwai wani mutum*.

one, num. adj. *daya*; o. of you *dayanku*; o. another *junansu*; o. at a time *daya daya*; o. here o. there *daya daya*; not even o. (in negative sentence) *ko daya*; but o. *sai daya*; o. (i.e. French 'on' used as a prefix to verbs to form a kind of passive voice) *a*.

oneself, periphr. for, refl. pron. *zuchiya*, see **self**.

onion, n. *albāsa*, pl. *albāsoshi*; wild o. *habki*; spring o. *albāsa mai-künne*, *safa**; spec. onions cooked in soup *taushi*, *taushe*; leaves of onions *lawashi*.

only, adj. and adv. *makadaichi*, *mukadaichi*, *kadai*, *sai*, *sai dai*, *kawai*, *karwe* or *karwi*, e.g. he only *shi makadaichi* or *shi kadai*; there was nothing in it, stones o. *babu*

chikinta sai duwatsu; you have o. to stretch out your hand and take it *sai dai ka miƙa hannunka ka karba ta*; my o. brother *gūda kanena*.

onwards, adv. *gaba*; to go o. (to advance) *yin gaba, chin gaba*.

ooze, intr. v., also to o. out, *zuba, zubo*.

open, adj. (i.e. unabashed) *ƙirikiri*; an o. place *sarari*; come out into the o. *fīto sarari*.

open, to be, intr. v. *budu*; the way is o. *an shika hanya or hanya ta budu*; cf. seq.

open, tr. v. *buda, buɗi, buɗe, fuda, huda, wari*; to o. by making a hole in anything *fuda* or *huda*; to o. wide *bubbude*; to o. out *fida* or *fide*, e.g. of unfolding a standard; o. the umbrella *yaye lema*; to o. by untying *ɓale*.

opened, particip. *budadde*, fem. *budadda*, pl. *budadɗu*, also expressed by the pass. form *a buɗe*; to be o. *fudu*, e.g. when all the gates were o. *lokachin da dukan ƙofofi am buɗe su*.

opening, n. (aperture) *budi, baki*, pl. *bakuna*; (hole) *bariya*; (commencement) *fararwa*; the act of o. *budawa, fudawa*.

openly, adv. *a buɗe, a sarari, fai*.

ophthalmia, *āmōdari*.

opinion, in my o. *abin da na gani, a tsamanina*.

opponent, n. *abokin-gāba*, see **enemy**.

opportunity, n. *dama, zarafi, zarahi, sukuni* (S.), e.g. he had not the o. *ba ya samu dama*; I have o. to *ina da zarafi*; God give thee a favourable o. *Allah ya ba ka sa'a*; if I get an o. *idan na samu sarari*.

oppose, v. *hana, kara, karo, yin karo*, see **conflict**.

oppress, tr. v. *tsane, tsani, tsananche*.

oppressed, particip. adj. *ma-ƙaskachi, mai-ƙaskasta, ƙaskastache*.

oppression, n. *alhaki, tono, yaji*.

option, o. of sale *chinikin zaɓi*.

or, conj. *ko*. The correlatives either...or *ko...ko*.

orb, n. *guda**, its o. *gudanta*.

orchid, *manta uwa, muruchin bisa*.

ordeal, by water, n. *gwaska*.

order, n. 1. (custom, rule or method of procedure) *ada, tada, al'ada*.

2. (a command) *hakumchi, hukumchi, dolashi*.

3. adv. phr. in o. (in good order, correct) *daidai*; conj. in o. that *domin, don, in, har dai, a bisa*, e.g. he took medicine in o. that he might be cured *ya sha magani domin a warke shi* (or *shi warke*); in o. that not *domin kăda*, e.g. let us take great care in o. that we may not miss the way *mu tunane kwarai domin kăda mu rasa hanya*; in o. to *garin*, e.g. you and I will go out in o. to take a walk *ni da kai za mu tafi garin yawo*.

order, v. *hăkumta, hăkumche, hukumche, yin umarni, ka-darta*; the last used of God.

ordered, particip. (arranged) *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*.

orderly, an *maji-kira, majiya-kira*.

ordinance, n. *shari'a*.

ordure, n. *kashi*; see **dung**.

ore, iron, n. *tama*.

oribi (antelope), *batsiya*.

origin, n. *mafāri, ūsali, āsali, sabili, tūshiya*, e.g. the o. of a fable or story, i.e. what the fable explains or accounts for *dalīli*; their o. is the same *tushiyarsa daia*.

orion, (the constellation) *ma-halbi*.

ornament, n. 1. abstr. (embellishment) *ado*, e.g. for o. *naado*.

2. concr. ornaments *kayan ado*.

ornamental, adj. *na ado*.

orphan, n. *marāya*, fem. *marainiya*, pl. *marāyu*; orphans, i.e. children whose parents died soon after their birth who have been entrusted to strangers to bring up *ḍangana*.

orphanhood, *maraiichi*.

oryx, n. *mariri, marili*; white o. *walwaji, warwaji*.

ostentation, *fāde*.

ostrich, n. *jimiņa*, pl. *jiminu*.

other, pronominal adj. 1. (different) *dabam, daban*; o. words *maganganu dabam*.

2. correlatives, the o. *wan-čan, fem. wachan, pl. wa-ḍannan*; less emphatic of various members of a group, e.g. the one...theo., pl. some... others *wani, fem. wata, pl. wansu, wasu* or *wadansu* repeated, e.g. the one said yes the o. said no, quarrelling *wani ya che i wani ya che a'a suna yin gardama*.

3. o. than (equivalent to Engl. else) *sai*, this is seldom used except in negative statements, e.g. nothing other than blood *sai jini*; *bamda*, e.g. we have nothing o. than

this *ba mu da komi bamda wannan*; see **another**.

otter, African clawless o. *karen ruwa*.

ought, aux. v. 1. (personal construction) *wajaba, wajiba*, e.g. we o. to repent *mu wajaba tuba*.

2. (impersonal constr.) *kāmata, kāmache, wajiba*, e.g. *ya wajiba mu tuba* or *ya kāmata mu tuba*; *wajib* or *wajibi* is used with the v. to be, e.g. *wajibi ne (or ke) mu tuba*.

ounce, an o. weight *wakiya**, *wukiya**.

our, poss. pron. 1. suffixed *-mu* or *-nmu*, e.g. o. relations *danginmu*.

2. separate, when obj. possessed is masc. *namu*, when fem. *tamu*; thus, o. horse *doki namu*, o. mare *goḍiya tamu*.

ourselves, refl. pron., see **self**.

out, adv. *waje*, e.g. he has gone o. *ya tafi waje*; the fire has gone o. *wuta ta mutu*; o. of *dāga*, e.g. he took a stone o. of his pocket *ya fitas da dutsi daga aljifunsa*; to go o. or to put o. (used of a fire) *biche*.

outcry, *rakadi, suwa suwa*, see **cry**.

outdo, tr. v. (surpass) *fi, faye*.

outrun, tr. v. *rīgaya, rīga, tsēre, tsire*.

outside, adv. *a waje, waje* and *daga waje*; o. the town *bayan birni*.

outward, adv. *daga waje*.

oven, n., i.e. a pit for cooking bread in *tanda* (S.), *tanderu* (K.).

over, adv. (left, remaining) to be o. *wanza* and *wanzu, sawra*, what is o., n. *bur-bishi*; to be o. (to be finished) *ḱare*; o. and above, prepositional phr. *bamda*; o., prep. *bisa, a bisa*, with or without *ga*, e.g. he fell o. a big log *ya faḍi bisa babban itache*, he spread his gown o. the stones *ya shimfiḍa rigassa bisa ga duwatsu*.

overcharge, n. (an excessive price) *kūra*.

overcharge, v. (to charge an excessive price) *shirga* with *tsada* (dear), e.g. he overcharges *yana shirga tsada*.

overcome, tr. v. *rinjāya, rin-jayi, rinjaye, faskare, kāda, kāshe, ima, i*; sleep overcomes me *berchi ya kama ni*; see **overpower**.

overdo, to *shirga*.

over-eat, to *ginsu, gundura, gumde**.

overflow, intr. v. (of rivers)
yin gibi.

overflowing, used of a measure
amaiche.

overpower, tr. v. *kāshe, gaga-
ra, buwaye*; he overpowered
me *ya buwaye ni.*

overpowering, *rinjaya.*

oversee, to *wakilta.*

overshadow, to *inuwantad da.*

overstep, to *swaba, sāba.*

overtake, tr. v. *tāras da, tsare,
ishe, iske, chi ma, kwarari,
kwarare.*

overthrow, n. *kaye*, pl. *kayoyi.*

overthrow, tr. v. *birkichi,
birkiche; giche or gichi; jir-
kita, jirkiche; hankada, jefas
da (K.), jefad da (S.), jefashe
(Zanf.).*

overturn, tr. v. *tankade, kāshe,
kade, juya*; the latter used
with *da.*

overwhelm, to *yin kaye*; see
overthrow.

owe, tr. v. *hāda hannu da*,
also expressed by n. *bashi*
(debt), e.g. I o. him *ina da
bashinsa* (lit. I have his
debt); he owes me *shina da
bashina*; see **debt.**

owl, n. *mujiya*, pl. *mujiyai.*

own, tr. v. expressed by *ga* or
with pronouns *gare*, the pres.
form in *na* with *da*; *ke*, fem.
che with *da*; and by the

forms in *mai-*, e.g. I o. the
horse *doki gare ni, ina da
doki, ni ke da doki* or *ni ne
mai-doki.*

own, adj., e.g. my o. *nawa*,
with fem. obj. *tawa*; cf.
H. G. p. 24.

owner, n. *mai-chi, mai-abu*,
connective form *mai-abin*;
the forms in *mai-* frequently
express ownership, e.g. house
o. *mai-gida*; o. of a boat
mai-jirigi.

ox, n. *sa*, pl. *shanu*; *hurtumi*,
pl. *hurtumai*; o. with red
body and white face *buli*;
pack o. with wide spreading
horns *takarkari*, pl. *takari-
karai*; hole in nose of an o.
azirka, zari (S.).

ox-pecker (bird), *charki, tsar-
ki.*

oyster, freshwater o. *makan-
kari, kawa.*

pace, a *tāki*, pl. *tāke-tāke, tāki-
tāki.*

pack, tied up, n. *rizuma.*

pack, up, to, tr. v. (e.g. a load)
lapta, labda.

package, n. *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki.*

packet (e.g. of paper), n. *ri-
zuma, risma.*

pack-saddle, n. *sirdi, shirdi*,
pl. *siradi, sirduna, sirida,
siridda* or *sirada.*

pad, n. (placed on donkey) *lāheru, leferu, lafero, akumari*; (on head of carriers) *gamo, ganwo, matsetsi*; a p. at the back of a camel's saddle *sulāki*.

paddle, tr. v. *tunkuda* (or *tūka*), *jirigi*.

paddle, *fito*, used as a rudder, n. *matuki*.

paddles, coll. *karoki*, p. of a canoe, *fulafule* (S.), *filafili* (S.), *pilapili* (K.).

paddling, participial n. *tukawa*.

pagan, n. *arne*, pl. *asna* or *arna*; in a less strict sense (unbeliever) *kafiri*, pl. *kafirai* or *kafirawa*.

paganism, n. *addini na* (*asna* or *arna* or *addinin asna*, *kafirchi*; to fall back from Islam to p. *rinda*.

page, of a book, n. *warka, waraka, tabaka, taba'al takarda, shafi, shafe*.

pain, n. *zafi, azāba, alala, arkāne, kūda, masība, wahala, jitsa, marwa, raḍaḍi* (K.), *harbawa, zogi*; labour pains *wahalar haifuwa*; to feel p. *jin zafi, jin arkāne, shagi**.

pain, tr. v., to cause p. *azabta*.

painful, adj. *da zafi, da wuya, da zogi, mai-raḍaḍi* (K.).

paint, to *sifata, sifache, zāna*.

pair, a *wari*.

palace, royal, n. *fāda*, pl. *fadodi, dandalin sariki*.

palate, n. *dābori, dāburi*.

palaver, n. *kuchi*, pl. *kuchekuche, alāmari, shawara**.

Palestine, *sham**.

palisade, *kāwara*.

palm, of hand, n. *tāfin hannu*.

palm, n. (the tree) *deleb*, fan or Palmyra p. *giginya*, pl. *gigangani, giginyoyi* or *giginai, kāri**, the dum p. *goriba*, pl. *goribai, goribobi*; fronds of dum p. *kāba*; the oil p. *kwākwa, gima* (S.); flowers of a young p. tree *kilili*; wine p. *tukurruwa*; a bag made from leaves of the last *kororo*; nut of the *giginya* p. *ḳodago* (S.), *ḳurdugo*; p. leaves *tsaiwa*; p. oil *main ja*; p. wine from the *tukurruwa* p. *bam, bambi, bammī*; a species of p. from leaves of which hats and mats are made *kajinjiri*; beams made from the fan p. *kwangi*; cocoa-nut p. *kwakwan attagara*; the ball-like fruit of the fan or *deleb* palm *kwōlo*; the unripe fruit of this p. is called *kwāshini* (S.), shoots of the fan p. used as a vegetable *murichi, muruchi*.

palsy, *inna*.

pan, cooking, brass, with handle, n. *algidari, alkidari*.

pangolin, see **manis**.

panic, n. (sudden terror) *tunzuruwa, tunzura, razana, champi*.

pannier, grass, n. *gufa, gufata, adila*.

pant, intr. v. *yin sheḍa, she sheḗa*.

panther, *rabji**, *rabbi**, *damisa**.

panting, n. *hāki* (S.), *shashaki*.

pap, n. (of the breast) *nono*, pl. *nonna, nonnaye*.

papaw, n., see **pawpaw**.

paper, n. *takarda*, pl. *takardu*; a p. (a document) *laya*; a sheet of p. *taba'al takarda*.

parable, n. *misali**, *almara*; to speak in parables *yin misali, kwatamta, kwatanta*.

paradise, n. *aljana*.

paragraph, of the Koran, n. *izufi*.

parakeet, (Agapornis pullaria) *tsiriya*; see **love-bird**?

parallel, that which is, or like, adj. *mai-maki*.

parallel, to make, tr. v. *dai-daita*.

paralysis, *inna*.

paramour, *kwarto*.

parasite, n. (a hanger on at others' tables) *mai-kwaraka*.

parch, tr. v. *surya, soya, suya*.

parched, particip. *soyayye*, fem. *soyayya*, pl. *soyayyu*.

pardon, n. *gafara*.

pardon, tr. v. *gafarta, yafe*; as a polite expr. I beg your p. (excuse me) *gafara* or *ka gafarta ma ni*.

parent, n. *mahaifi*, pl. *mahaifa*.

parents, n. *uwaye, iyaye, bafayu*; cf. also prec.

parrot, n. *aku, jiljilmako*.

part, n. *rabi, rabo* or *rabu*, pl. *raberabe, wari, shashi, sashe* (S.), e.g. each of them shall receive his p. *kowannensu zai samu rabonsa*; (region) *waje*, pl. *wajeje*.

part, tr. v. (to separate) *raba*.

parting, n. *rabuwa, rabo*.

partition, n. (i.e. wall) *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai*.

partner, n. *abokin tara'iya*.

partnership, *karo*, cf. *kurḍin chaffa* (or *chappa*) the fees paid on the establishment of a partnership.

partridge, red-legged, n. *makarwa, makwarwa, fakara, pakara*.

parts, which make up a whole *jimilla*.

paschal lamb or **ram**, n. *ragon laya*.

pass, v. *wuche, fuche*; to p.

anyone on the path *goche* or *gwabche*; to p. the night *kwanā*, *kwanta*, *wuni*; to p. away *shuḍe*, *shuḍa*, *shuḍi*, *wuche* or *fuche*; to p. by *wulga*, *wulge*, *wurga*, *wuche*, *fuche*, *zāge*, *zwāge* (S.), *zāga*, *zāgi*; to p. near *gege*; p. on! *ku shige*; to p. over (to cross) *ketare*, (to skip words in book) *ratsa chingara*.

passage, a *mashigi*.

passionateness, n. *harāra*.

passover, feast corresponding with, n. *sallal laya*.

past, the, n. (former times) *dā*, *baya*, e.g. the wars of the p. *yakoḳi na dā*; the things of the p. *abubuwa na-baya*; a thing p. *abin baya*.

pastor, n. (shepherd) *makiyayi* or *makyayi*, pl. *makyaya*.

pasture ground, n. *wurin kiwo*, *makiyaya*.

pasture, v. tr. and intr. (to graze) *kiwo*.

patch, n. *banke*, *shafi*, *fito*, *shiga*, pl. *shiguna*.

patch, tr. v. (of cloth, clothes) *banke*, *toshe*, *shafi*, *shafē*.

path, n. *turba*, pl. *turbobi*, *hanya*, *hayya*, *haya*, pl. *han-yoyi*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *godabe*; a straight p. *hanya sosai*; a narrow p. *labi*; fig. the p. of religion or conduct

hanya or *tafarki*, e.g. the paths of Mussulmans *han-yoyin musulmi*.

patience, n. *hanḳuri*, *hakuri*, *hakurchi*, *hanḳura* or *hakura dangana*; a man of extraordinary p. *rakumin Allah*; to show p. (to be patient) *yin* or the forms ending in *-na* followed by *hanḳuri*, e.g. they have p. *suna yin hanḳuri* or *suna hanḳuri*.

patient, 1. adj. (calm, not fretful) *da hanḳuri*, *mai-hanḳuri*, *mai-hakurchi*, *da sanyin rai*; to be p. *jimri*, *juri*, *hanḳura*, *yin hanḳuri*; he is p. towards everyone *ba shi ḳosawa da mutane* cf. prec.

2. n. (a sick person) *maras-lafiya**.

patois, (i.e. bad Hausa) *bā-bauchi*, *baubauchi*.

pattern, a p., e.g. in cloth *zane*.

paw, *dagi*.

pawn, to *yin ramche*.

pawpaw, n., i.e. both the tree and the fruit *gwanda*, *gwanda* (S.).

pay, n. *lada*, *biya*, e.g. that is their p. *ladansu ke nan*; a soldier's deferred p. *kurḍin huji*.

pay, tr. v. *biya*, *yika*, *rama*; the last is also used in the sense

of to requite and to reward ;
to p. a debt *biya bashi* ; to p.
a second time or over again
kwatamtawa.

payment, n. *biya, lada*.

pea, earth p. *kwaruru, kwalu-
lulu, gyada* ; pigeon p. (Indian
dhal) *waken turawa* ; heart
p. *gautan kwado*.

peace, n. *lafiya, limāna, natsu,
natsuwa, wāli*, pl. *wale-wale* ;
there is p. between us *lafiya
tsukanin mu* ; you can travel
in p. *kana iya yin tafiya da
lafiya* ; p. of mind *daɗin
zuchiya* ; p. ! (a salutation)
sallama ; to be at p. *yin
wāli*.

peace-maker, n. *matsakanche,
maitsakanta husuma*.

peak, n. *kai*, e.g. p. of a hill
kan tudu ; spec. p. of a
saddle *kwachiya* ; the front
p. of a saddle *kwachiyar gaba* ;
its hind p. *kwachiyar baya*.

peal, of thunder, n. *tsawa*.

pearl, n. *murjan** ; *idon zau-
ra* ; pearls coll. *kwan kifi*.

peck, tr. v. *koto*.

peculiarity, n. (of animate
beings) *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*.

peddler, *mai-sari*.

peel, n. (of fruits, etc.) *kwafsa,
kosfa**, pl. *kwasfofi, barwo,
tsiyayi*.

peel, v. l. tr. *kware, kwari*,

*bāra, bāre, bambaro, konkole,
kwalkwale, kankari, feke* (S.),
fere (K.).

2. intr. to p. or p. off, as
the skin from a blister *sale,
soale, swale* ; it peeled off *ya
baru*.

peep, to *leka, leki, leko, rēga* (S.),
see **spy**.

peering, p. into *rego* (S.).

peg, n. *maratayi*.

pelican, n. *kwasakwasa, jin-
jimi** ; a short-legged p. *bu-
bukuwa* (S.).

pelt, to, with, tr. v. *jejeji da,
jajjefa da* ; to p. with stones
jefa da duwatsu.

pen, n. l. (for writing) *alka-
lami*, pl. *alkalamai*.

2. (enclosure for sheep,
etc.) *garke*, pl. *garkuna, turke,
rugga, garge* (S.).

penalty, *jaraba*.

pendant, e.g. a p. stone worn
by women, n. *talhatina*, pl.
talhatinu.

penis, *azakari, bura, didi, ku-
tuma, mazakuta*, (of animals)
gandari, talolo (K.).

pennisetum, n. (Cenchrus ca-
tharticus) *karangiya* ; cf.
gero, maiwa.

people, n. *mutane*, pl. of *mu-
tum* (in the sense of popula-
tion and persons generally),
e.g. the p. of Lingi *mutanen*

Lingi; (connections, relations, etc.) *kibanta**; (followers, congregation, etc.) *al'umma*.

pepper, n., red or chilli p. *barkono*; a large green p. *tatasai*, *twashshi*, *tushi*; spec. a red p. (capsicum) *köle*, *tankwa*, *tsidifu*; Melegueta p. or 'grains of paradise' *chitta*; African, Guinea, or negro p. *kimba*; West African black p. *masoro*; the hotness or sharpness of p. *yaji*, pl. *yazuzzäka*.

peradventure, adv. *watakila*, *halama*.

perceive, tr. v. 1. gen. (to apprehend by the senses) *ji*; to p. by sight *gani*.

2. (of comprehending, understanding) *fahimta*, *ji*, also *sani*; to p. something wrong *farga*, e.g. I p. that you are cheating me *na farga da kai*.

percolate, to *yoya*, see **leak**.

perfect, adj. *ingatachi*.

perfect, tr. v. *chika*.

perforate, tr. v. *fuda* or *huda*, *soosoke*, *sosöke*; see **pierce**.

perforce, adv. *tilas*, *da tilas*, e.g. we had to go on board p. *mun hawa bisa jirigi da tilas*; see **force**.

perfume, n., see **odour**.

perhaps, adv. *watakila*, *halama*.

peril, n. *hatsari*.

perish, intr. v. (to be spoiled, wasted or destroyed in any way) *hata*, *hache*, *yakuche*, e.g. they p. together *sum hache tare*, *lalache*, *mache*; (to die) *mutu*, e.g. they perished of hunger *sun mutu da yunwa*.

perished, participial adj. *lala-tacheche*, fem. *lalatachchiya*, pl. *lalatattu*.

perishing, participial n. *lala-chewa*.

perjury, n. *kapara*, *kafara* (S.) to commit p. (to swear falsely) *yin kapara*.

permanence, n. *tabbatawa*.

permanent, adj. *matabbata* to make p. *tuturta*.

permission, n. *yarji*, *yardi yarda*, *izni*, e.g. grant me p. *ba ni yarji*; by the p. of God *da yardan Allah* or *bisa yaran Allah*.

permit, tr. v., see **allow**.

perplex, to *däme*, *däma*; see **confuse**.

perplexed, to be, intr. v. *dämu*.

perplexity, n. *tunzura*.

perquisite, a corn-dealer's p. *rara*.

persist, to *zage**, *dora**.

persistence, *nächi*, *nachiya* see **continuance**.

person, n. *mutum*, pl. *mutane*, also (with or without *mutum*) *wani*, fem. *wata*, pl. *wansu*, *wasu*, *wadansu*, *yasu*, e.g. some persons *wadansu mutane* or *wadansu*; a certain p. who shall be nameless *mutum kaza*.

perspiration, n. *jibi*, *gumi*, *zufa*.

perspire, intr. v. *yin jibi*, *zufa*, *yin gumi*.

persuade, tr. v. *lallasa*, *biko*, *fura kunne*, *kuta*.

persuaded, particip. pass. (sure or certain) is expressed by means of *tabbata*, etc., e.g. he was p. that...*ya tabbata*.

persuasion, *lallashi*, pl. *lalla-soshi*.

pervert, tr. v. (to lead from truth or right) *rude*.

perverted, part. pass. (misled) *rudadde*, fem. *rudadda*, pl. *rudaddu*; to be p. *rudu*.

pestilence, n. *alloba*, *aloba*, *bala'i**.

pestle, n. *kayan daka*, *tabariya*, pl. *tabare*.

pet, (favourite) *dan tatangi*.

pheasant, crow p. or lark-heel cuckoo *ragon maza*; rock p. *kazan dutsi*.

phoenix bird, *fufunda**.

physic, n. (medicine) *magani*, pl. *magunguna*.

physician, n. *mai-magani*, pl. *masu-magani*; see **doctor**.

pick, n. *dundurusu*, *kalme*.

pick, tr. v. (to choose) *zabe*, *zaba* or *zabi*; to p. a quarrel *tona fada*; to p. out *tsina*, *tsinche*, *tsunche* and *tsinta*, *kwalkwale*, *konkole*, *kwaqule*; to p. up *jide*, *sarbe*; to p. the teeth *kwaqwala*, *hakori*, *sakata hakori*.

pickaback, (a children's game) *dokin wuya*.

picked, part. pass. (chosen) *zababbe*, fem. *zababba*, pl. *zababbu*.

picking a thing off the ground, particip. n. *tsintuwa*, *tsuntuwa*.

pick-pocket, *dan sane*.

picture, n. *misali**, *kama**; his p. *misalinsa* or *kamansa*.

piece, n. *wari*, *bangori*; small p. of anything *tsibiri*, *chibiri* or *chibri*, *gutsure*, pl. *gutsatsari*, *tarfi*, *guntu*, *gutsi*; a small fragment *guntun abu*; to break a p. off *gutsuri*.

pieces, to tear to, tr. v. *tsatsatsaga*.

pierce, tr. v. *fuda*, *huda*, *huji*, *soka*, *soke*, *soki*, *yin sakiya*, *tune*, *zarta*; intensives, to p. many holes *fufuji*, *furfuje*,

huhuda; to p. through *sos-
soke*.

piercing, n., e.g. of the skin by
an arrow *sakiya*, *soka*, pl.
soke-soke.

pig, *gursunu*, pl. *gursuna*, *ala-
de**; wild p. and red river hog
aladin daji, *durungu*; wart
hog *gyado*, *gadu*, fem. *gado-
niya*, pl. *gyadodi*, *gyaduna*,
alhanzir, *mugun dāwa*, *rishi*.

pigeon, n. *tantabara*, pl. *tanta-
baru*; fruit p. or green p.
biribiri or *kurchiyar gamji*,
see **dove**.

pike, n. (spear) *mashi*, pl. *ma-
sussuka* or *masu*.

pile, n. (heap) *taru* or *taro*, pl.
tarori.

pile up, tr. v. *tāra*, *tattāra*,
hāda, *tūla*.

piles, *kūrğa* (K.), *basur**.

pilfer, v. *sata*, *yin sata*, *sache*,
see **steal**.

pilferer, n. *mai-sata*.

pilgrim, n. *hāji*, *hajji* (S.),
pl. *hajoji*.

pilgrimage, n. *haji*; to go on
the p. *haji* and *tafi haji*,
ziyarta.

pill, n. *chibiri** or *chibri**.

pillage, n. (booty) *abin kwache*.

pillage, tr. v. *kwache*, e.g. he
conquered them, he pillaged
their property *ya chi su ya
k wache dukiyansu*.

pillar, n. *gimshiki*, *gumshiki**,
pl. *gimshikai*.

pillow, n. *matashin kai*, *ma-
jingini*.

pimple, *bar-ni-da-mugu*.

pin, n. *tsiko**, *tsinke**; a p.
used for pressing cotton *dan
bida*; a large wooden p. used
in winding the thread on the
cylinder which is fixed in the
shuttle *tangori*.

pincers, n. *kwāguwa*, *hantsaki*,
*madēbin kayā**.

pinch of, to take, v. *tsakūra*,
gutsura.

pinch, tr. v. *tsamuka*, *tsakūra**,
*tsamka**, *tsungule*, *yin kwān-
ta*, *muntsini*.

pinching, n. *kwanta*, *tsamuki*.

pinnacle, n. *koḳuwa*, *koḳowa*.

pipe, tobacco-, n. *tukunyar
taba*, *lofin taba*.

pistol, n. *akotiya*, *algaderiya*.

pit, n. *rami*, *rame* (S.), pl.
ramuna or *ramu*, *ganwa*;
spec. a deep wide p. *han-
garma**, *kwāri**; p. for cook-
ing bread in *tanda* or *tan-
deru*; p. for storing corn
tsunjiya; p. for game to fall
into *hāḳo*, pl. *hāḳōki*, *āra*;
a cesspit *salga*, pl. *salgagi*;
dye-p. *marina*, pl. *marin-
nai*.

pitch, tr. v. l. (to cast, throw)
jefa.

2. spec. to p. a tent *kāfa* *lema* (or *laima*).

pitcher, n. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*, *tukunya*, pl. *tukwane*, *tukane*; *randa*, pl. *randuna*; a p. with a narrow mouth *dan tozo*.

pitfall, n. *haḳo*, pl. *haḳoḳi*.

pride, n. *tausai*, *tausayi*, *jujaye*, *sauna*; to have or feel p. *yin* (or *jin*) *tausai*, *jika*; what a p.! *abin tausayi*, *tazanko*, *tanzanko*.

pride, tr. v., cf. prec.

place, n. *wūri*, pl. *wurare*; *waje*, pl. *wajeje*, *bigēri*, *bige*, *bigi*; (district, country) *gari*; an uninhabited p. *dāwa*; in circumlocution to supply the want of various special nouns and adjectives, e.g. a p. to flee to (refuge) *wūrin gudu*; so also *gida*, e.g. p. or abode of pain *gidan azaba*; a secret p. *lolokin asiri*; in that p. *wurinnan*, a *wūrin nan*, *dāga nan*, e.g. there are many hippopotami in that p. *akwai dorinnai dayawa daga nan*; in p. of (instead of), e.g. in his place *gurbinsa*, *bigerinsa*, *wurinsa*; the last also = at his p., i.e. near him, with him; to give p. to, let him take the p. of another *shi koma matsayin wani*; an-

other was put in his p. *an sa wani wurinsa*; to take p. *faru*.

place, nouns of, these are formed by means of prefix *ma-*, e.g. hiding p. *maḳoya*, kitchen *madafa*, inn *mashidi* from *ḳoya*, *dafa*, *shida* respectively.

place, tr. v. *sa*, *sanya*, *kāfa*, *aje*, which denotes also to p. aside, *ḳora*, *aza* or *aza ma*; to p. on, e.g. he placed me on the camel *ya ḳora ni bisa ga raḳumi*; to p. on the ground (e.g. a load) *jibe*, *jefo**, *ḳasa*; to p. together (e.g. for the purpose of comparison) *kwatanchi*; to give p. *kau*.

placing, of a thing, participial n. *sawa*; p. one thing upon another *riḳiye*.

plague, n. 1. (pestilential disease) *alloba*, *ḳawainiya*, *rangāza*; 'he caught the p.' turn by 'the p. caught him' *alloba ta kama shi* (or *same shi*).

2. (an annoyance) *alale*, *wahala*.

plague, tr. v. (to vex) *wahalshe*, *ḳawainiyas da*; see **annoy**.

plain, n. *fili*, pl. *filaye*, *sarari*, *karkara*, pl. *karkarori* or *karkaroni*, *kanga*; the battle p. *kangan fada*.

plain, adj. (of language simple and open) *a sārāri*.

plait, tr. v. *tubka, tufka, tupka, tukka, tumka* (S.), *yin kitso*.

plaiting, *sāka*; p. of mats *sākar zana*; (of hair) *doka, kitso*; p. of hair in two lines *jaki*; hasty p. of woman's hair *kumbuchi*.

plaits, coll. n. *kaikainya*, (of woman's hair) *bijaji, buji-buji, biji-biji*.

plan, n. (scheme, device) *wayo, wayau, dabara*.

plank, n. *faskare, gungume*, pl. *gungumai, rumfa*, pl. *rumfuna, kange**.

planks, to make into, v. *yin faskare*.

plant, tr. v. 1. (to set or sow in the ground) *shibka, shipka, shuka, yin shibka, dāsa, dashi, dashe*.

2. (to set or place) *sa*, e.g. there was no place to p. our footsteps *babu wurin da mu sa matakai bisa*.

plant, n., i.e. a cutting *dasashe*.

plantain, n. *ayaba* applied both to tree and fruit, also used to denote the banana.

planter, n. *manomi*.

planting, of seeds, n. *biso*.

plants, small, coll. n. *shibka, shipka, shuka*.

plaster, tr. v. (of walls etc.)

yāba, yābe, dampara, damfara; (of floors) *mamari*.

plastered, participial adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

plastering, *yābe*, pl. *yābe-yābe*.

plate, n. *tangaram, tangaran*; a p. made of plaited grass *taitai*, pl. *taitaye*; see **dish**.

play, n. (the doing of anything for amusement) *wargi, gyauga**, *wasā*; hail to you at your p. (salutation to persons at p.) *sanunku da wargi*.

play, v. (of sport, amusement) *yin wargi*; (of music) *yin wasa, yin kidi*; the last particularly applied to instruments struck or beaten.

player, on drum, n. *makidi*.

playing, n. (of amusement) *wargi, gyauga**; (of music and especially drumming) *kida* or *kidi*, *molo*, pl. *moluna*.

plaything, n. *abin wargi*; spec. p. made from a seed pod *kachau-kachau*; see **rattle**.

pleasant, adj. *mai-dadi, da dadi*.

please, tr. v. *sa dadi, gama, gamshe*, e.g. it pleases me *yo game ni* or *ya gamshe ni*; p. (elliptical = if you p.) *mana* e.g. come here, p. *zo mana*.

p. (i.e. allow me) *bari*; p. do
yarje mana.

pleased, to feel, intr. v. *jin*
dadi.

pleasure, n. (agreeable sensation or emotion) *dadi, ni'ima*; (a gratification) *abin dadi, abin murna*.

pledge, n. *jingina, dangana*; p. held for money owing *kamuwa**.

pledge, tr. v. (to leave anything as a p.) *jingina, tolma*.

Pleiades, pr. n. *tarsowa*.

plentiful, to be p. *yalwata*.

plentifully, adv. *tari, kainnain**.

plenty, n. *yawa, dayawa, kari, tari, tuli, bāro, dumbuje, malala, tinjim*, e.g. p. of words *yawan magana* or *magana dayawa*; p. to eat *zari, zwari, an chiya**.

pliancy, *rauni**.

plot, n. *wayo, wayau*, to form a p. *gama*.

plot, v., to p. together *damra dabāra*.

plough, n., spec. a large hoe bent back like a small p. *galma* (S.), *garma* (K.).

plough, to *fuda, huda, kafche, kabche*.

lover, a kind of, n. *kyare-kyare, zakaran yaki, zakaran assuba, dan raguwa*; black-

headed p. or 'Niger bird' or 'crocodile bird' *ladin kogi, jakin gulbi* (S.).

pluck, tr. v. *chira, chire, chiro* or *tsira, tsire, tsiro, dēbe, dība, dēbo, tuge, tumbuke, zumbuke* (S.); (to p. fruit etc.) *tsinki, tsunke, tsinko, tsige, tsitsige*; (to p., e.g. a fowl) *fige, figi, piga, tuza*; to p. out *yin dono*; plucked *figagge*, fem. *figaggiya*, pl. *figaggu*.

plucking, n. *figa*.

plum, n., gingerbread p. *gawasa*, pl. *gawasai, gawasuna* and *gawasoshi*; hog, Spanish or Jamaica p. *tsadal lamarudu*; a tree with plum-like fruit *danya, loda* (S.).

plunder, n. *abin kwache*.

plunder, tr. v. *kwache*.

plunge, v. 1. tr. (to immerse) *tsoma, nutse, nuche*.

2. intr. *fadi*, e.g. he leaped plunging headlong into the water *ya tuma ya fadi ya gangara chikin ruwa*; see also *dive*.

plural, n. (grammatical term) *jam'i**.

pneumonia, pleuro-p. of cattle *balagiwo, malagiwo* (S.), *aran-gaza* (K.).

pocket, n. *aljifu*, pl. *aljifai* or *aljifuna*.

pod, n. (of nuts, etc.) *kobsa*,

kwasfa, kopsa, kobso, kwanso ;
p. of the locust tree (*dorowa*)
sabāda, safada ; p. of guinea-
corn *tsirgagiya*.

poem, n. (in the sense of metri-
cal composition, song) *waka*.

poet, n. *mai-waka*.

point, n. *koḳuwa**, *tsini, ga-
ratse* ; points above or below
letters *wāsali*.

point, out, tr. v. *nuna* or *nuni*,
gwada, gaya.

pointed, adj. *da tsini*.

poison, n. *dāfi* ; a p. given in
food *sammu, kwarche* ; in-
gredients used in making
poisons used for smearing
arrows *uwal dāfi, zabgai**,
yabi, kwankwani (*Strophan-
thus hispidus*), *taramniya**
(*Combretum*), *koḳiya* (*Strych-
nos spinosa*), *sanya* or *uwar
magunguna* (*Securidaca longi-
pedunculata*), *tururuḳi* (*La-
siosyphon krausii*), *zabon
dāfi* ; a p. used for destroying
mice *madat, madas*.

poison, to *gubanta, sammache*.

poisoned, participial adj. *da
dafi*.

poke, to p. with a stick *zun-
gura, zungau*.

poking, e.g. with the elbow
gobso, gwabre.

pole, n. *gimchiki, gimshiki*,
esp. used of the middle sup-

porting p. of house ; p. of
tent *tankari, kekimaḳa* (S.) ;
poles used in supporting a
tent coll. *shikashiki*, pl. *shika-
shikai*, cf. **post** ; iron p. *karko* ;
a p. in the middle of a bu
shushuniya, shishiniya ; a p.
used for purposes of irrigation
lambu ; a p. carried across
the shoulder from either end
of which a load is suspended
taula.

policeman, *ḍan sanda, dogari* ;
the office of a p. *dogarchi* ;
the chief of the police *ma-
kama*.

polish, tr. v. *gogi* or *goge*,
chudanya.

pollute, tr. v. *yin haram*,
ḳazamta, ḳazamtad da.

polluted, adj. *janaba, ḳazami*.

pollution, n. 1. gen. *ḳazamta*,
ḳazanta, janaba, jaraba,
ja'ira.

2. (religious or ceremonial
uncleanness) *haram, abin ha-
ram*.

polo, the game of *wasan ḳwālo**.

pomegranate, n. *rūman, ruma-
niya*, pl. *rumanina, rumanai*

pommel, n. (of a saddle) ; see
peak.

pommel, tr. v. (to beat) *buga*,
bubbuga, see **beat**.

pomp, n. *sitira* or *sutura*.

pond, n. a large stagnant p

bingi, gaji, kududdufi, kududdufi, dankam, tabki, tafki, tapki, see **pool**.

ony, n. *kūru* and *doki kūru*, *dukushi*, fem. *dukusa*.

ool, n. *tabki, tapki* or *tafki, rafi, gaji*, pl. *rafuna* or *rafuffuka, fadama, korama, dankam, tauga*, see **pond**.

oor, adj. *talaka* (K.), *talakka* (S.), pl. *talakkarwa; makaskachi*, pl. *makaskasta*; to be p. *talauta, tsiyache*.

oor person, a, n. *talaka, mai-talaka, matalauchi, mai-tsiya, matsiyachi, gyande*, fem. *gyandiya*, pl. *gyandaye, gindau, tagajan*.

opping, into a hole *kudus*.

oppy, yellow Mexican p. *kwarko*.

orch, n. *shigifa*, pl. *shigifu* and *shigifofi*; spec. a small p. *shirayi*; a p. with double entrance *zature*, pl. *zauruka, zaurukka*.

orcupine, n. *beguwa, makaya* (lit. thorny), *makibiya* (lit. possessor of arrows).

orridge, n. *fūra*; spec. p. of guinea-corn and rice *surki*; p. of beans, guinea-corn or (in N. Africa) macaroni *wasawasa*.

orter, n., see **carrier**.

ortion, n. *rabo* or *rabu*, pl.

raberabe, kashi, kashe; a p. (when one of two or more portions) *shashi* or *sashi**, *sashe* (S.), *fasali*, see **piece**.

possess, tr. v., this idea is expressed: 1. by the pronominal forms ending in *na* with *da*, e.g. I possess much money *ina da kurdi dayawa*.

2. by *ke* with *da*, e.g. all the property that you p. *dukiya duka da ku ke da shi* (or *ita*).

3. by the prep. *ga* or with pronouns *gare* (is to or belongs to), e.g. he possesses no money *babu kurdi gare shi*.

possessed, e.g. with evil spirit, pl. *masu-bori, masu-boli*.

possession, n. l. abstr., e.g. to gain p. of a kingdom *chin saranta*.

2. concr. pl. possessions *dukiya, tarkache*.

possessor, n. *mai-abu* connective *mai-abin, mai-chi*; the idea is often expressed by the prefix *mai-*, e.g. the p. of a farm or a boat, *mai-gona, mai-jirigi*; the p. of a horse *mai-doki*.

possible, *yuruwa, yiyuwa*.

possibly, adv., see **perhaps**.

post, n. (of door) *kwabrin kofa, kwilkin kofa, shishike* (S.), *shishiniya* (S.), *shushuniya* (K.); a p. for tethering

horses *turke, tuke*; a p. for supporting roof *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*.

posterior, adj. (both of time and space) *baya, na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*, e.g. the p. limbs *gabobin baya* or *gabobi na-baya*; the hinder part of an animal *kuturi*.

post-haste, *zuwan manzo*.

postpone, tr. v. *fāsa, jinkirta*, see **delay**.

postponement, *ko-ta-kwana*.

postponing, particip. n. *fasawa*.

pot, n. (of earth or iron) *tukunya*, pl. *tukane* or *tukwane*; a metal p. *karife* or *karipe*; a large earthen p. with a narrow mouth *randa*, pl. *randuna, kwatarni* (S.), *kwatarniya* (K.); a large earthen p. used as oven *tanda* or *tanderu*; a water p. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*.

potash, broken p. *tsabage* (S.); a kind of hard p. *taḡarna, tafarna*.

potato, sweet (i.e. *Ipomoea batatas*), n. *dankāli*; various species are: *kūdaku, lawur* (S.); Kaffir p. *rizga*.

potent, adj. *isheshe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *isassu*; see **powerful**.

potter, n. *mai-tukunya*, pl.

*masu-tukunya, mai-tukane, mai-yumḡu**, *magini*.

pouch, n. *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*; a sort of leathern p. *zabira*; a p. or crop of a bird *maroro malolo*.

poultry, n. *kaji*, pl. of *kāza* fowl.

pounce, n. *sura*.

pounce, to *kawo sura*.

pound, n. (of 12 ounces) *rotal*, pl. *ratalai**.

pound, tr. v. *dāka, dandaḡa, dandaḡi, daddaḡa, rarratse, kirḡa, kirḡe* (without object), *ribde, rifde, rubde*; a woman who pounds corn *mai-koda, mai-kodiya*.

pounded, p. flour *ribdi, rubudi*.

pounding, n. (e.g. of yams) *kirḡi, rubudi*; the action of a woman p. in a mortar *lugude*; the sound of p. *rupkarupki*.

pour, v. tr. and intr. (also to pour out, down, off, away, etc.) *zūba, zūbe, zūbo*; tr. only *zūbas, zūbas da, zubad da* and *zubda, zubshe* (Zanf.) *dole, tūshe, bulbula, bungula tarfa*; I poured out every drop of it *na zūbas da shi babu kingi*; intr. only *zubu* e.g. the rain is pouring or pours down *ruwa ya zubu* to p. water in a jet *zurara* to p. out (or scatter) *tsiyayi*

to p. out grain so that chaff may blow away *shika*; to p. over (to overflow), intr. *tuda* or *tude*, tr. *tudas da*.

poured, to be p. out like wheat through a sieve or like water, intr. v. *tarara*.

pouring, *zūbi*, *zūbawa*.

pout the lips at, to, v. (in derision) *zunde* and *yin zunde*.

poverty, n. *talauchi*, *talauchiya*, *tsiya*.

powder, n. (gunpowder) *albarus* or *albarud*.

powder, tr. v. (to reduce to p.) *daddaga*.

power, n. 1. (faculty of doing or causing anything) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*, *yi*; by the power of God *da yin Allah*.

2. (bodily or material strength) *karifi*.

3. (political or social p., authority, influence) *hakimi*, *dawla*.

4. (surpassing p., excellence) *fiko*.

powerful, adj. 1. gen. *isashe*, *isheshe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *isassu*, *mai-iko*.

2. (cf. prec. 2) *mai-karifi*, pl. *masu-karifi*, e.g. a p. man *mutum mai-karifi*.

3. spec. applied to God *kadiri*, see **mighty, strong**.

powerfully, adv. *da karifi*.

practice, n. *sabo*, e.g. no work in the world can be accomplished except by p. *aikin duniya duka sai sabo*; (customary procedure) *ada*, *tada*, *al'ada*.

practised, be, intr. v. *saba*, e.g. I am p. in this *na saba da wannan*.

praise, n. *yābo*, *kirari*, the last also=self-p.; (of praising God) *shukra*; self-p. *yābon kai*.

praise, tr. v. *yāba*, *shukra*; *yin yābo* and *yin kirari*; also expressed by nouns of prec. with the present forms in *na*, e.g. I praise thee *ina yabonka*.

praised, particip. adj. *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

prattling, n. *rawatsa*.

pray, tr. v. (whether of prayers to God or requests to men) *roka*, *yin roko*; construed with an acc. of the person or with *ga* (before pronouns *gare*); the thing asked is expressed either by the acc., e.g. I p. our Lord for that which I seek and for my needs *ubangijinmu ni ke roko komi ni ke bida da bukatata* or by a dependent clause, e.g. we p. to the Lord that we may obtain provision for our journey from the heathen *mu roki ubangiji*

mu yi guzuri da asna; intr. v. in a religious sense only *yin addu'a, yin salla, yin zikiri*; to p. for a person *sallashe**

prayer, n. *addu'a, salla, salati, zikiri**; call to p. about 4 p.m.

azuhur (S.), *azahar* (K.);

the man who calls to p. *ladan, ladāni, makiran salla, wazinu, wazanu* (S.); a leader in p. *limam, liman*, pl. *limami*; prayers said by a

mallam at a funeral *alfatiya*;

time of p. about 10 a.m.

walaha; the four attitudes

(Moslem) for prayer are

(1) standing up and looking

towards Mecca *kama*, (2) rais-

ing the hands and calling upon

Allah *rāka, rāka'a*, (3) bend-

ing down with hands on knees

ruku'u, (4) prostration *sajada*.

prayer-beads, (a flower) *idon zakara*.

prays, one who, n. *mai-salati*.

preach, v. *yin wa'azi** and *wa'azu*.

preaching, n. *wa'azi, wa'azu*;

p. in mosque after prayers

hutsuba (S.), *huduba* (K.).

precious, adj. (costly) *da tsada*.

precipitous, a p. rock *mikakken dutsi*.

precisely, *rab*, see **exactly**.

prefer, tr. v. *fi so, yin fin so,*

gwamache, e.g. we p. mutton to beef *mun fi so naman rago ya fi naman shanu*; I p. this to that *na fi so wannan da wanchan*.

preferable, to be, intr. v., see **better**, 1.

preference, *fin so*.

pregnancy, *kunika*.

pregnant, adj. *da chiki*; she is p. *ta chi wake*; to be p. *yin juna biyu*.

preparation, n. *shiri, shirya, tatali, tanadi* (S.), *jajibir, jajibera*, in a religious sense, e.g. day of p., i.e. day before any feast *ranan jajibir*.

prepare, tr. v. gen. *gyara*, e.g. to p. a way *gyara hanya, gyarta*; *shiriya* and *yin shiri*; used in the intensive form = p. diligently *shish-shiriya*; exclam. phr. p. ! *ka watane*.

prepared, particip. form *shiri-yayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*.

present, n. *kyauta*, e.g. I made him a p. *na yi masa kyauta, abin gaisuwa, tsaraba**, *kaiwa*; the last especially of a p. made to a king; spec. a fee paid for bringing a p. *tukwichi, tukwichi*; a wife's marriage presents to bridegroom *gāra*; a p. made to a

person on his arrival *sauka*; a first p. as a token that a larger one is to follow *garawa* (K.); a p. sent by the bridegroom to the bride several days before the wedding *lefe*; a p. given by a man when he sends for his wife *taskira*; a p. by a bridegroom *toshi*.

presently, adv. (soon after the present time) *yanzu yanzu*; (immediately) *nan da nan*.

preserve, tr. v. *kiyaye*, *kiyada* (S.), *kiyas da* (K.), *kiyashe*; in a looser sense *tsira*, *rayad da*.

president of the market, n. *sarikin kasuwa*.

press, tr. v. *taushe* (S.), *tausa* (K.), *mana*, *mani*, *matse*, *matsa*, *dāna*, *dāne*, *danfara*, *dankara*; to p. down *tawaya* or *tauwi*, *chāchāka*, *chusa*, *chushe*, *kimshe*; to p. a trigger *dane*; the trigger was pressed *an dana kunama*.

pressed, particip. adj. *tausashe*, fem. *tausashiya*, pl. *tausassu*.

presser, n. instr. *mataushi* found, e.g. in *mataushin kofa* a piece of wood to keep a door closed, *mataushin watika* signet.

pressing, particip. n. *taushewa*.

pretence, *riya*, *sāne*.

pretend, v. *maida kansa*, *riya*.

prettiness, *sha'awa* (K.), *shawa* (S.).

pretty, he is p. *shina da magāna*.

prevail over, v. *rinjayi* or *rinjaya*; also expressed by means of *fi*, e.g. I prevailed over the man *na rinjaya mutum* or *na fi mutum da karifi* or *mutum na fi kari-finsa*.

prevent, tr. v. *hana*, *tankwasa*, *dakile*, *tare**; to p. a person's leaving *hume*, e.g. I prevented his leaving *na hume shi*.

previous, adj. *na-fari*, fem. *ta-fari*; (of time long p.) *na dā*, e.g. p. time or age *loka-chin dā*; men of p. ages *mutane na dā* or *mutanen dā*.

previously, adv. *da fari*, e.g. why did you not tell me this p.? *domi ba ka fadi ma ni nan da fari?*

prey, n. 1., see **booty**.

2. (food of an animal of p.) *nama*, e.g. the lion catches deer, that is his p. *zaki ya kama bareyi ya chi su namansa ke nan*.

price, n. *kurdi*, *an taya*, *kīma*, *tamani**, *sāllama*, *haki**, e.g. what is its p.? *kurdiinsa nawa?* or *nawa an taya?* name

its p. *ba shi suna*; to fix a p. for *kawamata*, e.g. let their goods be gathered together and their p. fixed a *gangama dukiyansu a kawamata*; a reduction in p. *gwanjo*; to fall in p. *yin goino* (or *gwano*).

prick, tr. v. *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, *tsokana*; to p. much (intens.) *soosoke*.

prickle, n. (on grass, etc.) *kaya*, pl. *kayayyuwa*.

pride, n. *foma*, *homa*, *tama*, *tamanya*, *girman kai*, *būki*, *tashin kai*, *gatsina* (K.), *fadin zuchiya*, *fadin rai*, *gūri*, *fahari* or *fahri*, e.g. leave off p. *ku bar fahari*.

pride of India, (flower) *kurnan nasara*.

priest, *liman**.

prince, n. *amiru**; (son of a king) *maina**, *ḍan sariki*; princes *sarakuna*.

prison, n. *kurkuku*, *kilibu*, *kilulu*, *sadaka*, *salka*, *sarka*, *ḍakin dufu*, *wurin azāba*, *gidan kwaliba**; chief of a p. *bakurme* (K.), *bango* (K.); p. officer *bayare* (S.), *yari*, pl. *yarawa*.

prisoner, *kamamme*, *ḍan sadaka*.

privet, Egyptian p. *lalle*.

probe, to *kūre*.

procession, n. *jera*, *jere* or

jire; spec. a royal p. *banga banga*.

proclaim, v. 1. to make an official announcement or order *yin shela*, *yin yekuwa*.

2. to announce or publish *labarta*, *habarta**.

3. spec. to p. the end of the fast *yin gangamin azumi*.

proclamation, n. 1. (an official public announcement or order) *shela*, *doka*, *doki*, *kaliye*, *yekuwa*.

2. (deliverance of religious or moral instruction) *wa'azi*, *wa'azu*.

procrastinate, v., see *delay*.

procure, tr. v. *same*, *samo* and *sanu*.

procuress, *kawaliya*, *kahwaliya* (S.).

prodigy, *karāma*, see *wonder*.

produce, n. *ḍiya*, *yaya*.

produce, tr. v., to p. young or fruit *haife*; to p. evidence *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*.

profanely, to act, v., e.g. he acted p. *ya yi swaḥon Allah*.

profession, n. (of an art or craft) *gwani*; the termination *-chi* is often used to denote a person's p., e.g. the p. of a *boka* = *bokanchi*, the p. of a *malam* = *malamchi*.

profit, n. (both lawful and unlawful) *kūra*, *rība*, *moriya*;

unlawful p. *haramiya*; to make a p. *chin rība, mori*; a man who sells a second time at a p. *mai-sari*; men who make unlawful p. *masu-riba da kūra*; to p. by *anfāni, anfāne*.

profitable, to be, v. *yin moriya*.

profligacy, *karma, karuwanchi*.

profligate, n., a p. *ashēge, farka*; a p. man *fāsiki*, pl. *fāsikai, dan karma, mai-yin zina, mai-zina, mai-nema*; a p. woman *fūsika, karuwa*.

profligate, adj. *shege*; to be p. *yin zina*.

prohibit, to *hāna*.

prohibited, a p. place *bataka, hurumi**; it was p. *an yi hani*.

prohibition is expressed by *kada*, also by *kada dai*, e.g. do not hinder them *kada ka hana su* or *kak ka hana su*.

prohibition, n. *hani, doka*, kashedi, kasheji* (S.).

project, to *gota*; (e.g. of a single man in a row) *saba, zaba, hillo, bulo, bullo*.

prolong, tr. and intr. v. *dadi, dade, tsawo, wanzu*, e.g. may God p. your life *Allah shi dade da ranka*; impers. we prolonged our stay here *mun zamna nan ya dade*; the last idea can be expr.

by *dade* alone in personal constr., e.g. I prolonged my stay in Tripoli to four months *na dade ga Tarabulus wata fudu*.

promenade, intr. v. *yawo, yin yawo*.

promise, n. *alkāwali, alkāwari, wa'adi*; to make a p. *yin alkāwali*; to break a p. *sāki* and *warwari alkāwali*; to keep a p. *chika alkāwali, chika magana, kama magana*; a p. to pay *waka*.

promise, v. *yin baki daya, yin magana daya*.

prone, (on the back) *a rigin-gini*.

pronounce, v. (to declare openly or positively), see *declare*.

pronunciation, n. *halshe, harshe*, pl. *halshina* or *halussa*.

proof, n. *shaida*; to adduce p. *kai* or *kawo shaida*; p. (e.g. from the Koran) in support of conduct or statement *dalili*.

prop, n. *mādōgara, makari, tankari*; see *bar*.

prop, to, v. *dogare, tankare*.

propagate, tr. v. (to have young) *haife, haife diya*.

propel, tr. v., e.g. a canoe *tunkuda*.

proper, adj. *na-kwarai, fem. ta-kwarai, halal, halas, sosai*,

daidai; that which is p. *sawaba*.

properly, adv. *kwarai*, *daidai*, *tamau*, *sosai*, *bajaru*.

property, n. (goods, riches) *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* and *dukiyoyi*, *jäli*, *mallaka*, *tarkache*; a man of p. *mai-dukiya*, *mai-abin dukiya*, *mutum da dukiya dayawa*, *mai-wadachi* and *mai-wadata*.

prophecy, n. *annabanchi*, *annabchi*, *waliyanchi*.

prophecy, v. *yin annabanchi*.

prophet, n. *annabi*, pl. *annabawa*; the office of a p. *annabanchi*.

proprietor, n. gen. (owner) *mai-abu*, conn. *mai-abin*, *mai-chi*; (house owner) *ubangiji*; see under *mai*.

propriety, n. *halalchi**

prosper, v. 1. tr. *ba* (or *bada*) *arziki*, e.g. may God p. you *Allah shi ba ku arziki*.

2. intr., see **prosperous**.

prosperity, n. *arziki*, *abki*, *afki*, *auki*, *katari*, *katarta**, *yalwata*, *bijinta*, *alkariya*, *gata*, *gatanchi*; he has enjoyed p. *ya sha ruwa*; he has enjoyed p. in this world *ya sha duniya*.

prosperous, adj. *da arziki*, *mai-arziki*, *mai-katarta*; he is p. *ya yi bijinta*; he

shall not be p. *ba a yi masa arziki ba*.

prostitute, n. *karuwa*, *kwar-tuwa* (fem. of *kwarto*), *falka*, *farka*, *mai-nema*.

prostrate oneself, to, v. *yin afi*, *kafa goshi*, *gurfana* and *yin gurfani*; (of prostration in worship) *yin sujada*, also with *na*, e.g. follow after God, p. yourselves before Him *ku bi Allah kuna sujada*.

prostrate, to be, v. *rubda* (or *rufda*) *chiki*, *yin äfi*.

prostration, n. (i.e. in prayer) *raka*.

protect, tr. v. *tsära*, *tsäri*, *tsäre*, *tsäro*, *batäka*.

protection, n. *lamuni**, *käriya**; he has the king's p. *ya shiga rigar sariki*.

protector, n. (defender) *maimaimako*.

protopterus, n. (mud-fish) *gai-wa*; the noise made by the p. *chiwuki*.

protrude, to *zazzale*.

protruding, e.g. of an eye after a blow *zazzalo*.

proud, adj. *mai-girman kai*, pl. *masu-girman kai*, *da girman kai*, *mai-girima*, *mai-foma*, *mai-homa*.

proudly, adv. *da girman kai*; to speak p. *yin raha*; to

walk p. *taḱama*; one who walks p. *mai-taḱama*.

prove, tr. v. (to establish the truth of anything) *gaskata* or *gaskanta*; (to evidence by testimony of any kind) *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*; (by exposition or argument) *gaya*, *nuna* or *nuni*.

proved, particip. (attested, certified) *shaidadde*, fem. *shaidadda*, pl. *shaidaddu*.

proverb, *karin magana, sara*.

provided that, this conj. is expressed by adding emphatic particles *dai, fa* to *in, idan*, e.g. *in dai, idan fa*.

provision, n. provisions for a journey *guzuri*; to make or obtain p. *yin guzuri*; fig. of p. for the next world, e.g. repent, seek p. for the way that thou mayest prepare to make a journey *ka tuba ka nemi guzuri don ka shiriya yinin tafiya*.

provoke, tr. v. *harzuka ga, hasāla ga, haye**; I was provoked at this saying *na ji fushi da maganan nan*.

prowl, top. round *zāga, zazzaga*.

proximity, see **nearness**.

proximo, adv. (e.g. next month) *watan gobe*.

prudence, n. *hankali, fahimi, basira*.

prudent, adj. *mai-hankali*, pl. *masu-hankali*; to be p. *shiga hankali, hankalta*.

prudently, adv. *da hankali*.

Psalms, n. *zabura**.

puberty, one who has reached, n. *balagagge*, pl. *balagaggu*; children approaching the age of p. *banawa*; a boy approaching p. *matashin balaga*; a girl approaching p. *mata-shiyar balaga*; the age of p. *lokachin balaga*.

puberty, to reach, intr. v. *balaga*.

publish, tr. v. (i.e. to p. a thing or news of a thing) *labarta, habarta**.

pudenda, n. *al'aura**, *matu-chi* fem.

puerility, n. *halin yaro*.

puff-adder, *kasa*.

puggaree, a red. p. *jan tunka*.

pull, tr. v. *ja, jaka*; to p. out *chira, chire, fitas da, fusge, fizge* or *fisge, taḱe, taḱi, sakatta, sakache, tuge, zara, zare, zari, zaro*, e.g. he pulled a pistol out of his pocket *ya fitas da akotiya daga alji-funsa*; to p. out (as a hair, grains from a stalk) *tsefe*, (as roots) *tona* or *tone, tumbuke*; p. out the grass *a tumbuke chiyawa*; to p. towards oneself *jawo*; to p. in towards

oneself *miko*; to p. up a horse *zami*, *zame*; p. up here! *zami nana*.

pulley, on a Hausa loom on which the peddles work *chikalkora*; see under **weaving**.

pulse, *daldal*.

pumping beam, n. *kutara**.

pumpkin, n., names of different species are: large garden p. (*Cucurbita pepo*) *kābewa* (K.), *kuḅewa* (S.), *goji* (Z.); a smaller p., used in making soup *miya*; a white p. not eaten, used for making water-pots *dūma*, masc. pl. *dumai-mai* or *dumaye*.

punch, to *fidda naushi*.

punctuation, signs of *fāri*.

punish, tr. v. *fallasa*, *pallasa* or *pallashe*, *foro*, *yin wahala*, *yin foro*.

punishment, n. *fallasa* or *pallasa*, *azāba*, *foro*; a legal p. *ukuba* (S.).

pup, n. *kwikuyo*, *kwikwiyo*, *kuyikuyu*, pl. *kuyikuyai*, followed by *kare*.

pupil, n. 1. (a school-boy) *ḍan makaranta*, pl. *yan makaranta*, *yaron* (pl. *yaran*) *makaranta*; (of adults and spec. those of a religious teacher, i.e. disciples) *almajiri*, fem. *almajira*, pl. *almajirai*.

2. p. of the eye *ijiya*, *ijiyor ido*, *matsokachin ido*.

puppy, n., see **pup**.

purchase, tr. v., see **buy**.

pure, adj. 1. (in a material sense) *tsari*, *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, *da tsalki*, *tsatsarka*, e.g. p. wheat, i.e. clean, in good condition *alkama tsari*, (of metals = unalloyed) *safi* or *safe*, e.g. p. silver *azurfa safi* = *azurfa babu ha'inchi*; (= simply) *tsāba* and *tsala*, *ḱūna*, e.g. p. and simple cowries, i.e. nothing but cowries *tsāban kurḍi*; nothing but water *ḱūna ruwa*.

2. (in a ceremonial or moral sense) *tsari*, *chari*, *da tsarki*, *da tsabta*, *halal*, *halas*; p. water *ruwa da karari*; to be p. *yin tsabta*, *tsalkaka*, *tsarkaka*.

purgative medicine, n. *maganin zawo*, *maganin gudun-daji*; purging nut *binida zugu*.

purge, to *kawashe*.

purification, n. esp. ceremonial p. *tsalka* or *tsatsalka*, *lullo*; p. of a woman after the birth of a child *bīḱi*.

purify, tr. v. *tsarkake*, *char-kake*.

purity, n. *tsarki*, *tsalki* (S.), *tsabta*, *tsapta*, *tsauta*, *halal-chi*, *karari*.

purloin, tr. v., see steal.

purple, *shuni*.

purpose, n. *ganganchi*, *hamzari*, *hanzari*.

purpose, on, adv. *da gangan*; to no p. *hanna*.

purring, e.g. of cat or hyena *gurnani*.

purslane, *fasa kaba*; horse p. *gadon machiji*.

pursue, tr. v. (as in war) *farfaro* or *faffaro*; he pursued his way *ya kama hanya*.

push, tr. v. *tuka*, *iza*, *ije*, *surmuka*, *tura*, *turi*, *ture*, *zungura*, *damfare*, the last of pushing so as to cause one to stumble; to p. towards oneself *ture*; to p. aside *tunkuda*, *bankada*, *bankade*, *kide*; to p. into water *gangante*; pushing with the knee *gula*.

pushing, *turo*.

pustule, n. (boil) *kurji*, pl. *kuraje*, *kureje*, *kuraraji*.

put, tr. v. *sa*, *sanya*, *aje*; to put one thing on another *aza* or *aza ma*; to p. aside (to cease from) *sa*, e.g. let us p. aside quarrelling *mu sa kan-kanchi* (to lay up) *aje*; to p. away *kanda*, *kawas*; to p. on (of clothes, etc.) *sa*; to p. together *tara*; to p. down a load *jude*.

puzzle, n. *zauranche*, see riddle.

puzzle, tr. v., see perplex.

pyramid, see cone.

python, n. *mesa*, *mulwa**.

quack, n. (a pretender to medical science) *boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

quackery, n. *bokanchi*; cf. prec.

quake, intr. v., see tremble.

qualm, n. 1. (a feeling of nausea) *kumallo*.

2. (a conscientious scruple or hesitation) *kumya*.

quantity, n. (an amount of anything) *mashasha*, *afki*, *sununu*, *tsibi*; a large q. *gugu*, *gugi*, e.g. a large q. of sand *gugin rairai*, *jibgi*, the last esp. of food; *taro*, *taru*, *yawa*, *yawanchi*, also *dayawa*, e.g. his discourse was nothing but a great q. of words *wa'azinsa saiyawan magana*; see much; a small q. *karanchi*.

quarrel, n. *fusuma*, *jaya*, *jayayya*, *husuma*, *tsalmi*, see seq.

quarrel, intr. v. *yin jaya*, *kan-kani*, *yin kan-kanchi*; to q. with *yin kan-kanchi da*, in the sense of to maintain opposite opinions *gardama*

with the forms in *na* or with *yi*; *faḍa* (lit. to fight) is also used.

quarrelling, *kanḵanchi, sāba*.

quarrelsome, adj. *futsu, hutsu, mafadachi, mai-ijiat yaki*; he is q. *ya tarika faḍa*.

quarter, n. 1. (a fourth part) *rubu'i**.

2. (a division in a town) *shiya*, pl. *shiyoyi, unguwa*, pl. *unguwai* and (in Sokoto) *ungunni*; cf. seq.

quarters, n. (place of stay, lodging) *masabki, mazamni*, also loosely *wuri*.

quash, tr. v. (to make void) *wofinta*.

queen, n. 1. (a female sovereign) *sarkanya*.

2. (a king's wife) *sarauniya, matan sariki*.

quench, tr. v. (to put out a light or fire) *kufuli**; pass. to be quenched (to go out) *mutu*, e.g. the fire is quenched *wuta ta mutu*.

query, n., cf. seq.

question, n. *tambaya, binchike, mas'ala**.

question, v. *tambaya, yin tambaya, yin binchike, tantambaya*.

questioning, n. (discussion about something doubtful) *kokanto, binchike, binchiki*.

quick, adj. 1. (rapid, immediate) *sauḵi, da sauri*; a q. death (or a sudden death) *sauḵin mutuwa*.

2. (alive) *da rai*.

quickly, adv. (at once, with the least delay) *da sauḵi, da sauri, nan da nan*; (at a rapid rate) *māza, ribta, ruḵta, garr, kiḍis, kūḍis, samli, rugu**; very q. *maza maza* contr. *malmāza*, e.g. he is counting the cowries very q. *yana ḵilgan alkawara māza māza*; to go q. (lit. to blow a hole through the ground) *fūra ḵasa*.

quicksilver, n. *zaiba*.

quiet, adj. (implying cessation from speech or cries) *da kawai, jurum*; to be q. *yin shiru* (or *shuru*), *yin kawai, kawaita, rūma* (S.), *yin kurum*; (of disposition) *lalafa*; cf. seq.; keep q. *kame bakinka*.

quietness, n. *kāwai*; (of disposition) *lalafanḵi*.

quit, v. (to leave or abandon) *bari* or *bar*, e.g. q. this custom *ku bari tadan nan*; of a path *sau*.

quite, adv. 1. (wholly, nothing but) *sai* which is either applied to the entire clause, e.g. if he refuses this you may call him quite a coward

in *ya ki nan sai ka kira-wo shi matsorata*, lit. you may quite call him a coward, or, as in Engl., applied to a particular term, e.g. his face was q. bloody *fuskassa sai jini*; he is not q. dead *ba ya ida mutuwa*; so in the very common expression *sai lafiya* quite well.

2. (less precisely = very much, indeed, truly) *dayawa, kwarai*, e.g. we are q. pleased *muna jin dadi dayawa*; I was q. frightened *na ji tsoro dayawa*; I q. understand *na ji s̄arai*; adv. phr. quite so *ashe, da gaskiya, ya yi haka*.

quiver, n. *kwari, kwarin kibiya, gidan kibiya*.

quiver, intr. v., see **shake**, **tremble**.

abble, n. (low class of men, the mob) *taro banza*.

abid, adj. *mahaukachi*, e.g. a r. dog *mahaukachin kare*; see **mad**.

ace, n. 1. (ancestral stock) *ūsali, asali*.

2. (a particular breed of men or animals) *iri*, pl. *irare*.

3. (a running in contest of men or horses) *ts̄ere, tserayya*.

addish, a kind of *fijir*.

radiant, adj. (emitting light) *mai-haske*, pl. *masu-haske*.

rafter, n., used in roofs *āzara*; see **reed**.

rag, n. (in the sense of a small piece of any stuff) *da*, e.g. a cloth r. *dan zane, dan barki, dan yanki*; see **rags**.

rage, n. *fushi*.

rage, intr. v. *hawkache, yin fushi, jin fushi*; see **angry**.

rags, n. coll. *ragga*, pl. *rāgguna, ts̄ümma*, pl. *tsummokarai, tsummoki, k̄eso*, chuna**; singulars of both are used as collectives, old r. *chukuchuku*; trop. (in the sense of old or tattered clothes) *rāga, ragga*, pl. *raggogi* (S.), *tsumma*; clothed in r., adj. *funtu* or *da funtu*.

raid, n. *sati*, esp. a surprise slave r. by horsemen *h̄ari*; raiding of a town *bāsāsa*.

raider, (i.e. slave-raider) *mah̄ari*, pl. *mahara*.

rain, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye, ruwan b̄isa, ruwan sama*; spec. gentle r. *yayyafa, yinyifi*; a cloud which threatens, or produces rain *zirnaniya*; heavy or lasting r. *mal̄ka* (S.), *marka* (K.), *mako, mamako, pashi, taguwa*; light r. *tsatsafa*; the night has been passed in the r. *an*

kwan da ruwa; the r. pours down *ruwa ya zuba*; in the r. *da ruwa*; a r. cloud *jitau*.

rain, v. 1. impers., it rains *ana ruwa* and *yana ruwa*; it rained *an yi ruwa*; to r. heavily or long *yin taguwa*, *yin malka*, *sarafa**; the r. stopped *aka dauke ruwa*; it is raining slightly *ana yayyafa*.

2. used in a fig. sense to cast or shower down like r. turn by means of a comparison common in Hausa *kaman ruwa*, e.g. our guns r. bullets on the enemy *bindigoginmu sun jefa da harsashe a bisa abokan-gaba kaman ruwa*; he speaks fluently *ya yi magana kaman ruwa*, lit. he speaks like r.

rainbow, n. *masha-ruwa*, *mashan-ruwa*, *bakan gizo*, *bakan Allah*; the spirit of the r. *gajimare*.

rain-drop, n. *tarfi**.

rainy, adj., see **rain**; r. season *damana* or *damuna*, cf. *rani*; a break during the r. season *fari*.

raise, tr. v. (to make or cause to rise, also to set up) *tada*, *tayas*, *tayas da*, *tashe*, *tasä* *dä*, *hankada*, *hau da*, *haushi*,

hausa; (to lift or pick up anything) *dauka* contr. *da do*.

raisin, *zabibi**.

rake, n., with two prongs *mashari*.

rake, tr. v., spec. to r. together cinders or embers of a fire *aza* (or *hasa*) *wuta*; I r. up cowries towards me *na ton kurdi*.

ram, n. *rago*, pl. *raguna*, *bun suru*, pl. *bunsurai* or *bun suraye*; spec. a large Bornuense r. *äraära*; a red and white r. *kargo*; a long-eared r. *uda*.

Ramadan, n. (the mohammedan fast month) *watan azumi*.

ramble, intr. v. (to wander about) *yin yawo*.

rambling, n. *yauwa*.

rampart, n. *ganuwa*.

ramrod, n. *tsatsagawa*, *marwashi*.

rancid, to be or become, intr. v. *ruša*.

range, n. (of hills) *kuduniya*.

range, tr. v. (to dispose in regular order) *daidaita*.

rank, (i.e. line) *jeri*, pl. *jerori*, to form r. *jera*.

ransom, n. *pansa*, *fansa*, *hansa*; or r. paid for a captured slave *gumki*, *kurđin turu*;

money paid to set a slave free *kurđin kariya turu*.

ransom, tr. v. *panshe, panshi, fanshe*, e.g. pass. let him be ransomed *a fanshe shi*.

ransomer, n. ag. *mai-fansa*.

ransoming, n. *pansawa, fansawa*.

rapid, adj., see **quick**.

asp, n., see **file**.

asp, tr. v. *gogi* or *goge*.

at, n. *dambariya, bera* or *hira* (K.), *kusu* (S.); large palm

r. (cane r. or ground r.) *gyabji, gyauji*, or *kusun kyamro*; large Gambian r. *burgu*, fem. *gafiya*; the stinking r. or shrew *jāba*.

attle, a *chāki*; a pod used by children as a r. *baran-chaki, kachokacho*.

attle, to *yin chāki*.

ave, intr. v. *haukache* and *hauka*, see **raving**.

avening, n. *zowari, zwari*.

avenous, to be *kwaraka*.

avine, n. *kanga*; a r. with water in it *kogi*, pl. *koguna* or *kogai, korāma*; a waterless r. *kwazazzabo, kwāri*.

aving, adj. *mai-hauka, mai-haukachi*; to become r. *yin raurawa*; see **mad**.

aw, adj. *danye, danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*.

ray, of sun *giraza, girazal rana*.

raze, to, a town, *baji, baje*.

razor, n. *aska*, pl. *asake* or *askake*.

reach, v. 1. tr. (to extend, or hold out) *mika*, e.g. I reached my hand to him *na mika masa hannu*.

2. intr. (to arrive at) *isa, ishe, iske, kai*, e.g. the boys swam and reached the land *yara sun yi iyo sun kai kasa*.

3. (to overtake) *taras*.

4. trop. (to be sufficient as in Engl. 'the money will r. so far') *iya, isa, ishe, kai*, e.g. it wont r. (it is insufficient) *ba shi kai*.

read, tr. v. *karātu, yin karātu, karanta*; to r. through *shide*; to r. a second time *tūsa karanta*.

readiness, n. *shiriya*.

reading, n. *karatu, bita*.

ready, participial adj. (prepared or in readiness) *shiriyayye*, fem. *shiriyayya*, pl. *shiriyayyu*; r. money *hannu da hannu*; cf. seq.

ready, to make, v. 1. (in a general sense but also very commonly of preparation for an expedition, journey etc.) *yin shiri, shiriya*, e.g. a

prudent man would prepare for to-morrow's journey to-day *don tafiyar gobe mutum mai-hankali shi kan yi shirin yau*; we have a journey before us which cannot be put aside, whether you are prepared or unprepared *muna da tafiya ba fasawa in ka yi shiri da izan ba a shiriya ba*; so also *gyara*, e.g. to make r. a way or a load *gyara hanya* or *kaya*; to make r. (by mending or by putting to rights and in order generally) *gyarta*.

real, adj. *na gaskiya, da gaskiya*, also *gaskiya* and *gaske* added to the term to be thus qualified; of persons *mai-gaskiya*, e.g. he is a r. friend *shi ne aboki mai-gaskiya*, which may also be expressed by *shi ne aboki da gaskiya*, lit. he is a friend in reality.

reality, n. *sakankanchewa, gaskiya*, e.g. whether this be r. or falsehood I know not *ko gaskiya ko kariya ban sani ba*; cf. seq.

reality, to assure of the r. of, tr. v. *gaskanta*.

really, adv. *da gaskiya, gaskiya, gaske, jidda**, e.g. it is r. so *da gaskiya hakanan shi ke* or simply *gaskiya ne*; (used as

interrogatives or expressions of surprise) *ashe, ai, ainin. anya*, e.g. r.? or r.! *ashe*.

realm, n. *sarauta, mulki**, *zati*.
reanimate, tr. v. (to recall to life) *raya*.

reap, tr. v. *girba, girbi, yanka, yanke, yin sara*.

reaped, e.g. r. corn *sankache, jene*.

reaper, n. *mai-girbi*.

reason, l. (cause) *sababi, kibu (S.), sabili, sanadi*.

2. (a r. given as an excuse) *huja* or *fuja*.

3. (authority from Koran etc. or origin of a myth, story etc.) *dalili*.

4. (the intelligent faculty) see **ability**; adverbial phrases, for this r. *domin haka, don haka*, for that r. *domin* or *don wannan, domin chewa**; this is the r. *ita che dalili* or *shi ya sa*; it was past r. *ya wuche misali*; what is the r.? *ina sabili?*

reasonable, to be *shiga hankali*; be r. *shiga hankalinka*.
reasonable, *mai-dalili*.

reasoning, n. *kokanto*; to engage in r. *yin kokanto*.

rebel, n. *makangari*.

rebel, intr. v. *yin kangara*.

rebellion, *tawaye*.

rebellious, pl. *tawaye*.

bound, n., e.g. of an arrow
tura.

bound, intr. v. *tankwashe*,
lanḳwashe, e.g. the spears
rebounded from the coats
of mail *masussuka sun tan-*
ḳwashe daga lifida.

buke, tr. v. *tsaushi*, *tsawata*
da, *yin tsawa*, e.g. the learned
man rebuked his disciples
malami ya yi tsawa ma
almajiransa; he rebuked me
ya yi ma ni tsawa.

receipt, *amsa*.

receive, tr. v. 1. (to take what
is offered) *karḳa*, *karḳi*, *ḳau-*
ka, *ḳoka*, *samu*, imperat.
receive *karḳo*.

2. (of a salutation) *karḳa*,
e.g. they received, i.e. acknow-
ledged your salutation *sun*
karḳa gaisuwakka; (of news
etc.) *ji*, e.g. we received news
nun ji labari; to r. as a
guest *shide*, e.g. they received
me joyfully *suka shide ni da*
nurna.

received, particip. (approved
of, agreed to, believed in)
yardadde, fem. *yardadda*, pl.
yardaddu.

spectacle, n., any kind of r.
may be expressed by *gida*,
l. *gidaje* or *gidadaji*; by
means of this are formed
the Hausa equivalents of

various Engl. terms, e.g. a
needle-case (lit. r. of needles)
gidan allura; a quiver *gidan*
kibiya; an envelope *gidan*
takarda.

reception, a royal, n. *turaka*.

recess, n. (nook, closet, small
room etc.) *loloki*, pl. *lokokai*,
lungu; secret recesses coll.
lolokin asiri.

reciprocal, adj., turn by the
recipr. pron. *juna*.

reckless courage, with, adj.
jan namiji.

reckon, v. *kida*, *ḳilga*, *ḳirga*,
see **count**, **number**; to r.
up (take account of) *zāna*.

reckoning, n. 1. (computing,
calculating) *ḳidaya*, *ḳida* and
ḳididdiga, *hisabi* (S.); (of
accounts) *lisafi* or *lasafi*.

recline, intr. v. *dangana*, *ki-*
shingida or *kishinkida* (this
also = to sit with crossed legs),
jingina, *jingine*.

recognise, to *gani**, *gane**.

recollect, tr. v. (to remember)
tuna, *tuna da*.

recollection, participial n.
tunawa.

recompense, n. (both of pe-
cuniary reward, wages, and
also generally) *lada*.

recompense, tr. v., see **repay**,
requite and **reward**.

reconcile, tr. v. *gama dadi**.

reconciliation, *sulhu, sulfa**,
*suba**.

record, n. *ambäto*.

recover, v. 1. tr. (to get back),
e.g. he recovered his property
ya samu dukiyassa kuma.

2. intr. (of health) *samu
afuwa, yin rangwame, miķe*;
he recovered his health *ya
samu lafiya*; to r. from a
swoon *yin hankali*; he is
not quite recovered *ba ya ida
warkewa ba*; I recovered *na
samu sauki*.

recovery, n. (of health) *rang-
wame, afuwa*.

red, adj. *ja*, pl. *jajaye*; staining
r. *jaje*; very r. *ja wur*; a r.
dye *garura*.

reddish, adj. *jaja kadan, jache*.

redeem, tr. v. *fanshe, panshe,
yin fansa*, e.g. we redeemed
him from slavery *muka fan-
she shi daga bauta*.

redemption, n. *fansa, pansa,
fansawa*; *diyauchi* (lit. free-
dom) also bears the pregnant
sense of r.

reduce, tr. v. 1. (generally, to
lessen, to decrease) *ragi* or
rage; to be reduced *ragu*.

2. to r. amount of an
account or charge *yin ran-
gwame, rangwanta*.

3. (to conquer, subdue)
chi.

reduction, n. 1. (lessening
assuaging of anything) *ra-
guwa*.

2. (of an account) *ran-
gwame*, e.g. make me a
ka yi ma ni rangwame.

reed, n. *gōra*, pl. *gorori, kārē*,
pl. *kārāre, kara, jiniya*; spec.
of various qualities and uses
a kind of r. or rough grass
Spanish r. *gabara*; a r. grow-
ing amongst and resembling
guinea-corn *kusumburwa*; a
edible water r. *bindu, bindo*;
a r. used for making arrow
kyamro (S.), *kyauro* (K.), p.
*kyamare, gazara**, *shemo*;
reeds such as are used for
making doors etc. *asabar*,
tsabre; reeds forming circ-
lar bindings near the *kwana*
inside a roof *murḍaka, ma-
ḍaka, magwadi* (S.); a pla-
ce where reeds meet in the
centre inside thatched roof
kwando; reeds bound to-
gether forming inside binding
of a thatched roof *tank*;
a r.-like plant of which native
ropes are made *rama*; a
reed used as a pen *alkālami*;
also *garanya* (K.).

reed-buck, *kaji*.

reeling, n. (staggering) *n-
gagi*.

reference, with r. to *bätun*.

reflection, n. (consideration, thought) *tunanne*, pl. *tunannu*.

refrain from, tr. v. *bari*, *bar*, e.g. r. f. falsehood *ka bar kariya*; r. f. laughter *rike dariya*.

refuge, n. *matsira*, *macheto*.

refusal, n. *kiwuya*, *kiyuya*, *hānawa*, *tayazwa*; r. to hear *kin ji*; r. to work *kiwuya*, *indavinda*.

refuse, n. *kazamta*; r. food *kamzo*, *kanzo*.

refuse, v. *ki*, *kiya*, *kinkinta*, *rena*, *yin kishi*, *dakile*, *tayaz*; to r. an offer in buying and selling *hāna* and *saidaba**; to r. exertion (or labour) *yin kiwuya*; to r. to keep a promise *yin gase*; to r. to listen *kyale*.

refuses, one who r. to work, n. *makiyachi*, *mai-kiwuya*.

refusing, n. participial form *hanawa*, *kiyawa*, *kiyaya*.

regard, n. 1. (attention, heed) *hankali*.

2. (affection) *soyayya* or *soyaya*, *kauna*, *kamna*, e.g. an object of r. *abin kamna*; you have forfeited my r. *ka yanke ma ni kauna*.

regard, tr. v. 1. (to look at attentively both physically and mentally) *duba*.

2. (to heed) *yin hankali*, *kula*, construed with *da* before the object regarded.

regent, n. *makadashi*, *makadashi*, *makadas*.

region, n. *waje*, pl. *wajeje*.

regret, v. (to repent) *tuba*.

reign, n. 1. (royal authority, power) *sarauta*.
2. (the time a r. lasts) *zamani*.

reign, intr. *mallaka*; see rule.

rein, v., to r. in *zami*, *zame*.

reining-in, n. *zamiya*.

reject, tr. v. *ki*, *kiya*, *yada**, e.g. they rejected the right way *sun yada hanya*; to r. as something bad *yin tsan-tsani*.

rejoice, v. 1. intr. *yin* or *jin farin chiki*, *yin* or *jin murna*; to r. with anyone *yin bishara*.

2. tr. *bada* (or *sa*) *murna*.

rejoin, intr. (to answer) *yin amsa*.

rejoinder, n. (answer) *amsa*.

relate, v. *fadi*, *fada*.

related, to be *danginta*.

relation, n. *dangi* or *dāgi**, pl. *dangogi*, *kwatana**; cf. seq.

relations, coll. *dangi* both in the sing. and pl., *kibanta*, *makusata*.

relationship, n. *zumunta**, *juna*.

relax, v. 1. tr. (of bonds etc. to loosen) *kwanche*, *kunche*, *säke*; (of efforts, rule etc. to make less severe or strict) *ragi*, *rage*.

2. intr. (to become less strict or severe, of anything, e.g. pain) *ragu*.

relaxation, n. 1. (in sense of 2. prec.) *raguwa*.

2. (rest) *natsu*, *natsuwa*.

release, tr. v. *saki* and in a looser sense *bari*, *bar*; see **let**.

reliable, adj. (vulg.), see **trustworthy**.

relieve, tr. v. (e.g. one of a load) *tariyo**; (to assist) see **help**.

religion, n. *addini*; the true r. *addinin gaskiya*; the mohammedan r. *musulumchi*; he was converted to the mohammedan r. *ya zama musulmi*.

religious person, n. *mai-addini*, pl. *masu-addini*.

rely on, v. *dangana*, *ingata*, constr. with *da* or *ga*, *yarda* with *da*; to r. on God *kasada*; to r. upon a person *shaduda* or *saduda*.

remain, intr. v. 1. (of staying or stopping in a place) *zamna*, *zauna*, *kasanchi**, *kwana* (lit. sleep), e.g. we remained there

two days *mun kwana nan kwana biyu*; we remain for this one day only *mu ke yini ranan nan*.

2. (of remaining in one state as well as place) *duma*, *dawama*, *kasanchi*, *tabbatawa*; (to be over) *yin räguwa*.

remainder, n. *saura*, *shaura*, *shawara*, *duddüga*, *kanfa* (S.), *kingi*, *räguwa*, *rägowa* (S.), *shingi* (K.), *ringi*; r. of food *marmashi*, *sudi*, *suddi*; r. of nuts, food, etc. *käla*.

remaining, 1. participial adj. (also r. over) *mai-wanzuwa*.

2. (continuing) *mai-dawama*.

3. n. (continuance, staying) *dawäma*, *täbbata*.

remains, see **remainder**.

remedy, n. (in medicinal and also in general sense) *maganin*, e.g. the *filasko* plant is a r. for diarrhoea *filasko maganin gudawa*; prov. if a town be far off the r. is travel *maganin gari da nesa tafiya*.

remember, v. *tuna*; to come to r. *tuna* with *da* before object.

remembrance, n. (recollection) *tunanne*, *tunawa*, *tuntuna*.

remind, to *taso**, *tuna ma*.

remiss, adj. *lalafa*.

remission, n. (forgiveness) *gafara, yafewa**.

remissly, adv. *da lalafanchi*.

remissness, n. *lalafanchi*.

remit, tr. v. (to forgive) *yarda, gafarta, yin gafara*; to r. a debt *yarda bashi*; to r. a law *tsaida*.

remnant, e.g. after cloth has been measured, n. *gutsura*, see **remainder**.

remorse, n. *nadāma* (S.), *ni-dāma, ladāma, da-na-sani*; where there is no wrong, there is no r. *babu laifi, babu tunanne*.

remote, adj. 1. (distant in place) *na nesa*; also *da nesa* and *daga nesa*, e.g. a r. town *gari da nesa*.

2. (distant in time) *na dā*, also *da wuri* or *dauri*, e.g. r. customs *tadodi na dā*.

removal, *ƙaura*.

remove, tr. v. *kauda, kaushe, kawwa, kawas, kawas da*.

rend, tr. v. *keche, kiche, keta, murtsuka, tsāga*; to r. in pieces *fatattake, tsatsaga*.

render, tr. v. 1. (to give) *ba* or *bada*.

2. (of an account, to give, give in, present) to r. an account *yin lisafi*.

3. (to translate) *juya, sauya, fasara, yin fasara*.

4. (to cause to be or become) periphr. e.g. the heat of the fire rendered his face very red *zafin wuta ya sa fuskassa ta zama ja wur*.

rending, n. *fatattāka, tsāga*, see **tearing**.

renew, to *sabunta*; renewing *sabunchi* (K.), *sabuntaka* (S.).

rent, n. *ijāra, sūfuri*.

rent, tr. v. (of houses, etc.) *sūfurche, sufurchi, sufurta, yin sūfuri*.

repair, tr. v. (to mend) *gyarta, gyara, lallaba**, *yin adana*.

repairing, *adana*.

repast, n. 1. (a meal) *kalachi*.

2. (food, victuals) *abinchi, chima, chimaka*.

repay, to *yika*.

repeal, tr. v. *kauda*, e.g. the king repealed the prohibition *sariki ya kauda doka*.

repeat, v. 1. (to do again), see **again**; to r. an action *yin maimai, maimaita, ƙāra, ribbi**.

2. (to say a thing over again) *tusa*.

repel, tr. v. *kora, kore*; to be repelled (of an arrow, etc.) *tankwashe*.

repent, intr. v. *tuba*, e.g. repent! *ku tuba*; if he refuses to r. *idan ya ki tuba*.

repentance, n. *tuba*, *nidama*, *nadāma* (S.), *ladāma*.

repents, one who, n. *mai-tuba*.

repetition, (i.e. doing anything over again) *takidi**.

reply, n. *amsa*, *amshe*; to give a r. *ba* (or *bada*) *amsa*; cf. seq.

reply, intr. v. *amsa*, *yin amsa*, e.g. he replied to them *ya amsa ma su* or *ya yi ma su amsa*.

report, n. 1. (rumour, news) *labāri*, e.g. we heard a r. about war *muka ji labarin yaki*.

2. (fame, repute) *yābo*.

3. (noise of gun) *āmo**, *kārar bindiga*.

4. false r. *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegunguma*.

report, v. (to bring news) *yin labāri*, *ba* (or *bada* or *fadi*) *labāri*; to r. against (to inform against) *sare*, *sara*.

repose, n. 1. (lying at rest) *kwantawa*.

2. (rest, quietness) *futa*, *futawa*.

3. (sleep) *barchi*, *kwana*.

repose, v. 1. tr., to r. confidence in *sa* with *bisa* or *bisaga* and substantives given under **confidence**, q.v.

2. intr. (to lie, to be placed) pass. of *aje* and *sa*; (to lie at rest) *kwana*.

reprehend, tr. v. (to reprove, censure), see **blame**.

reprehensible, adj. *da laifi*

representative, n. (an agent or substitute) *wakili*.

repress, *kwābe*, *kwāba*, *kwābo*, see **hinder**.

reproach, n. *zargi*, *zagi*.

reproach, tr. v. *yin zagi*, *ḡache*.

reproaching, *zagi*, *zage*.

reproof, n. *foro*; *harasa*, *rarauka* (K.).

reprove, tr. v. *yin foro*.

reptile, n. *mai-rarrafe*, pl. *masu-rarrafe*, *abin kasa*, *igiyar kasa*.

reputation, n. *yabo*, *suna*, e.g. his r. spread throughout the Sudan *mutane duka su ji sunansa chikin Sudan*.

requital, n. *fansa*, *pansa*, *hansa*, *saka-mako*.

requite, tr. v. *biya*; (in a bad as well as good sense) *rama*.

rescue, tr. v. *kwache* or *kwashi*; see also **deliver**.

resemble, to *daidaiche*, *yin kama*.

reserve, (i.e. support in war) *ribadi*.

reside, intr. v., see **dwell**.

resign, tr. v. (to give up,

abandon) *bari, bar*; to r. office *maida rawani*.

resignation, n. *hanḱuri, hanḱura, haḱura, haḱuri*.

resigned, to be, v. *jin sanyi*, also *hanḱuri* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I am r. to this *ina hanḱuri da wannan*; he was r. to this pain *ya yi hanḱuri da azaban nan*.

resist, tr. v. (gen. to withstand, baffle) *hana*; to r., request etc. *hana* q.v., *ki ji*, e.g. he resisted every proposal *ya ki ji magana duka*.

resistance, n. in sense of prec. init. *hanawa, makawa*.

resolution, (i.e. firmness) *harāma, hazama*.

respect, n. (i.e. esteem) *hasafi, kauna*.

respond, v. (to answer) *amsa, yin amsa*.

rest, n. 1. (remainder) *shawara, saura, kingi, shingi* (K.).

2. (repose, quiet) *fūta, fūtu, futawa, hutawa, mugāma**, cf. **repose**; (of the grave) place of r. *makwanḱi*; (of death) the last r. *maḱarin barchi*.

rest, v. 1. tr. (to lay, place) *aje, sa*, e.g. he rested his hands on the book *ya sa hannuwansa bisa litafi*.

2. intr. (to be at rest)

futa, fucha, yin mugāma; (to be laid, placed) pass. of *aje, sa*.

resting-place, n. (lodging) *māshidi*; his last resting-place *makwanḱinsa*.

restitution, make, v. *rama*.

restive, be, intr. v. *yin tuma*.

restlessness, *kiriniya*.

restore, tr. v. 1. (to give or bring back) *maida, mayas, kwanda, ramka, bayas da*.

2. (to make good) *rama*.

3. (to r. to life) *raya*; (to be restored to life) *rayu*.

4. (to renew) *sabunta*.

restrain, tr. v. *hāna, kwāḱe, kwāḱa, kwāḱo, tsere*; see **hinder**.

result, n. *akiba*.

resurrection, n. *tashi daga matattu, tayaswa, kiyāma*; the r. day *ranan gobe* (lit. the day of to-morrow), *ran gobe, ranal* (or *ranan*) *kiyama*; periphr. the day when the sounder of the trumpet shall sound *ranad da mai-busa ya busa kafo nasa*.

retail, a r. seller of corn *dan kwarami, mai-sari**; retailers *yan shimfida*.

retain, tr. v. *riḱe, riḱa, riḱi**.

retained, particip. *riḱakke*, fem. *riḱakkiya*, pl. *riḱakku*.

retainer, to become a r. of
yin chaffa (or *chappa*).

retaliate, intr. v. *rama, saka*,
see **revenge**.

retaliation, n. (in a good as
well as bad sense) *saka-mako*;
see **requital**.

retch, to *yünküra*.

retching, n. *yünküri*.

retire, to r. into shelter
noke.

retreat, to *ja da baya*.

return, n. *dawaya*.

return, intr. v. *koma*; to r. to
where the speaker is, to r.
here *komo, dawo, dawayo*;
to r. from a place *dawaya*;
to r., tr. v. *mayas da, mayar
da*.

returning, n. (of place) *ko-
mawa, kome*, pl. *kome-kome*;
(of state, = a changing back,
reversion) *juyawa, waiwai-
yawa*.

reveal, tr. v. *gäya, waye, nuna*,
e.g. they revealed the secret
to the king *sun gäya asirin
nan ga sariki*.

revenge, n. *fansa, pansa,
hansa, ramuwa, tarua*.

revenge, v. *rāma, zoje*; see
requite.

revere, tr. v.; cf. seq.

reverence, n. *kwarjini*.

reverence, tr. v. *tsarkaka,
tsarkaki, charkaka* and, in

freer sense (= to honour) *gir-
mama*, and *bada girma*.

revile, tr. v. *yin zagi, fallasa*
or *pallasa, kwāla*.

reviling, *zage, zagi*.

revive, intr. v. (as from faint-
ing) *farko*.

revolt, n. *tawaye*.

revolt, to *danka shappa, yin
tawaye*.

reward, n. *lada, akiba*.

reward, tr. v., see **requite**.

rhinoceros, n. *kilifori, kilhore*
(a Fullani word), *karkanda**.

rib, n. *awoza, awaza* (S.), pl.
awazu, awazai; ribs coll.
haḳarḳari.

rice, n. *shinkafa*, more parti-
cularly = r. in the husk,
husked, clean r. *shinkafa,
sanshera, surfaffe, gūmi*;
tuft of r. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*;
the swelling of r. when
boiled *auki, abki*; a soft
mash of r. *fate-fate*; a mix-
ture of r., milk and honey
gumba; a cake made of r.
and guinea-corn *masa*; a
cake made of r., oil and
honey *tsatsafa*; a large rice-
bag *saulo*; 'hungry' r. *acha*;
a dark coloured kind of r.
*jimero**; r. husks (used for
washing ink off writing
boards) *buntu, shēfe*.

rich, adj. 1. (wealthy, also

concr., a r. man) *mai-dukiya*, *marwadachi*, pl. *marwadata*.

2. (abundant) *dayawa*.

3. (splendid as 'r. dress')
na ado, fem. *ta ado*.

rich, to be, intr. v. *tajarta*, *ajarta*, *wadata*, *walata*, *yahwata*.

riches, coll. *dukiya*, pl. *dukoki* or *dukiyoyi*, *wada*, *wadachi*, *arziki*, *ajiya*, *atajirchi*, *tajirchi*, *falala*, *gatanchi*.

riddle, n. *marauchi*, *zauranche*.

ride, intr. v., express by periphr., e.g. he was riding along *yana tafe bisa doki*; I rode to the town *na hau doki na tafi gari*; spec. to r. at a gallop *sukuwa* (Kano), *suka* (Sokoto), *sukane*, *sukwane*; tor. for exercise *kilisa*.

rider, n. *mai-doki*, pl. *masudoki*, *mahayi*; an expert r. *gwanin doki*.

ridge, n. *koḳuwa*; a ridge in a field *kunya*, coll. *kwiya* (S.), *kadada*.

ridicule, tr. r. *dāra*, *shamata*; he turned him into r. *ya ba shi dariya*.

riding, *zaman sirdi*; a place for r. in *fagen doki*; a place for riding in at the gallop *masukwani*.

right, n. 1. gen. *gaskiya*.

2. (authority or privilege)
iko, pl. *ikoki*, *inganchi*.

3. (claim) *alhaki*; to be in the r. in a dispute *hujanta*.

4. (the opposite of left)
dama.

right, adj. 1. (in conformity with truth and justice) *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, or simply *gaskiya*, *naḳwarai**, *ādili*; to be r. *inganta*, *ingata*, see also **lawful**, **proper**.

2. (opposed to left) *na-dama*, fem. *ta-dama*; the r. hand (i.e. the bodily member) *hannu na dama*; the r. side *wajen dama*.

righteousness, n. *adilchi*.

rightly, adv. (truthfully, justly)
da gaskiya, *da gaske*.

2. (correctly, exactly)
ḳwarai, *sarai*, e.g. if I r. understand you will come to this house in the evening *idan na ji ḳwarai za ku zo gidanga da mareche*; he did not count them r. *bai ḳilga su sarai ba*.

rind, n. *fāta*, *pāta*, *ḳawo*, *ḳawa*.

ring, n. *zobe*; seal r., signet r. *zoben shaida*; finger r. *ḳawainya*; a metal r. placed round the hands and legs of women *ḳarafa*, *chakan-kami*; a r. put through a man's lower lip *baibayi**; a leather r. worn as a charm

- on the wrist *kūmbu*, *kūmbuwa*, see *kārau*.
- rings**, coll. arm r. *mundaye* ;
foot r. *mundayen kafa*.
- ringworm**, *makēro*, *kyazbi* (K.), *kyasfi* (S.).
- rinse**, tr. v. *darwaye*, *darwaya*.
- rip**, tr. v. *keta*, participial n. *ketuwa*, *ketawa* ; see **tear**.
- ripe**, adj. *nuna*, *nina* (S.) or *nunanne*, pl. *nunannu*.
- ripe**, to be, intr. v. *nīna* (S.), *nūna* (K.), *yin tābo* ; to be over-r. *ḡosa*.
- ripeness**, *tābo*, *tafshi*, *tabshi*, *tapshi**.
- rise**, n., of a fish *ḡulma*, *ḡurma* ; of a star *keto*.
- rise**, intr. v. *tashi* ; to cause to r. *tashe* ; to r. up *taso*, *gusa*, *gulgusa*, *gurgusa* ; to r. up against *yin firmaki* ; to r. high (of the sun) *karu* ; to r. (to swell, of anything cooking or fermenting) *yin auki* or *yin abki*.
- rising**, participial n. *tashi*, *tasawa* ; *tayaswa* is used in sense of resurrection.
- risk**, n., he ran a great r. *ya sha hātsari dayawa*.
- rivalry**, n. *kishi*, *gāsa*, *hamiya*.
- river**, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye*, e.g. the r. Benué *ruwan tsada* ; *gulbi*, pl. *gulabe*, *tabki*, *tapki* or *tafki* ; a large r. *kogi*, pl. *koguna*, *kogina* or *kogai* ; the r. of paradise *kausara* and *alkausara*.
- river-horse**, hippopotamus, n. *dorina*, pl. *dorinnai*.
- rivers**, confluence of, n. *magan-gami*.
- road**, n. *hanya*, *haya**, pl. *hanyoyi*, *būbe*, *godabe*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *turba*, pl. *turbobi* ; on the r. (travelling) *chikin tafiya* ; he is on the r. *yana tafiya* ; do you know your r. from this point? *ka sani hanya daga nan ko?* a broad r. *godabe*, *rimdi*, *karabka*, *karauka* (S.) ; a hedged r. between farms used by cattle *burtali*.
- roads**, n. branching off of r. (pl. of *kwasfa*) *kwasfofi* ; dividing of r. *laloki*, *loloki*, pl. *lulukai* ; meeting-point of two or more r. *mararrabin hanya*.
- roar**, n. *ḡugi*, *tsawa* ; r. of a lion *gumza*.
- roar**, intr. v. *yin tsawa*, *yin ḡugi*, *yin kuka* ; (of camel, donkey, fire, etc.) *yin ruri*.
- roast**, tr. v. *soya* or *suya*, *bandata*, *gāsa*, the last used with *gurasa* bread.
- roasted**, particip. *gasashshe*, fem. *gasashshiya*, pl. *gasassu*.
- roasting**, *banda*, *gāshi*.

rob, tr. v. (to take openly, by force) *kwache*.

robber, n., one who robs openly *mai-sane*; a highway r. (brigand) *māfashi*, *mai-fashe*, pl. *māfasa*.

robbery (with violence), *par-maki*.

robe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; splendid robes *riguna na ado*; silken robes *riguna na alharini*.

robe, tr. v. *sa* (lit. put on), e.g. they shall be robed in white *a sa ma su riguna farfaru*.

rock, n. *dutsi*, pl. *duwatsu*, *duchi*, *falale*, *fa*, *pa*.

rock, tr. v. (to shake or swing to and fro) *reta*, *yin reto*.

rock-salt, n. *gallo*.

rod, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*.

rogue, n. *mazambache mai-zambata*.

roll, v. 1. (to move along by turning over and over) tr. *bingira*, *mirgina*, *mirgine*, *layāta*, *layache*, *yin birgima*; intr. to r. down *gangara* or *gangari*; to r. away *gangarad da*.

2. (to fold round on itself) tr. *nāde*; to r. together or up *nāde*; to r. up *kalmāsa* or *kalmashe*; to r. up, e.g. a covering of a doorway, or a piece of cloth etc. *linke*,

ninke; to r. into balls as clay for building *chibra*, *tsibra*, *chura*, *dunkula*; intr. and reflexive to r. up or together *naḍu*.

roller, (bird) *tsanwaka*.

roller, i.e. a stone used for crushing rice etc., n. *ḍan magurji*.

rolling, particip. n. *birgima*; r. down *gangarawa* and *gangaro*.

roof, n. *jinka*; the following apply to the native thatched roofs; the centre of r. *kwan-do*; the conical grass top of a r. *boto*; a beam to support a r. *dirka*; a binding line inside r. formed of two or three reeds *mirdaka*, *murdaka*; a band of grass rope outside a r. *jiniya*; an arched r. *ḍamren-guga*, *ḍauren-guga*; an oblong r. *bakan-gizo*; to bind grass with cords so as to form a r. *yamche* or *yamchi*, *yin kanchama*; the plaited mat-work which acts as the keystone of a conical r. *kirinya*; the horizontal ties of grass which bind the sloping rafters of a r. *tanka*; the sticks which slope from the upright poles of a r. to the cross piece (*mafyādi*) *tsaiko*; the cross pieces tied to the sloping sticks (*tsaiko*) for the grass

of the r. to rest upon *karan tanka*; the sticks placed in a r. to prevent the grass from slipping down *kīni*; the highest part of the inside of a r. *kwankuwa*, *koḳuwa*; a cross piece of wood which rests on two (*gofa*) sticks and supports the r. of a house *mafyaḍi*; the apex of a r. *kan ḍaki*; house with flat r. *soro*; upper storey of such a house *soron bene*; a flat mud r. *rufi*.

room, n. 1. open, unoccupied space in any sense *sarari*; unoccupied space on a flat surface as a plain, a floor *fili*, e.g. there was no r. for (putting down) my load *babu fili ga kayana*, cf. seq.

2. an apartment or r. in a house *ḍāki*, pl. *ḍakuna*; a private sleeping r. *baraya* (S.); an upper r. in a two-storeyed house, *bene*; a small dark r. *loloki*, *laloki*, pl. *lolo-kai* or *lālokaye*; a r. made of mud and thatched with reeds *tsaiko*.

room, to have plenty of r. to sit down, intr. v. *wala*.

roomy, adj. *mai-sarari*, *da sarari*, e.g. this chamber is r. *ḍakin nan yana da sarari*.

root, n. (of vegetables, etc.)

saiwa (K.), *saye* (S.), pl. *sayu*, *sauya* (Kats.); r. of a tree *tūshi*.

rope, n. gen. *igiya*, pl. *igiyoyi*, *yagiya* (S.); to plait a r. *tumḳa* (S.) or *tukka* (K.) *igiya*; spec. of various uses and materials: a r. for hobbling horse *tarnaki*, *dangwali*, *da-baibayi* (K.), *dabaibiya* (S.); a r. for leading a horse *āsalwayi*; a r. halter for horses or camels *rāgama*; a r. (also coll.) tied to anything, e.g. to a rafter *ragaya*; a r. tying a horse's leg to a post *gindi*; a r. for tying up a camel *ākala*; a r. fastened between two posts to which animals are tied *rande*; a r. used for tying a thief *kogawa*; a twisted hide r. *ḳiri*, pl. *ḳirra*; materials for r. (plaited grass, palm leaves, fibre) *tsaiwa*; leaves and fibre from a large species of palm for r. *kaba*, *yadiya*; a fibre for making r. *yawa*; a reed-like plant (*Hibiscus cannabinus*) for making r. which is called by the same name *rama*; a r. made of *rama*, *tamagi*, *tamagye*; a large tree from the bark of which small ropes are made *tawatsa*; a trailing r. plant *ḳuranga*, see also *raba*.

rosewood, African r. *mado-biya*.

rot, intr. v. (to putrefy) *riḅa*, *ruḅa*; (to go bad) *ḅache*.

rote, by, 1. n., saying by r. *tulawa*.

2. v., to say by r. *yin tulawa*; to learn so as to say by r. (by heart) *samu harda*.

rotten, particip. adj. (of fruit, etc.) *ruḅabḅe*, fem. *ruḅabḅiya*, pl. *ruḅabḅu*, (of corn) *tsadari*, gen. *ḅatache*, fem. *ḅatachiya*, pl. *ḅatattu*, a *lalache*; to become r. *rūḅa*, *riḅa*.

rough, adj. *da kaushi*, *da kurzunu*.

roughness, n. (unevenness of surface) *kaushi*, *kurzunu*; r. of skin *kaushin jiki*.

round, adj. express by the nouns = a r. object *chībiri*, *kumbu*, *kawanya* (K.), e.g. a r. piece of mud *chībirin ḅasa*; to make r. *chibra*; to cut r. *shan kumbu*; v., to go r. *dauraro*, *zaga*, *gewayā*, *kewayā*, *jiwayā*, *kewaye*, *ke-wayo*, *kewayi*, the last also tr., e.g. they went r. the city *sun kewaye birni*; *ḅūlo* or *ḅullo*; to go r. *zāge*, *zāga*, *zwage* (S.), *zāgi*; to go r. in order to examine a thing *gewayā* or *jewayā*; to look r.

dauraro; prep. *kewaye*, e.g. they made a road r. the pool *sun gina hanya kewayen tabki*; the storm is going r. over there *hadari yana zagawa*.

rouse, tr. v. (to make rise, e.g. from the ground or from sleep) *tashe*, *tayas*, *falkad da*.

rout, n. *kāshi*, to put to r. *bada kāshi*.

row, n. (series, line, rank) *sāfu*, *jeri*; to form a r. *yin sāfu*; in a r. *a jere*; to lay out in rows *tsāra*, *tsāre*.

row, n. (angry dispute), see **dispute**, **quarrel**; (noisy outcry) *kururuwa*.

row, tr. and intr. v. *tuka*, *yin tuka* (lit. to push, or propel). Hausas acquainted with European oared boats employ this word which is the term used for 'padding' native canoes.

royal, adj. *na-sariki*, fem. *ta-sariki*; r. officers or attendants *fadarwa*, q.v.

rub, tr. v. *fāfe*, *yāfa* and *yāfo*, *sāḅa*, *chuda*; to r. (or grind) corn *tushe*; to r. anything, e.g. corn in the hands *murje*, *murḅa*, *mulmula*, *murtsuka*; to r. the back of a knife backwards and forwards *dā-dara*; to r. the hair off a

hide or skin *jemi*; to r. out or erase *shafe*, *yin mai-mai*; to r. smooth *chudanya*, *darje*.

rubbed, particip. adj. *murjaje*; *murtsukakke*, fem. *murtsukakka*, pl. *murtsukakku*.

rubber, n. 1. (e.g. a cloth, used for rubbing or wiping) *abin shafe*.

2. (india-rubber) *danko*, *dankon gamji*, *alibida*; rubber-vine *chiwo*, *chuwo*; india-rubber trees *gamji*, *ganji* (K.), cf. *durumi*, *baure*, *hore* (S.), *chediya*, *kawuri*, *wa*, *taba-ni-kasamu*.

ruby, n. *yakutu**.

rudder, paddle used as a, n. *matuki*.

rug, a woollen sleeping r., n. *kilishi*.

ruin, tr. v., to spoil, destroy *bata*; to be ruined or to fall into r. (of a house, etc.) *roshe*, *rushi*; participial n. and pres. form *rushewa*.

ruins, coll. (of a place, town) *kufai*, pl. *kufaijai*, *kofai*, *kango*; falling into r. *rushewa*.

rule, n., government, royal sway *sarauta*; an established mode of procedure *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, *ada*, *kaida*.

rule, v. (to hold sway as a king)

mallaka, *mallaki*, *mallake*, *yin sarauta*, *chude*, *umarche*; (to decide, order authoritatively) *hukumta*, e.g. he ruled that we should do this *ya hukumta mu yi haka*.

ruler, n. *mai-mallaka*, *masarau-chi*, *mahukumchi*, *hakimi*, pl. *hakimai*; (king) *sarki* or *sariki*, pl. *sarakuna* or *sarakai*.

rumour, *rigima*, *waiwai*.

run, intr. v. *gudu*; (to melt) *narku*; to r. away *gudu*, *guje*, *tsire*; to r. away quickly *sheka*; to outrun *tsire*; to r. out (to come to an end) *kare*; of water, to r. over (to overflow) *tuda*, *tude*; at a r. *a guje*; the following expressions are used to denote to r. fast *zura da gudu*, *sheka da gudu*, *karta da gudu*, *fashe da gudu*, *tantala da gudu*, *gudu kar*, *ruga da gudu*; running away *tawaga*.

runaway, n. 1. (of slaves) *gujajje*, pl. *gudaddu*.

2. (in war) *maguji* or *mu-guji*.

runner, a r. in front of a horse *gurguri*, *zagi*.

rush, intr. v. *kutsa*; to r., e.g. out of a crowd *ruza*.

rust, n. *tsatsa*.

rust, intr. v. *yin tsatsa*.

rustling, e.g. of wind in trees *kaya-kaya*; r. of grass *sükun-sükun*.

sabbath, n. 1. (in the scriptural sense = Saturday) *assabat, as-sibit, ranan assabat*.

2. (Sunday) *lahadi, ranan lahadi*.

sabre, n., see **sword**.

sack, n., a largeskins. or bag for cowries *jika, jikka*, pl. *jikkuna, kwasubro, buhu* (Z.), *birgami, burgame* these are not used as water skins for which see under **skin**; a skin s. for loading camels, donkeys, etc. *waga, kyankyandi, gurara, kaiwa**; a s. made of network *raga*, pl. *ragogi*; a large s. of salt (one donkey load) *lange*, pl. *langaye*, see **bag**.

sack, tr. v. (to pillage or plunder a place or town) *kwache*, e.g. he took and sacked the town *ya chi garin nan ya kwache dukiyassu duka*.

sack, (of a town) n. *buruntu*.

sacred, adj. (connected with religion) *na addini*, fem. *ta addini*, e.g. honour s. things and do not ridicule them *ku girmama abubuwa na addini kada ku ba su dariya*; (holy, pure) *tsarki*.

sacrifice, n. *sadaka**, *laiya*.

sad, adj. (depressed, sorrowful); to be s., see **sadness**; a s. business (causing sorrow or pity) *abin tausayi*; a s. business (i.e. bad, wicked) *abin mugu*.

saddle, n. *sirdi*, pl. *sirāde* and *sirduna, siradda* or *sirdodi, bukuru, bakuru**; a native s. cloth which is laid on the s. *jēlala, lappa, labba, kafu* (S.), *mashimfiḍi*; a s. peak *kwachiya*, that in front *kwachiyar gāba*, that behind (the cantle) *kwachiyar bāya*; stuffing or panels of a s. *zubuka, zabuka*; a pack s. with pockets for water pots, etc. *mangala*; a s. embroidered in gold or silver *talha*; crupper of a s. *jabaya, jakuturi*; the leather thong attached to a s. and passed through the ring of the girth *kaitara, kaitaro*; ornamental s. flaps *zaggin sirdi*; a s. of meat *takandar nama*.

saddle, v. (of camels, etc.) *labda*, (of horses) *damre* or *ḍarme* (S.), *sirdi, yin sirdi*.

sadness, n. *baḳin zuchiya*; to experience s., to feel sad *jin, yin* or the forms in *na* with the n., e.g. I experience s., I feel sad *ina baḳin zuchiya*.

safe, adj., s. from peril *amin-tache*, pl. *amintattu*.

safe conduct, letter of, n. *watikal lamuni*.

safety, n. (security from harm) *lamuni, amana*; (deliverance from harm) *chira, tsiras, chiraro, tsiraro*.

sagacious, adj. *da basira, da hankali, mai-hankali*.

sagacity, n. *basira, hankali*.

Sahara, *Hamada*.

said, it is, determinative or causal phr. *wai*, e.g. thou art proud because it is s., Thou excellest all *kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa*.

saint, (fakir) *wali, waliyi*, pl. *waliyai*.

sake, for the s. of, prep. *domin, don, garin, sabad da, sabado** or *saboda**, e.g. for his s. *dominsa, sabili da shi*; for the s. of this *domin* (or *don*) *haka*; for the s. of a walk *garin yawo*; for the s. of what? *domin mi, don mi, dommi*, and *sabad da mi*.

sale, to expose for s. *talla*; it is on s., it is for s. *a sayas da*; on s. *sayarwa, saisuwa*; a cheap s. *gwanjo*; the exhibition of goods for s. *kōli*; s. on approval *chinikin shawara*; a s. under a guarantee *uda**; a s. in which the

buyer is allowed time to decide whether he will accept the offer remaining open *chinikin zabi*.

saleableness, *sayuwa*.

salesman, n. *mai-saida, dakasuwa*.

saline, adj. *da gishiri, nu gishiri*.

saliva, n. *sallabi, miyau, yau (K.), dululu*.

salmon, fish resembling, n. *faliya*.

salt, n. *gishiri*; prov. a man may boil horns with his own s. (i.e. one may do what one likes with one's own) *mutun da gishirinsa shi kan dafa kafa*; spec. a dark kind of s. *manda*; a s. brought from Asben, *beza*; black s. from Bornu *manda*; hard rock s. *gallo*; an inferior kind of s. *balma*; a s. (of natron) used in dyeing as a mordant, also used medicinally *ashauma, ashoma*; a cake of s. *foche, fochen gishiri mangul*; round flat piece of s. coll. *aserimi**; a load of s. cut small *bakan gishiri*; a pyramidal load of s. *kantu*; a small *kantu* of inferior s. *pasha*; a large *kantu* of s. *azurumi*; a wood ash from which s. is obtained *zakanko**.

alt-bag, n., long, narrow b. for carrying s. *lange, langi*; a small s.-bag *chukurufa**.

altless, adj. *babu gishiri*; spec. of anything eaten without salt (insipid) *da lami*.

altness, (brackishness) *zartsi*.

altpetre, n. *kanwa*; spec. s. used medicinally *jan kanwa*.

alutation, n. *gaisuwa*, e.g. he paid no heed to my s. *bai kula ba da gaisuwata* or *ba ya karba gaisuwata ba*; a s. addressed to an important person *ingwayya, ungwaiya*; a public s. *mubaya*. The language is rich in expressions of s., e.g. s. to you (Engl. hail! welcome!) pass. *a gaishe (-ka, -ki) -ku, a tuski*; the commonest expr. of s. is *sanu* or rep. *sanu sanu* and this is most frequently accompanied by a reference to the time of day, or the state and occupation of the person saluted, e.g. good morning (lit. s. to you in the morning) *sanu da safe*, good evening *sanu da mareche*, welcome out of the rain *sanu da ruwa*; s. to you in your bereavement *sanu da kewa*; s. to you at your play *sanu da wargi*; s. to you at your work *sanu da*

aiki or *sanu da aikinku* or *sanunku da aiki*; spec. s. (among moslems) *salam*; shaking a spear or hand in s. *jafi* (S.); see also *jinjina*.

salute, tr. v. *gaida, gaishe, gaisa, jinjini*, e.g. I saluted the man *na gaida mutum*; spec. to go to s. (of sacred persons or places) *ziyara*; to s. several persons in turn *gaggaishe*.

salvation, n. *tsira, tsiraro, cheto*.

same, adj. *ḍaya* (lit. one), e.g. they are the s. *duk ḍaya ne*; this is the s. as that *wannan ḍaya kaman wanchan*; together at the s. time or place *gaba dai* or *gaba ḍaya*; the s. *hakanan*; as a determinative employ demonstrative pronouns, e.g. I saw the s. man yesterday in the market *na gani wannan* (or *wannan mutum* or *mutumen nan*) *jiya chikin kasuwa*.

sanctify, tr. v. *tsarkaka, tsarkaki*.

sand, n. *rairai, rerai, jiggawa* or *jigawa*; spec. fine s. *turbaya, turḍa* (S.); white s. in water *yashi*; grains of s. *barbadi*; s. mixed with grain *tarke*.

sandal, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*, *kufita*, *kufuta*, *kupta*, pl. *kufitai* or *kufutai*; sandals with red leather tops and hole for toe *sambatsai*; a light kind of decorated s. *tajawankai*.

sand-fly, *filfilwa*, *fiffilwa*, *ki-yashi*, *kyashi*, *kyafirfita*.

sand-grouse, *kwantatoyi*, *barwa*, *ladin rogo*.

sand-hill, a, n. *jiggawa*, *jigawa*.

sand-piper, *shārafage* (S.).

sangar, *shirgiya*.

sarcasm, *gatse*.

sasswood, *gwaska*.

Satan, pr. n. *Shaitan*, *Shetan* or *Shaitani*.

satchel, n. (leathern) *gāfaka*, *lāki*.

satin, *talashi**, *antalashi*.

satisfaction, n. 1. (of the appetite) *koshi*.

2. (of the feelings and emotions) *dadi*, e.g. we felt great s. *mun ji dadi dayawa*.

3. see **requite**.

satisfactory, it is, phr. *ya yi*.

satisfied, to be, intr. v. (of the appetites) *koshi*, *jin koshi*, e.g. they ate, they drank and were s. *sun chi sun sha sun koshi*; (of the emotions) *jin dadi*; cf. seq.

satisfied, a being, n. *koshi*; one who is s., n. *kosashe*, pl. *kosassu*.

satisfy, tr. v. (of the appetite) *kosad da*; (to pay claims, etc.) *biya*, *rama*.

Saturday, pr. n. of time *āsat*, *assabat*, *āsabar*, *āssibit*, *ranan assabat*.

sauce, n. *miya**.

sauciness, *taurin ido*.

sausage-tree, *rahaina*.

saunter, to *ragaiche*, see **idle**.

saunterer, *mai-ragaita*.

savage, n. (barbarians, uncivilised human beings) *baibayi*, pl. *baibai*, *babbawa* or *baubawa*.

savage, adj. (barbarian), cf. prec., (cruel) *da muni*.

savagery, n. (cruelty) *muni*, *zafin rai*, *ḡeta*.

save, tr. v. 1. (to rescue, deliver) *chira*, *chire*, *chiro* or *tsirus da*, *tsarda* (K.), *tsarshe*, *tsaras da* (Daura), *tsirad da*, *cheche*.

2. (of money = to lay by or up) *aje*.

save, exceptive prep. *sai*, see **but** 2.

saved, to be, intr. v. *chira*, *tsira*.

saviour, n. *mai-cheto*, *machechi*, pl. *macheta*.

savoury, adj. *garḡi*, fem. *garḡiya*, *da garḡi*, *da zaki*; for the opposite quality see **insipid**.

aw, n. *zarto*, *sassaķa*, *sasago**,
magāgāri.

aw, to *gāgāra*.

awdust, *dauso*.

ay, tr. v. *che* with pres. forms
chewa, *fādi*, *fāda*, *tāne**, e.g.
what do you say? *mi ka che?*
we are saying *muna chewa*;
it is said *an che*, *aka che*; he
said to them *ya che da su*, *ya*
fādi ma su; he says, it is
said, they s. (used to deter-
mine a phr. or clause as
uttered or admitted to be
true by others, like Engl.
fam. 'you know') *wai*; s. a
thing over again *tusa*; to s. off
by heart or rote *yin tulawa*.

aying, n. l. (something said)
magana, pl. *maganganu*; (a
popular s.) *sara*.

2. participial n. (act of s.)
chewa used with pres. forms
in *na*.

cab, n. *kurji*, pl. *kuraraji*,
kuraje; also *kirchi*, *gurje*,
bam̄baroki, *gyambo*; a s.
which has healed up *tambo*;
scabs coll. *balli-balli*.

cald, tr. v. (i.e. with hot
water) *sale* (K.), *swale* (S.).

cale, n. (as lichen, dandruff)
toto, *tautau*.

scale, to s. a fish *kankale*,
kankare.

scales, n. l. (of fish) *kumba*,

pl. *kumbuna*, *kumbabi* or
kumbai, *fofon kifi*; (of dead
alligator) *kirgin kāda*.

2. (balance) *mauna*, *ma-
auni*, *magwaji*, *mizani*, *ma-
gwadi*.

scan, v. (to look at with scru-
tiny) *yin kallo*, e.g. we walked
about scanning everything
mun yi yarwo muna kallon
dukachin abu.

scandal, *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegun-
guma*; one who spreads s.
mai-tsēgumi, *mai-tsēgunchi*.

scar, n. (cicatrix) *tabo*, *tambo*,
kūfa; scars *balli-balli*; scars
made on face serving as
tribal marks *shaushawa*; see
marks.

scatter, v. l. tr. *watsa*, *wache*,
watsar da, *barbada*, *wal-
wanche*, *warwache*, *warwatsa*,
rarraba or *rarrabi*.

2. intr. *watse*; they scat-
tered or were scattered *an*
watse su.

scattered, particip. pass. *watsu*.

scattering, *barbadauwa*, *kacha-
kacha*.

scent, n. l. (characteristic odour
of animals) *wari*, cf. seq.

2. (a sweet or agreeable
odour) *kamshi*, *kanshi*, *kamsa*,
turare, *wardi*; a plant the
root of which furnishes a s.
jiji.

scent, tr. v. (to recognise by the odour) *jin wari*; the dog scented the lion *kare ya ji warin zaki*.

scent-bottle, n. *wakiya, wakiyya*.

scented, keen-, adj. (of hounds) *mai-jin wari*.

scheme, n. (artful contrivance) *wayo, wayau*.

scholar, n. (a great scholar or teacher) *mālam, mālami*, pl. *malamai; masāni*, pl. *masana*; (a pupil) *almajiri*, pl. *almajirai, dan makaranta, makoyi, makoyi, makaranchi*; (used adjectively = learned), *mai-karatu*.

school, n. *makaranta*.

scissors, n. *almakashi*; joint of s. *gwarmi, kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*.

scoff at, to, v. *ba'a* and *yin ba'a*.

scold, v. *yin tsawa, buga tsawa, tsawata da*, e.g. he scolded her well *ya yi ma ta tsawa dayawa*.

scold, a, *mai-fitina*.

scorch, tr. v. *farcha, yin farsa*.

score, n., of number *lāso, hauya*, the latter is esp. used in counting cowries, e.g. he loses two thousand cowries *ya bar hauya dari*.

scores, to pay off s. *rama gaya*.

scorn, n. *gaya, ba'a, bananchi*.

scorn, v. *rena*, see **despise**.

scorpion, n. *kunāma*, pl. *kunamomi* or *kunamai, duwu munumunu*.

scourge, n. *bulala*.

scourge, tr. v. *yin bulala*.

scout, n. *majewayi*, see **spy**.

scowl, intr. v. *damre fuska*.

scramble for anything, v. *wasashe, wawashe, yasash (S.)*.

scrambling, *wasoso*.

scrape, tr. v. *karkari*, (to s. clean and so polish) *gogi* or *goge, fafe, kwarzane*, e.g. he is scraping the axe-handle *shina gogewa bakin gatari* to s. or s. out *rede, tujje tuttuje*; to s. up or grub up e.g. roots *tona, tone*; to s. out a dish *sude*.

scraper, a *gurzago, gurjago* a s. used in dressing leather *kartaje*.

scrapings, e.g. of a dish *sudi*.

scratch, tr. v. *yin susa, yizuzza, yin farta, gurza, yoyaga*; to s. up with the nail *karche, kwarzane*.

scratching, *susa*.

scream, n. *ihu, ifurwa, ujukururuwa, tsuwa*.

scream, intr. v. *yin ifu, yit suwa*.

screw, v., to s. up the eye *rumchi, rumtse*.

scribe, *marubuchi*, pl. *marubuta*.

scum, n. *kunfa*, *kumfa*, *yana*; s. from molten lead *kāshintāma*.

sea, n. *gulbi**, *kogi**.

seal, n. *zobe*, *zoben shaida*, *mazubi*, *hatumi*, *hatimi*, *hadufi*, *tambari*.

seal-ring, n. *zoben shaida*.

seam, n. (in cloth) *albada*, pl. *albadu* or *albalodi*, *shafi*, *shafe*, pl. *shafofi* or *shafeshafe*; spec. a breadth between seams of cloth *chiki*.

seamless, adj. (applied to cloth) *livasa*.

sear, tr. v. (with hot iron, to cauterise) *lalas*, *sa lalas*.

search, n. *chigiya*, *chiwirwiri*, *tsiwurwuri*; to make diligent s. *yin chigiya*, *bada chigiya*, *bīda*.

search, v., to s. after or for *nema*, *bīda*, *chigita*, *nūfe*, *nūfi*, *nifa**; to s. for with the hand *lalabe*, *fafake*; make search *nema*.

searching after, n. (desire and object of desire) *maradi* or *muradi*.

season, n. 1. gen. (usual or proper time) *sa'a*, *lokachi*, *loto*.

2. (division of the year with respect to weather, etc.) dry (and hot) s. *rani*; it is

the dry s. *ya yi rani*; the hottest part of dry s., when the rains are beginning *bazara*; the wet s. *damana*, *damuna*, *damina*.

seasoning, *yakuwa*.

seat, n. *mazamni* (i.e. spot on which anyone sits), *kujera*, *bige**, *turāka* (K.); a s. outside a house *dakali*; judgment s., also s. on which a king is carried about *karaga*.

secede, intr. v. (to separate from, withdraw from) *raba* and *rabu* with *da* or *daga*.

second, ord. num. *na-biyu*, fem. *ta-biyu*, also *na-baya*, fem. *ta-baya*.

secrecy, *asiri*, *ashiri**.

secret, n. *ḥoya*, *asiri*, *kara**; in s., see **secretly**.

secret, adj. *na-asiri*, fem. *ta-asiri*, *da asiri*; a s. place *lalokin asiri*; vv. to keep s. *rufe*, *rufa*, *rufi* or *rife*, *karata**; to make s. or to discuss secretly *asirta*; to talk secrets *yin gāna*.

secretly, adv. *da asiri*, *a ḥoye*; see prec.

section, n. *gedawa**.

secure, adj., see **safety**.

secure, tr. v. (from danger, harm, etc.), see **guard**, (fam. to catch, capture, e.g. a prisoner) *kama*, (to guarantee

payment of a debt, etc.) see seq.

security, n. 1. (part payment of a debt as s., earnest money) *amāna*.

2. (a thing left as s., a pledge) *jingina*.

3. (responsibility for a debt, etc. = guarantee) *lamuni, taulahi, tallafi*; I stood or went s. *na yi lamuni*.

sedge, fragrant s. *kajiji*; wild s. *dan tunuga, gemen kusu, aya aya*.

sediment, n. *gwiba, gwibi* or *gwibi*.

seduce, tr. v. *farke, rude, bāshe*.

see, tr. v. *gani, gano*, often contracted to *gan*, e.g. I saw her *na gan ta*, also to *gā* which is very commonly used as an imperative, e.g. s. him, or s. here *ga shi*, *gani* is also used in a pregnant sense to perceive, recognise, understand; to s. from afar *tsinkaya, tsinkayi, hango*.

seed, n. gen. (of plants, men, creatures) *iri*, pl. *irare, iri-iri*; spec. seeds crowded together *gurguzu, gurgusu*.

seedling, *shuka, shukakke*.

seeing, participial n. *ganewa*.

seek, tr. v. (to search for) *nema, bida*, e.g. wait till you are

sought for *sai am bide ka*; to s. after (often implying to set the heart upon) *dawainiya*; to s. again *zobe*; to s. for *tuski, tuske*; pregn. s. and return with *bido*, e.g. let her be sought and brought here, *a bido ta*; to go to s. and return with *nemo*.

seen, pass. particip. *gananne*, fem. *gananiya*, pl. *ganannu*.

segment, e.g. of a kola-nut *azara* (Z.), *bare* (K.).

seize, tr. v. (to lay hold of) *kāma*, intens. *kankama, make*; to s. (esp. in order to eat) *rida*; to s. forcibly as in war *yin buruntu, kwache*; (to snatch) *amshi*; to s. and bring *kankamo*; to s. in the arms *dadume*; to s. a person by the collar *dagume*.

select, tr. v. *zaba, zabe, zabi**, *wari*, the last often used of choosing out one or more pieces.

selected, pass. particip. *zababbe*, fem. *zababba*, pl. *zababbu*.

self, n. expressed by *kai* and *rai* with possess. pronouns, I, myself *ni da kaina, ni kaina*, also less commonly *ni raina* and *raina*.

selfishness, *kurmusu**.

self-laudation, n. *kirari*.

sell, tr. v. *sayas, sayar*, and when followed by an object *saida* or *sayas da, saishē, sawo, talla*; the last also esp. of having or exposing on or for sale, e.g. good camels are to-day selling in the market *raḱumma nagargaru ana sayar da su yau chikin kasuwa*; in the sense of consenting to s. the pass. of *sallama* is often used, e.g. I agree to s. = I let it go or you can have it *a sallame shi*; it is unsaleable *ya ḱi sayuwa*.

seller, n. *mai-saida*, pl. *masu-saida*.

selling, *saisuwa*, buying and s. *saya da sayarwa*.

send, tr. v. *aika, aike*, which also = to s. forth, from or to; to s. to where the speaker is *aiko*, (with a person only as obj., lit. to rouse up, to start) *tāda*, e.g. I sent a messenger *na tāda manzo*; to s. back *mayas da, mayar da, yarda*; to s. away *tayas da*; to cast, throw, e.g. a bullet *jefa*.

sending, n. *aike*.

senna, n. *filasko**.

sense, n. l. (i.e. good s., understanding) *hankali*; a man of s. *mutum mai-hankali*.

2. (signification) see **meaning**.

senseless, adj. (stupid, foolish) *maras-hankali, magagachi*; (insensible, unconscious) see seq.

senses, n. (the faculties of sensation) *hankali*, e.g. he is in a faint and senseless but in a little while he will come to his s. again *shina suma hankalinsa kurwa ya ḱache amma jima kaḱan hankalinsa zai komo kuma gare shi*.

sensible, adj. (prudent, intelligent) *mai-hankali*.

sensibly, adv. (with good sense) *da hankali*.

sent, pass. particip. *aikakke*, fem. *aikakka*, pl. *aikakku*; one s., n. *ma-aika, manzo*; spec. one s. from God *rasulu**.

sentence, n. (judicial decision) *shari'a*; to pass s. *yin shari'a*.

sentinel, n. *gāta*, pl. *gataye, bage*.

sentry, n., see prec.

sentry-post, *mabāga* (S.).

separate, adj. *bambam, akeḱe*, e.g. s. from that *bambam daga wanchan*.

separate, v. l. tr. *rāba* and *rābi**, *rabda, rabshe, kēḱe, keḱanche, keḱanta, wāre*.

2. intr. *rābu*; to s. from *zau-da**; separating *ḱamḱaruwa*.

separated, pass. particip. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.

separately, adv. *dāki dāki*.

separation, n. *rābo*, *rābuwa*, *baran-baran*.

serene, adj., see **calm**, **clear**, **quiet**.

serious, cf. the matter has become s. *magana ta bunkāsa*.

serjeant, *saje**.

sermon, n. *wa'azi*.

serpent, n., see **snake**.

serval-cat, *rabji*, *rabbi*.

servant, n. (not slave) *bāra*, fem. *bāranya* or *barainya*, pl. *bārori* and pl. of multitude *bāruwa* or *barwa*, which implies a large number such as a king would have, *dan daki*; a female s. *maaikiya*; s. of God *barwan Allah* (lit. slave of God).

serve, v. 1. (of one not a slave) *yin barantāka*.

2. (of a slave) *yin bauta*; this is also the proper term (as the more respectful) for to s. God or to s. false gods.

service, n. 1. gen. *ibāda*.

2. (of one not a slave) *barantāka*, that of a slave being *bauta* (servitude, slavery), hence its use as given in prec. 2.

3. (relig.) s. of God *ibāda*;

concr. divine s. (public worship) *salla*.

servitude, n., see **slavery**.

sesame, n. *riḍi*, *liḍi*.

set, tr. v. (gen. to place) *sā*;
intr. (of the sun) *faḍi*, e.g. the sun s. *rana ta faḍi*; combinations of to s. with particles, etc. are: to s. apart from *raba*, to s. aside (to reject) *ḷi*, to s. aside (to omit for the present) *bari*, *bar*; to s. by and to s. down (e.g. on the ground) *aje*; to s. forth (to exhibit, state) *gaya*; to s. up *tayas*, *kafa*, to s. upon (to assault) *yin firmaki*; he is s. upon *ana yi da shi*.

setting, the s. of a fractured limb *ḍori*; a bone setter *mai-ḍori*.

settle, v. 1. tr. (gen. to arrange, set right) *gyara*; (to pay, liquidate) *biya*, e.g. I settled the debt *na biya bashi*; he settled the dispute *ya raba gardama*.

2. intr. (to alight, or to fix one's habitation or stay) *sauka*.

seven, card. num. *bakwai*; s. times *sau bakwai*; by sevens *bakwai bakwai*; s. thousand *saba'a*.

seventeen, card. num. *goma sha bakwai*, *sha bakwai*.

seventh, ord. num. *na-bakwai*,
fem. *ta-bakwai*.

seventh, one-s. part *subu'i*.

seventieth, ord. num. *na-sabaïn*, fem. *ta-sabaïn*.

seventy, card. num. *sabaïn*.

sew, tr. v. *dumke*, *dunke*, *dumka* or *dumki*, *läfe*.

sewing, n., s. at edge of a garment *tindumi*; v., to darn or tack in s. *yin lalabtu*; s. thread *mandawari*.

sh! n. (the sound of hissing) *shishita*.

shackle, v. *sā* with seq. and *ma*, e.g. we shackled them *mun sa ma su malwa*; let him be shackled *a sa masa gigar*.

shackles, n. *malwa*, *marwa*, *gigar*, see also **fetters**.

shade, n. *inuwa*; a broad s. *inuwa mai-fadi*; to enjoy the s. of *sha inuwa*.

shadow, n. *inuwa*, e.g. a man does not leave his s. behind him *mutum bai bari ba inuwa tasa ga baya*.

shake, v. 1. tr. *gilgiza*, *girgiza*, *yin shillu*, *rauda*, e.g. he shook his head *ya rauda kai nasa*; to s. the head in token of assent *kāda kai*; to s. as in winnowing *tankade*, *motsa*; to s. off, e.g. dust *kalkada*, *kalkade*, *kankade*, *karkade* and *kakkabe*; to s. out *wal-*

wache, *walwanche*, *warwache*; to s. to and fro *yin reto*, *yin shillu*; to s. violently *jijiga*.

2. intr. *motsa*, also fig. in the wider sense of being agitated, influenced, moved, e.g. the whole multitude were shaken at the news of war *taro duka ya motsa da labarin yaki*; to s. (as to tremble, shiver, shudder with cold, etc.) *raura*.

shaken, pass. part. *gilgizazze*, fem. *gilgizazzaya*, pl. *gilgizazzu*.

shaking, n. (or trembling) *raurawa*; s. hands *ban hannu*, *masāfiha*.

shall, aux. v. 1. (of futurity) *za*, e.g. what s. I do now? *mi za ni yi yanzu?*

2. (of obligation), see **must**, **necessary**.

shallow, adj. *ba* (or *babu*) *zurfi*, *ba mai-zurfi*.

shambles, n. *wurin fawa*.

shame, n. *kumya* (S.), *kunya* (K.), *fulako*; the parts of s. *al'aura*; to feel s. *jin kumya*; to put to s. *sa* (*ba* and *bada*) *kumya*, *kumyata*, *kumyache*, e.g. he put him to open s. *ya sa shi kumya* (*abude* or) *a sarari*.

shameful, adj. *na kumya*, *da kumya*; a s. thing *abin kumya*.

shameless, adj. *da kwarkwasa, shākiyi, maras-kumya, babu kumya.*

shamelessness, n. *kolkosa, kor-kosa, shākiyanchi, walle.*

shape, n. (form) *kama, sifa.*

shape, tr. v. (to fashion, create), see **make** 1.

share, n., see **part**, **portion**.

share, tr. v., see **divide**; spec. to invite to s. in one's food *chuna*; to s. a house *tara gida*; a room shared with another *ḍakin taraiya*; one who shares *abokin taraiya*.

sharing, (i.e. possessing in common) *taraiya* (K.), *tarewa* (S.).

sharp, adj. 1. (having a fine edge) *da kaifi, da chaḥi.*

2. (finely pointed) *da tsini, mai-tsini.*

sharp, to be *chaḥe, kaifafa.*

sharpen, tr. v. *wāsa, yin washi, chaḥa, dāda, yin dādi, fika, feke, kaifafa, gyarta,* e.g. let this knife be sharpened *a wāsa wukagga*; it is sharpened *ta wasu*; to s. a sword *koda*.

sharpening, *wāshi.*

sharpening swords, a tool for, n. *magagari.*

sharper, a *ḍan tugu.*

shatter, tr. v. (intens.) *farfasha* or *palpashē.*

shave, v. (with razor) *aski, aske, aska,* and *yin aski.*

shaving, verbal n., spec. s. the front of head or so as to leave only a tuft on top of head *kwambe*; s. one side of the head by a woman as sign of sorrow *faskare*; baldness caused by s. *kundumi*; s. the whole head or s. in two longitudinal lines each side of the crown *sariya.*

shavings, of wood *totuwa.*

shawl, made in strips, n. *al-killā.*

she, pers. pron. fem. 1. separate and emphatic *ita*, e.g. it is s. *ita che.*

2. in combination with verbs *ta*, e.g. s. saw him *ta gan shi*, the woman said no *mache ta che a'a.*

shea-butter, n. *ḍanḍan ka-ḍanya*; the s.-b. tree *ka-ḍanya*; fruit of the s.-b. tree *kāde.*

sheaf, n. (also bundle of anything) *dāme, dāmi*, pl. *damma*; spec. s. of arrows *shiba**.

shear, tr. v. *yin sosaiye.*

shearing, verbal n. *sausaye.*

sheath, n. (for knife, sword) *kube.*

shed, n. *rumbu, rumpa, rumfa,* pl. *rumfuna, rinfa* (K.), esp. used of a s. or booth in a

- market-place; a temporary s. *bukka*, pl. *bukkoki*, *ambuta*, *dābi*; a cattle s. *garke*, *garge* (S.), *zaren shanu*.
- shed**, tr. v. (to pour out or down) *zuba*, *zubo*; to s. tears *yin hawaye*.
- sheep**, *tumkiya*, pl. *tumāki*; a s. with two wattles hanging from lower jaw *tumkiya mailawaye* (or *mailayu*).
- sheep-fold**, n., see **fold**.
- sheet**, n. (of paper) *taba'al takarda*; a winding s. *likka-fani*, *kafan*.
- sheikh**, *shaihu*.
- shelf**, a *alkuki**; rope supporting a s. *ragaya*, pl. *ragayu*; a s. made with mud *zaga*.
- shell**, n. (hard covering of fruit, eggs, etc.) *kwasfa*, *kosfa*, pl. *kwasfofi* or *kosfofi*, *kwanso*, e.g. break the nut, and peel off the s. *ka kariye gujiya ka bare kwasfa*; s. of snails *katantanwa*, *alkoto*, *alkwato*, a mussel s. *makankari*; s. of a tortoise *kwariya* (K.), *kwachiya* (S.).
- shell**, tr. v. (to take off the peel or shell) *bare*, *fēke* (S.), *yin fira* (or *fira*).
- shell-fish**, an edible, n. *kumba*, pl. *kumbuna* or *kumbobi*, *kumbai*.
- shelter**, n. (protection from light and heat) *inuwa*, (a place of refuge) *gidan chira*, *wurin chira*; a rough grass s. *sangaya*.
- shepherd**, n. *makiyaye*, *makiyayi*, pl. *makiyaya* or *makiyaya* (S.).
- sherd**, of pots, etc. n. *katanga*, *tsingaro* (S.), *sakaina*, pl. *sakainu*.
- shield**, n. gen. *garkuwa*, pl. *garki*, *garkinne*, *kariya*, also in a loose sense (lit. battle equipment) *kayan dāga*; spec. a large round s. made of skin *kūtufāni*; a large white oblong s. like that of the Zulus, usually carried by high officials *kwangara*; a small s. *kunkeli*; a s. made of skin *makāri*, *dangi*; a s. made from the skin of the white oryx *walwaji*, *warwaji*, pl. *walwazoji*.
- shin-bone**, *kwabri*, *ḡabri*, *kwauri* (K.), pl. *kwabruka*, *kwobruka*, *ḡbruka*.
- shine**, intr. v. *ba* (or *bada*) *haske*, *haskaka*; the lightning shines brighter than the sun *walkiya ta fi rana haske*; the sun is shining *ana rana*.
- shining**, adj. *mai-haske*.
- shirking**, n. *bahilchi*.
- shirk work**, v. *huji*, see **idle**.
- shirt**, n. *tūfa*, *tūfuwa*, pl. *tūfafi*

or *tūfofi* worn under the gown; a shirt with narrow sleeves *aganiya*, *riga*, pl. *riguna*, which sometimes = a large s.; a small s. *ya-chīki*; an inside, pleated s. *kwakwata*; a s. without arms *binjima*, *bi-jima*; a s. like a tobe but smaller with short sleeves *tāgo* (S.), pl. *tagogi*, *taguwa* (K.), pl. *taguwoyi*; a s. worn by women *shaya*; a quilted s. of mail worn by horse soldiers *lifidi*, *lifdi*.

shiver, (to tremble, shudder) *firgita*, *firgiche*, *raura*.

shivering, n. *makarkata*.

shoe, n. *takalmi*, pl. *takalma*, *wufi**, *wupi**; he took off the s. *ya fitas da takalmi*; a s. strap *ma-ḥallin takalmi*; spec. small s. worn inside boots *sufadu*, pl. *sufadai*; two odd shoes *gamin bauta*.

shoot, v. 1. tr. (to hit with a shot, etc.) *halbi*, *harbi*; e.g. he was shot *aka halbe shi da bindiga* (if with an arrow *da kibiya*); cf. the leopard is hard to s. *damisa da wuyan halbewa*; to s. towards the speaker *halbo*, past particip. shot *halbebe*.

2. intr. (to discharge a gun) *halbi bindiga* or *buga bindiga*.

3. of plants to s. or s. forth *yin tofo*, *sumḥula*.

shooting, n. (the killing of game) *farauta*; to go s. *yin farauta*.

shooting star, n. *mashin tam-raru*.

shoots, of plants *yabainya*.

shopkeeper, *sambani*, see **trader**.

shore, *gāḥa*, *gāchi*, see **bank**.

short, adj. 1. (of length) *gājēre*, fem. *gājēra* and *gājēriya*, pl. *gājēru*, also *ḥarami* (lit. small), cf. *guntu*; s. sighted *garara*; to give s. measure *bante*, *tsakare*.

2. (of time) *kaḍan*, e.g. a s. while *jima kaḍan*.

short of, fall, intr. v. *kāsa*, *gāza*, e.g. thy days are numbered, thou canst not pass them nor come s. of them *kwanukanka madudai ne ba ka wuche su ba ka kāsa su*.

shortness, n. *gajarta*, *gajerta*, *hilafa**.

shot, n. (ball, bullet) *harsashe*, *yahaya**.

shoulder, n. *kafaḍa*, pl. *kafaḍu*, *kafaḍoḍi*, *kanfāle* (S.), *karfata*, *karpata* (S.); the two last are especially applied to the shoulders of animals, the part from the

s. to the elbow *damtse*, pl. *damutsa* or *damatsu*.

shout, n. *ifu, wu, guda*; see **cry**.

shout, intr. v. *yin ifu*.

shouting, *sowa, sowwa*; there was s. *ana sowa*; much s. *sowa sowa*.

shove, tr. v., see **push**.

show, n. (ornamental display) *ado*.

show, tr. v. (to point out an object, also to inform, explain) *gwada, göda, nūna, nuni*, e.g. he showed me it.

showing, verbal n. in both senses of prec. *nunawa*.

shrew-mouse, with bad odour *jaba*.

shrike, n. *bambami*; helmet s. *kare-dangi*.

shrink, intr. v. (from cold, etc.) *firgita*; (to shrivel up) *takura*; to s. from *toge ma*; they shrank from him *sun kare da shi*.

shrinking, *tsika*.

shrivel, intr. v. *yin yaushi, kandare*; it shrivels up *ya yi yaushi*.

shrivelling, n. *yaushi*.

shroud, n. *likkafani*.

shrub, n., see *kaikaya, yaḍia, biyarana, fidali*, etc.; a shrub forming hedges (*Jatropha curcas*) *bi-ni-da-zugu, chi-ni-da-zugu*.

shudder, intr. v. *raura*.

shuddering, *tsika*.

shun, tr. v., see **avoid**.

shut, tr. v. *rufe, rufi* or *rife, sāda*, e.g. let not the door be s. *kada a rufe kofa*; to s. a box, door, etc. *yane*; to s. up *sada, turbude*.

shuttle, n. *masaka, koshiya*; the sliding wooden cylinder which works longitudinally in the s. *kwarkwaro*.

shy, v., of a horse *baude*.

sick, adj. *da chiwo, marili**; one who is s. *mai-chiwo*, pl. *masu-chiwo, maras-lafiya, majinachi, majinyachi, majiyachi*.

sick, be, v. 1. (to be in bad health) *jin* (or *yin*) *chiwo*, also *da chiwo* with forms in *na*, e.g. he is s. *shina da chiwo*.

2. (to feel nausea) *jin kumallo*.

sickle, a small semicircular s., n. *lauje, laushe* (Zanf.), *magirbi*.

sickness, n. *chiwo, chiwuta, chiwurwuta, jinya, jinya-jinya*; the following words designate special forms: (a cold) *mājina*; (a fainting fit) *falfada*; (pestilence, plague) *alloba, bala'i*; (vomiting) *amai*.

side, n. 1. gen. *waje*, pl. *wajeje*;

one on this s. and one on the other s. *ḍaya ga wajen nan ḍaya ga wajen chan*; from this s. (of a room, glen, etc.) even to that s. *dāga sassan nun har ga sassan chan*; the right s. *wajen dama, dama*; the left s. *wajen (hawni or) hagum, hagum, hagun*; s. of a body (also = edge) *ḵauye*; the s. or edge of a stream *ḵauyen ruwa*.

2. s. of the body (esp. between the bottom of the ribs and the thigh-bone) *kwibi*; s. (rib) of an animal *awaza*, pl. *awazzai*; on one s. a *ḵauye*.

sieve, n. *rariya, rairaya, leleya**; a vessel with holes used as a coarse s. *tukunya, matachiya, mararaki, marari**; a s. used for separating gold from sand, etc. *matankaḍi*.

sift, to *tuche, tankaḍe* or *yin tankaḍe, bakache*.

sigh, n. *sheda*, pl. *shedodi*.

sigh, intr. v. *yin sheda, sinihi**, *sinishi**.

sighing, n. *ajiyar zuchiya*.

sight, n. 1. (the faculty of vision) no precise equivalent, turn, e.g. he lost the s. of his eye *idonsa ya ḥache*.

2. (the act of seeing, also view) *ido, gani* thus, in the s. of all men *idon duniya*; the s. of her will console them *ganinta zai ma su hankuri*; the s. of them made everybody laugh *ganinsu ya sa kowanne dariya*; dim (or dimness of) s. *ḥamḥarokai*; one who has defective s. *garara*.

sign, n. gen. *shaida*, pl. *shaidodi*, which also = s. or mark made by one who cannot write his name; (important or wonderful token, intimation) *alama*, often pronounced *halama*, pl. *alamomi*; *aya*, pl. *ayoyi, nūni*; a s. adduced or appealed to as a reason or authority *dalili*.

signet, n. *mataushin watika*; s. ring *zoben shaida*.

silence, n. *shiriyu, shiru, shiyu, shuru* or *shu, kurum, kawai, kurumta, kurumchi, zugum* (S.); in s. *shiriyu, kurum*, e.g. leave them in s. *a bar su kurum*; to keep s. *yin kawai*; he kept s. *ya ja bakinsa*.

silence, to *kawaita*.

silent, adj. *kawai* or *kauwai, jurum*.

silent, to be, v. *shiriyu, kurum* and *kawai* with *yi* or

the forms in *na*, e.g. be silent! *ka yi shiru*, *kame bakinka*; we were s. *mun yi kurum*; he is s. *shina kurum* or *shina yin kawai*.

silently, adv. *shiru*.

silk, *alharini*, *sirki**, *adalashi*; a cord or chain of s. *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* and *siliyoyi*.

silk cotton tree, n. *rimi*, *rini*; red-flowered s. c. t. *gurjiya*; the seed of the s. c. t. *guriya* (S.), *anguriya* (K.).

silken, adj. *na alharini*.

silkworm, a species of, n. *tsamiya*.

silly, adj., see fool, foolish.

silver, n. *azurfa*.

silver, adj. *na-azurfa*, fem. *ta-azurfa*.

similar, adj., see like.

similar, to be, v. *daidaiche*, see under like.

similitude, n. *misali*; to speak by a s. *yin misali*.

sin, n. *zunufi*, *zunubi*, *laifi*, pl. *laifufuka*, *kuskuri**; to commit s., see seq.

sin, intr. v. *yin zunubi* (or *zunufi*), *yin laifi*.

since, l. prep. (after, from the time of) *tun*, e.g. s. your birth *tun haifuwarka*; s. the commencement of the war *tun farawar yaki*.

2. conj. of time (after that, from the time that) *tun da*, e.g. s. we learnt that he was an infidel *tun da mun sani shi kafiri ne*.

3. adv., long s. *tun daɗe*, *tun daɗewa*, *tuntuni*, *tuni*; how long s.? *tun yaushe*? e.g. how long s. did you learn Hausa? *tun yaushe ka koyo Hausa?*

4. conj. (because) *don*, *zama*, e.g. they cannot move since they are lifeless *ba su iya yin motsi ba don ba su da rai*.

sincere, adj., see honest.

sing, v. *yin waka*.

singe, to *babbake*.

singer, a mounted *bambade*, pl. *bambadawa*.

single, adj. *barābara*; a s. one of a pair, of which one has been lost *kangarwa*; see alone, one.

singly, adv., e.g. question them s. (one by one) *ka tambaya su ɗaya ɗaya*, see also alone.

singular, adj. *mufuradi*, see plural.

sink, n. (a place of filth, also fig.) *salga*, pl. *salgagi*.

sink, v. l. intr. (to go under water) *nutsa* (K.), *nuta* (S.), *nutse*, *nitso*, *ninkāya*, e.g. the boat is sinking *jirigi*

shina nutsa; to s., i.e. to fall, e.g. of a man wounded or of the sun descending *fadi*.

2. (to subside) *kāfe*.

3. tr. (to immerse) *nuche*, *nutse*; spec. to s. a well *gina rijiya*.

sinless, adj. *maras-laifi*.

sinner, n. *mai-zunubi*.

sip, n. *guwa*; to take one s. *sha daya*.

sip, v. *kurba*.

sipping, n. *kurbi*.

sister, n. *shikikiya*, *zumniya* (S. and Daura), (usually = younger s.) *kanuwa*; elder s. *ya*.

sit, intr. v. (also to s. down) *zamna* or *zauna*; to s. on the ground with legs crossed and elbows on knees *gishinkida*, *kishinkida*, *gijirta*; to s. with outspread legs *tagangana*; to s. at ease *mimiķe*; to make to s. down *zamshe*; a sitting place *mazauni*, *mazamni*.

site, n. *wuri*, pl. *wurare*; to mark out a s. *sha wuri*.

six, card. num. *shidda*; s. times, adv. *sau shidda*; by sixes or s. each *shidda shidda*.

sixth, adj. *na-shidda*, fem. *ta-shidda*; one-s. part *sudusi**

sixtieth, ord. num. *na-sittin*, fem. *ta-sittin*.

sixty, card. num. *sittin*; also *gomiya shidda*.

size, n. *girma* employed thus: its fruit is large in s. *diyata suna da girma*; the s. of the jerboa exceeds that of the mouse *kurege ya fi bera girma*; to become (or grow) large in s. *yin girma*.

skewer, *tsinken nama*; to fix on a s. *soke a tsinke*, *tsire**, done.

skilful, adj. (in an art, etc.) *goni*, *gwani*, *gwanaye*, *mai-gwani*; (in artifice) *mai-wayo*, pl. *masu-wayo*, (esp. in war) *gardaye*.

skilfully, adv. *gwani*, *da gwani*, *da wayo*, *da dubara*.

skill, n. (in an art or profession) *gwani*, *gwaninta*; (in artifice) *wayo*; (in contrivance, resource) *dabāra* or *dubāra*; (with implication of opportunity and readiness) *tsarafi**

skim, tr. v. (milk) *yāde*, *kwalfe*, *kolfe*.

skimming, of milk *kwalfa*, *kolfa*.

skin, n. gen. *fāta*, pl. *fātuna*, *pāta*, *fiska*; (hide) *kilāgo*, pl. *kilagai*; *kilabo*, *agalemi*, *langabu**; s. after tanning *kirgi*; cast s. of serpent *swaba* or *saba*, *zana*; he casts his

s. *ya yi swaba*; a s. bag or bottle *salka*, pl. *salkuna*; a s. used for drawing water from well *guga*; a covering of skins *tunku*; a s. wrapper *walki*.

skin, tr. v. *kware, kwari, feda, fede*; see also **flay**.

skink, banded s. (*Scinopus fasciatus*) *damatsiri, tamatsiri* (S.); red-bellied s. (*Maibia Perrotteti*) *kulba*.

skip, v. (to spring along or over lightly) *bira*; (to pass over without reading passages in a book) *chingara, tsälache*.

skipping, *tsalle*.

kull, n. *kwalluwa, kwakwaluwa, kollo, kwanya, kwanyan kai, kashin kai* (lit. bone of the head).

kunk, a kind of *tunku*, see under **cat**.

ky, n. *säma*, pl. *samaniya* or *sammai, duniya, gari**.

lacken, v. 1. see **loosen**.

2. tr. v. (to relax, mitigate) *rägi* or *rage*; intr. (to be relaxed, mitigated) *ragu*, e.g. the heat of the fire slackened *zafin wuta ya ragu*.

lackness, *sainyin jiki*.

lander, *chimbaya, tsurutu* (S.), *hardi*.

anderer, *maradi*.

ap, v. *kalle*.

slash, tr. v. (to cut by striking, i.e. not by drawing the edge along, which is *yanka sare*).

slaughter, tr. v. *yanka* or *yanke, karkäshe, kakkäshe*; to s. animals *yin fauta*.

slaughter-house, n. *wurin fawa, mahanta*.

slaughtering, n. *fawa*.

slave, n. *bawa*, fem. *baiwa, baiya, boya* (S.) or *barwuya**, pl. *bayi* or *bai*; spec. chief s. of a king *kachalla, yari*; a female s. *baiwa* (as above), *kuyanga* or *kwiyanga*, pl. *kuyangai, kuyangi*; *yan turäka*, (also concubine) *sadaka, kwarakwara* or *kwarkwara, bawan gida*; the son of a s. but free *bachucheni, dimajo*; a s. the offspring of a negro father and Tuarek mother *buzu*; a s. who begs *mauro*; a s. about 14 years old *magudanchi, mugudanchi*, pl. *magudantai*; a strong s. *kato*, fem. *katuwa*; a runaway s. *gujajje**; a s. holder *mai-bawa*; a s. raiding expedition *samame, shäri*; v. to free a s. *yanchi*; a s. raider *mahäri*.

slavery, n. *bauchi, bauta, bawanchi*; liberation from s. *diyauchi* or *diyanchi*; redemption from s. *fansa*

usually pronounced *pansa*; to redeem from s. *yin fansa*, *bada* (or *ba*) *diyauchi*, e.g. he freed them from s. *ya bada su diyauchi*.

slay, tr. v., see **kill**.

sleep, n. *barchi*, *kwana*, *kwan-chiya*; the last s. (death) *maḡarin barchi*.

sleep, intr. v. *barchi* with *yi* or forms in *na*, also *kwana* or *kwanche*; the former refer rather to the physical condition, the latter convey also the idea of reposing, lying down to s., e.g. we did not hear the howling of the dogs, we were sleeping *ba mu ji kukan karnuka muna barchi*; we slept at that place *mun kwana a wurin nan*; sleeping *kwantawa*, *kwanchiya*; cf. my foot has gone to s. *mijiriya ta kama kafata*.

sleepiness, n. *gyangyadi*; to be overcome by s. *yin gyan-gyada*.

sleeping-place, n. *makwanche*; spec. s.-p. (e.g. in a tree) affording protection from wild beasts *saura**.

sleeping sickness, *bamota*.

sleeve, n. *hännu* or *hännun riga*; a sleeve-knife the blade of which is worn along or up the s. *wuḡar hännu*.

sleight of hand, *dabo*.

slender, *lange lange*, see **lean**.

slice, a *gunduwa*.

slide, intr. v., see **slip**.

slight, adj., see **thin**.

slight, tr. v. *rēna*, *raina*.

slim, *shallali*.

sling, v., to s. anything over the shoulder *sāba*.

sling, n. *bindo*, *elawa*, *maja jaiwa*, *majejawa*, *majaujawa*, *majujawa*; sword s. *hamāla* a s. for carrying a child on the back *gumya*.

slinging, *ragaya*, *rataya*.

slip, n. (loss of foothold by sliding) *samtsi*, *santsi*, *sand* (S.); to make a s. *yin samtsi*, *yin talalabiya*, e.g. he made a s. *ya yi samtsi*.

slip, intr. v. 1. (to lose foothold by sliding) *samtse*, *yin samtsi*, *yin talalabiya*, *gwabchi*, *tuzga*, *tuzge*, *rabkana rafkama*; the last also = to s. into, e.g. he slipped into the well *ya gwabche chikin rijiya* to s. as in soft mud *kafiya*.

2. (to escape hold) *kubche sumbule*; of things, e.g. the sword slipped from my grasp *takobi ya kubche daga hannuna*; of persons (to leave or get away easily from companions, etc.) *zūḡe*, *rabu* to try to s. out (used of a

animal in a trap) *kūbche-kūbche*; of a knot to s. *sumḅule*.

slipperiness, n. *samtsi, santsi, sandi* (S.), *samche, sulḅi, tala-labiya*.

slippery, adj. *dasamtsi*, see **slip**.

slipping down or out, participial n. *sumḅulewa*.

slit, n., a s. in a seam *ḅarāka*; a s. in a stick *gebe**.

slit, tr. v. *keta*.

slough, n. (cast skin of serpent) *swaḅa* or *saba*; to cast a s. *yin swaḅa*.

slow, adj. (one who goes slowly or deliberately) *mai-nauwa*.

slowcoach, *madudu* (S.), see **idle**.

slowly, adv. *sannu-sannu*; very s. *sannu-sannu*.

slumber, n. and v., see **sleep, sleepiness**.

slush, *taḅo, chaḅi, potopoto*.

sly, adj. *da wayo, mai-wayo*, pl. *masu-wayo*; see **skilful**.

small, adj. *ḅarami*, fem. *ḅarama, ḅaramiya*, pl. *ḅaramu, ḅanḅane*, fem. *ḅanḅanuwa*, pl. *ḅanḅana, ḅanana*; smallest *auta**; anything s., n. *kima, abuhika, kusugu**; s. quantity of *ḅaranchi*; s. money (shells) *yaskan kurḅi* (S.).

mall-pox, n. *āgana, ado, zanzana, ḅarambo, yar-rani*.

smart, a s. fellow *dāje*, fem. *dājiya*, pl. *dazoji*.

smash, tr. v. (to break to pieces with violence) *far-fasha, palpashe, ribḅe, rifḅe, rubḅe, rugunguza**, *murtsuke*.

smashed, particip. pass. *mur-jaje*, fem. *murjajiya*, pl. *mur-jaju*; *murtsukakke*, pl. *murtsukakku*.

smear, tr. v. (e.g. with oil) *shāfa, shāfe, yafa**.

smell, n. (odour), an agreeable s. *ḅamshi*; a bad s. *ḅoyi, ḅwai, wari, wardi**; s. of damp *fumfuna*; an evil s. as of putrefying animal bodies *ḅarni, ḅazni, ḅauri*.

smell, tr. v. 1. (to perceive by the sense) *ji, sunsuna*, e.g. I s. the scent of lions *na ji warin zakoki*.

2. (to s. at with the intent to enjoy or test) *shaka* (S.) or *sheka* (K.); to emit a bad s. *yin ḅoyi*.

smelt, tr. v. *narke*.

smile, intr. v. *yin murmushi, yin mulmushi*.

smite, tr. v., see **strike, kill**.

smith, n., see **blacksmith**.

smithy, *mākēra*.

smoke, n. *hayaki*; spec. s. of a conflagration *turnuḅa*.

smoke, v. 1. (to emit s.) *yin hayaki*.

2. (to s. tobacco) *shan taba*.

smooth, adj. *da* (*samtsi* or) *santsi*, *nani*.

smooth, tr. v. (of wood, by paring, shaving) *sassaḳa*, *sabche*, *sabta*, *sanche*; (by daubing, plastering, etc.) *yāba*; to rub s. *darje*.

smoothed, particip. adj. (by plastering, etc.) *yababbe*, fem. *yababba*, pl. *yababbu*.

smoothly, adv. *sansamtsa**, *sarr**.

smoothness, n. *samtsi*, *santsi*, *sanche*.

snail, n. *katantanwa*, *alkoto**.

snail shell, *alkoto* (S.).

snake, n. *machiji*, fem. *machijiya*, pl. *machizzai*, *igiyar ḳasa*, *sago* (S.); names of different species many of which await identification are: a small s. with a tail which resembles a second head and a double mouth *b̄da*; a s. which spits like a cat *ḳan mussa*; a green s. (*Philothamnus semivariegatus*) *damatsiri*, *danyen chiyawa*; a black s. *masasau*; a black cobra from 14 inches to 6 ft. in length without spectacles *kumurchi*, *kwamarchi*; another species of cobra *gamshēka*, *gamshiḳa*, or *tamatsiri* (in S. this = a skink); a black

s. about 18 inches long *ḳan magurji*; a puff adder *ḳasa*; a long, slender, light-coloured s. *kwakiya*; a python *mesa*, *muluwa**; a short black and white viper *gajera*, *kubu buwa**; a harmless s. *shanono*; a yellow viper with flat head *injihau*, *tsada-raki*; a poisonous s. *sanadi*; a brown harmless s. which comes out at daylight *tafi ga rana*; a large spotted s. *tandara*; a large s. *uwayara*; a plant used as antidote to s. bite *filasko*; a s. charmer *gardī*, pl. *gardawa*; *turḳe*, pl. *turḳawa* or *turḳodi*; a s. skin *swaba* or *saba*, *zana**, a water s. *ani*.

snare, n. *haḳo*, pl. *haḳoḳi*, *tarko*; to lay a s. *yin haḳo*; a bird s. *asuta*, *asibta*.

snatch, tr. v. *ḳwache*, *karba*, *karbi*, *amshi*, *fisge* or *fusge*; spec. to s. goods *wasashe*; to s. with violence *rupta*, *rupto*.

snatcher, n. *mai-ḳwachewa*.

snatching, *wasoso*, *wasaso*.

sneeze, intr. v. *atisha*; sneezing *atishawa*, *furji*.

sniff, v. *sheḳa*, *shaka*; to s. up (for the purposes of smelling) id.

snore, intr. v. *minshari*, *hansari*, *nāsari*, *hansāri*, *gwarti*.

snort, to *sheka hiska*.

snow, *talji** (Ar.).

snuff, n. (powdered tobacco)
garin t̄aba, taban hanchi;
taking s. *shekawa*.

snuff, v., see **sniff**.

snuff-box, n. *batta*, pl. *battochi*.

so, adv. (thus) *h̄aka, h̄akanan*,
e.g. or is it not so? *ko ba h̄aka ba?* so it is *shi ke nan*;
k̄aza, or *k̄aza da k̄aza* is
often used in a less demon-
strative sense and when
something is referred to not
named = so and so, e.g. he
did so and so *ya yi abu k̄aza*;
w̄ane is similarly used of
persons, e.g. where is so and
so? *ina w̄ane*; about so much
kwatanchin kaza; so, express-
ing doubt or some surprise,
so! *to*; so it is *ana nan*; so
that, see under **that**; so
then (therefore), see **there-**
fore.

soap, n. *sabuni* (S.), *sabulu*
(K.), *toka*; spec. a superior
kind of s. used for washing
the face *sabunin s̄alo*.

socket, n. *kwarmi*, pl. *kwarmu*,
gwarmi; s. of the eye *gurbin*
ido; prov. the s. of the eye
is not the eye itself *gurbin*
ido ba ido ne ba.

sodomy, *luḍu, lutsu*.

soever, affix to words to em-

phasise the notion of con-
tingency *ko* (used as a prefix),
e.g. where? *ina*; wheresoever
ko ina; who? which? what?
wa, wanne; whosoever, which-
soever, whatsoever *kowa, ko-*
wanne, e.g. whomsoever you
find seize him *kowanne ka*
samu ka kama shi.

soft, adj. (e.g. of mud, dough,
etc., also of cloth) *da tafshi*,
da tabshi, da taushi, da lau-
*shi**, *laḅu-laḅu*; to be or be-
come s. *yin tapshi, yin ka-*
bushi; of ripe fruit *yin tabo*
(or *tambo*), e.g. the date is s.
dabino ya yi tabo.

soften, tr. v. *yin tafshi*,
zabki.

softly, *lako-lako, s̄ako-s̄ako*.

softness, *kabushi, tabo, tapshi*,
*tafshi, tabshi, taushi, laushi**.

soil, n. 1. (ground, land) *k̄asa*,
pl. *k̄asashe, k̄asaisai*; very
hard s. *tsandauri*.

2. see **dirt**.

soil, tr. v. *yin dauda*.

sojourn, n. (temporary stay)
zama, e.g. how have you
been faring during your s.
in this town? *ina zaman*
gari?

sojourn, intr. v. (to make a
stay) *zamna, zauna*, e.g. we
sojourned there twelve days
mun zamna nan kwana goma

sha biyu, shida or *shide* (lit. to alight at a place).

sojourner, *mai-zamna*, pl. *ma-su-zamna*.

Sokoto, the town of *Sakwato* or *Sakkwato*.

solder, a sort of, (sal-ammonia) *sinādari* (S.), *shinādari* (K.), *sunādari*.

soldier, n. *māyaki*, pl. *māyaka*, *ḍan yaki*, pl. *yayan* (or *yan*) *yaki*; *askar*, pl. *askarawa*; spec. a s. of a king's body-guard *dogari*, *dakāre*, *dakāra*, pl. *dakāru*; a foot s. *ḍan kasa*; foot-soldiers coll. *kirma*, *sa'ati**; see *guriguri**.

sole, n. (of the foot) *sau*, *sawu*, *sauwawai*, pl. *sawuna*, *mataki*, pl. *mataakai*, *tāfin kafa*.

sole, adj. *makadaichi*, *mukadaichi*, s. in its idiomatic use, however, is best expressed by means of *sai*, e.g. his s. request was this *ba ya roko ba sai wannan*; our s. food is guinea-corn *abinchi namu sai dawa*.

solely, adv., see **alone**.

solid, adj. (sound, trustworthy) *ingatachi*.

solitary, *gwabro**.

some, 1. (used adjectivally and pronominally) *wani* (often pronounced *woni*), fem. *wata*, pl. *wadansu*, *wasu*, *yasu* (S.),

wansu; wait, I have something to say *bari ina da wani*.

2. *wani* is also used to express the correlatives s. one...another, pl. s...others, also s...s., e.g. s. one said yes, another said no *wani ya che i wani ya che a'a*.

somersault, the act of turning *zuragadauniya*, *juyen-māsa* (see under *māsa*).

sometime, adv. *wani yayi*.

son, n. *ḍa*, connective *ḍan*, pl. *yaya*, *ya*, connective *yayan* and *yan*, e.g. first-born s. *ḍa nafari*; the s. of Amina *ḍan Amina* (i.e. Mohammed); used as an expression of regard, e.g. my s. *ḍana*; s. of my mother (i.e. friend) *ḍan uwana*; also used (as at times in English) to express contempt or aversion, e.g. s. of the ignorant (heathen) *ḍan jahili* (stronger than *jahili* alone); s. of the wicked *ḍan mazugu*.

song, n. *waka*, pl. *wakoḳi*, *wake-wake*, *sara*, *wasu*; v., to sing a s. *waka* with *yi* or the forms in *na*, e.g. I sang them a s. *na yi ma su waka*; to compose a s. id.; a religious s. *tsāri*; foolish songs *wake-waken banza*.

sonship, n. *ḍiyanchi*, *ḍiyanchi*.

- soon**, adv. (after a little while) *jima kaḍan*, e.g. I shall s. return to you *jima kaḍan ni komo gare ku*, cf. also **while**; (in a short time, with quickness) *maza* and frequently *maza maza*, e.g. I will s. catch him *zan kama shi maza maza*.
- soot**, *finfin* (S.), *finfini* (K.), *kunkunniya*, *kunkumniya* (S.).
- soothsayer**, n. *boka*, pl. *bokaye*; to act as a s. *yin dubi*.
- soothsaying**, n. *arwa*, *duba*.
- sorcerer**, n. *maye*, *mayi*, fem. *mayiya*, *mayya*, pl. *mayu*.
- sorcery**, n. *maita*, *ḍabu*, *ḍabo*, *kwarche* (S.), *sihiri*, *kandu*, *akokari*, *tsubu*.
- sordid**, adj., see **filthy**, **base**.
- sore**, n. *kushe kushe*, *miki*, pl. *miyaku*, see **ulcer**, **boil**; s. on a horse's back *gets*.
- sore**, adj., see **painful**.
- sores**, pl. *balli balli*.
- sorrel**, red s. *yakuwa*.
- sorrow**, n. *baḳin chiki*, *mayāta*, see **affliction**, **grief**.
- sorrowful**, to be, intr. *sinihi*.
- sorry**, (distressed, pained) *da wahala*; to be s. *haiya*; I am very s. *ya ḅata ma ni zuchiya* or *zuchiyata ta ḅache*, see **grieved**; to be or feel s. for, see **compassion**.
- sort**, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi*; see **species**.
- sort**, tr. v. (to divide, distribute into classes) *raba*; (to s. out) see **choose**.
- sorted**, pass. part. *rababbe*, fem. *rababba*, pl. *rababbu*.
- soul**, n. *rai*, pl. *rayu*, *kuruwa*, both are used of the disembodied as well as the embodied s.; (the seat of the mental feelings and qualities) *rai*, e.g. of haughty s. *da girman rai*; patient of s. *da sanjin rai*.
- sound**, n. (e.g. of bees, a bell, gun, trumpet) *amo*; a confused s. *ḍūmi*.
- sound**, adj. (trustworthy) *ingatachi*; s. (in health) *da lafiya*.
- sound**, intr. v. *yin āmo*.
- soup**, n. *romuwa* (S.), *romo* (K.), *miya*, *ruwan nama*; spec. s. in which *fura* has been made *farau farau*, *faro faro*, *ruwan fura*; red sorrel, a common ingredient in s. *yakuwa*; a herb the leaves of which are used in making s. *sure*.
- sour**, adj. *da tsami*; to be s. *yamama*, *yanyama*; the soup has gone s. *miya ta yi yami*.
- source**, n. (spring of water) *idon ruwa*; s. of a river *gindi*; (origin, beginning) *mafari*; (of words, the primitive meaning or derivation)

- gutsu*, e.g. what is its s. ?
minene gutsunsa? (first cause)
sababi, e.g. the s. of the illness
 was this *sababin chiwuta ke nan*.
- sourness**, *tsami, tsamiya, yami*.
- souse**, tr. v. (to immerse) *tso-
 ma, nuche* (S.), *nutsa*.
- south**, n. *küdu, küdus, güşum, tsäkar rana*; adv. id., e.g. he went s. *ya tafi küdu*.
- southward**, adj. (towards the s.) *güşumchi, kudanchi*.
- sovereign**, n., see **king**.
- sovereignty**, n., see **kingdom**.
- sow**, n. (female of wild swine) *gadoniya, gyadainya* (S.); (of domestic) *gursuna mache*.
- sow**, tr. v. *shipka, shibka, shuka*; a hole in which to s. seed *sära*.
- sower**, n. *mai-shipka, ma-shipki*.
- sowing-time**, n. *manomi*, also fig., e.g. this life is a s.-t. for the future life, *ita duniya nana che manomi a lahira*.
- space**, n. (open, free room) *sarari, fage*; unoccupied sp. (e.g. on the ground, etc.) *fili*, pl. *filaye, kanwuri, far-fajiya, sarari*, e.g. there is no s. here for my load *babu fili a wurin nan ga kayana*; in a less precise sense *wuri* (place) may be used.
- spacious**, adj. *mai-sarari, mai-yalwa*.
- span**, n. (a measure of length, i.e. the space between ends of thumb and first finger extended) *täki, dani*.
- sparks**, *tsartsatsi*.
- sparrow**, n., the African s. *magwara*.
- speak**, v. *fäda* and *fädi, täne, zanta* (K.), e.g. I s. the truth to you *ina fäda ma ku gas-kiya*; (in the sense also of conversation) *yin zanche*; to s. with *zantad da*; to s. a language *yin magana*, e.g. we are able to s. Hausa *mu-na iya yin maganar Hausa*; to s. evil of *bächi*; to s. evil of behind one's back *chimbaya*; to s. proudly *yin raha*; to s. secretly or to s. in whispers *raða*; speaking *fa-dalle*, see **say**.
- spear**, n. *mäshi*, pl. *masu-suka*, or *masu*; spec. a long s. not thrown *kasausawa*; a small s. for throwing *hankaltilo*; a small s. tied to wrist and which after being thrown is pulled back *hargi*, pl. *harugga*; a s. or dart for catching fish *hägu, margi*; v. to cast a s. as a sign of

declaration of war *yasda* (or *yada*) *mashi*; s. throwing *nāshi*, pl. *nashe-nashe*.

spear, tr. v. *soka*, *soke* or *soki*, *halbe*, *halbi* or *harbi*, *chāke*, e.g. he speared a fish *ya soka kifi*.

spearman, n. *mahalbi*, pl. *mahalba* and *masu-halbi*.

species, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *launi*, e.g. they had collected stones of various s. *suka tattara duwatsu na iri dabam dabam*.

speckled, adj. (of birds, etc.) *wake-wake*, see **spotted**.

specks, coll. (spots or dots, e.g. on plumage of birds) *zane*; spec. s. in eyes of blind *tsauriya*; see **spot**.

spectacles, n. (the optical instrument) *minzari**.

spectre, n. *fatalwa*.

speech, n. 1. gen. *magana*, which can be used in all the following senses.

2. (the uttering of words) *faḍi*, pl. *fade-fade*, *faḍa*, *jawabi*, e.g. he would hear my s. *shi kan ji faḍata*; until s. be heard (i.e. is ended) *har magana a ji ta*; confused, noisy s. *dumi*.

3. (uttered words and so talk, discourse) *zanche*, *kalam**, *aljama*, *aljima*, *jawabi*.

4. (native language) *haus**, pl. *harata*, *halshe*, *harshe*,

pl. *halshina*, *halussa* (S.), e.g. in the s. of the Fulahs *da halshen Fillani*; he understands the Hausa s. *ya ji maganar Hausa*.

speechless, adj., see **dumb**, **silent**.

speed, n., see **haste**.

speedily, adv., see **quickly**, **soon**.

spell, n. (charm) *magani*, pl. *maganguna* and *magunguna*.

spend, tr. v. *kāshe*, *kāsa*, *kāsa*, *bātas*, (with the idea of waste more or less implied), e.g. he spent much money *ya kāshe kurḍi dayawa*; *aikata da*; to s. time *samu*; he spent one month *ya samu wata guda*.

spew, v. *tofi*, *kurkure*.

sphere, *azurumi**.

spice, hot, n. *yaji*, *chefane* (S.); cf. *kula**; spices coll. *jauwi**; see **pepper**.

spider, n. *gizo*, *girgizo*, *toto*, *tautau*, *rozo*; female s. *koḳi*; spider's web *sumya*, *shau-shaudo* (S.), *tautauchi*, *yana*; the spider's wife (in stories) *koḳi*.

spiderwort, *bulasa*.

spike, n., an iron s. *tsinke*, *chinke* (S.), pl. *tsinkai*; also = a little s. of straw; s. for making holes in skin, etc. *tsiko*, pl. *tsikuna*.

spill, v. 1. tr. (to let run over)
tuddas.

2. intr. *tuda* or *tude*.

spilling, *barbaḍuwa*.

spin, v. 1. tr. (to twist into thread) *zare*, *zari*, *yin kaḍi*; to s. yarn *sabi**.

2. intr. (to revolve) *kewaye*, *kewayi*, e.g. the top spins *makoḍi ya kewaye*.

spinach, native s. *alayafu*, *alayapo*.

spindle, n. *mazari*, *kadamin abduga*; a sort of s. made of skin *mataki*; a mud ball on a kind of s. used in winding thread *gululu*.

spine, (backbone) *tsatso*.

spinning, n. *kaḍi*, *wāḍira**, *wodira**.

spinning round, anything, n. *makodi*, e.g. ball, top, etc.

spinster, n. *gwabruwa*; an old s. *tuzuruwa*.

spirit, n. *ruhu**, (soul of man generally, also as the seat of feelings, etc.) see **soul**, (an immaterial being, a s.) id.; the evil s. *eblis*, *shaitan*, *shaitan*, *shaidane*, *iblis*; an evil s. *aljani*, fem. *aljana*, pl. *aljannu*, *janziri**, *janzari**, *kaṅkama*, *kaura*; evil spirits coll. *jinnu*, also the pl. *rayuka*; (a ghost) see **spectre**; (mind) *zuchiya*,

e.g. tranquillity or happiness of s. *daḍin zuchiya*; spec. terms connected with popular superstitions are: a s. described as having hair hanging down its face and often appearing in trees *dodo*, pl. *dodani*; a s. that renders a man mad or delirious *bori*; evil s. said to kill mother and child at birth *uwayara*; an evil s. supposed to injure tamarind and other trees *doguwa*; an evil s. in form of snake *gajimare*; persons and esp. women possessed by an evil s. *masu-bori* or *masu-boli*.

spiritless, adj. *da karamar zuchiya*.

spit, n. *tsinke*.

spit, v. 1. *tofa*, *tofi*, *fēsa*, *pēsa*, *furji*, *furza*, *kaki*; to s. out *tofi*, *tofar da*, *miyau*, *yau*, *tsalga* (S.), *tsalte*, *tsarta*; to s. out water from the mouth *tsartso*, see **spurt**.

2. see **pierce**.

spite, n. *chegi*, for s. *don chegi*.

spitting, participial n. *fēsawa*, *feshi*, *tofi*, e.g. s. accompanied by s. of blood *fēsawan jini*.

spittle, n. *dalele*, *salabi*, *miyau*, *yau* (K.).

splashing, e.g. of water *bundum-bundum*, *funjum*, *tsin-*

*dum, pinjum, jirwaye**; an exclamation descriptive of *s. tsut, tsulut.*

spleen, n. (the bodily organ) *sefa, saifa*, pl. *saifofi*; (disease of the s., splenitis) *chiwon saifa*; trop. (vexation) *haushi*, e.g. his s. was roused at this *ya ji haushin wannan.*

splendid, adj. (of dress, ornaments, etc.) *naado*, fem. *taado.*

splendour, n. (of dress, etc.) *ādo.*

splenitis, n., see **spleen.**

splinter, n. (e.g. in the skin) *sartse.*

split, n. *tsāga, tsāgi.*

split, tr. v. *tsāga, kēta, firḍa, farḍe, datse* (S.), *fāsa*, the last also used of cold, *faskara.*

splitting, 1. participial n. *kētuwa, fasawa, faskari.*

2. adj. *mai-fasawa.*

spoil, 1. tr. v. (to waste, injure) *ḥāta, ḥāchi, ḥāche.*

2. intr. (to be spoiled, wasted, etc.) *ḥāche*; of fruits, etc. (to go bad, rot) *riḥa* or *ruḥa.*

3. n. and tr. v., see **plunder.**

spoiled, pass. part. *ḥātache*, fem. *ḥātachiya*, pl. *ḥātattu, ruḥabḥe*, fem. *ruḥabḥiya*, pl. *ruḥabḥu*; to be s., see **spoil** 2.

spoils, a half share of s. paid

to the leader of an expedition after a raid *hamushi.*

sponge, n., *soso* (K.), *susu* (S.), i.e. the fibrous network of the fruit of a species of gourd, the 'loofah' gourd; anything used as a s. *abin shafe.*

spool, *matari.*

spoon, n. (made of wood) *chokali, koshiya, kwiyafa, kuyafa* (S.); a s. used for measuring *madebi*; a large wooden s. *moda*; spoons made from pumpkin rinds pl. *lūddai.*

spoor, *lawali.*

sport, n. (play, diversion) *wargi*; (mirth, also mirthful contempt) *dariya*, e.g. we made s. of him *mun ba shi dariya*; (of the field, as fowling, hunting) *farauta.*

spot, n. *tabo*, pl. *tabuna, tambo* (S.), *dangole*; a s. or blot, e.g. of ink *dole, kyanda*, pl. *kyandu, zane*, pl. *zane-zane*; (a blemish in an article) *aibi, aibu*, pl. *aibobi, sōfane*, pl. *sofanai*; a s. of grease *maski*; fig. (moral blemish, fault) *aibi, aibu*; (a particular locality) *wuri*, pl. *wurare*; (speckle) *rodi*, pl. *rode-rode.*

spots, having s., adj. *wake-wake.*

spotted, *mai-rodī.*

spout, n. *mazurari*.

sprain, n. *targade*.

spread, tr. v. (e.g. a cloth, a mat) *shimfida*; intr. (to separate, scatter) *watse, wache*; to s. out, tr. (esp. used of spreading out goods for sale on a mat) *shimfida*; to s. out (the legs) *tantana*; to s. out wheat to dry *baza*; (to expose to view) *bayāna* or *baiyana*; intr. to s. out or abroad, increase *yado, yadu, malala, nasa*.

spring, n., of water, *idon ruwa, maromaro, marmaro, marmaru*; the mouth of a s. or well *bakin rijiya*; for other senses see **source**.

spring, intr. v. 1. see **jump**.

2. to s. or s. up out of the ground (of seeds, plants) *tsira, tsire, tsiro, chira*; (of water) *balbadi, barbadi*.

sprinkle, to *buta, bursuna* (K.), *fantsama*.

sprinkling, n. *kurmuwa*.

sprout, n. (of guinea-corn, etc.) *karmāmi*; (of trees) *tofo*, pl. *tofuna*; spec. new sprouts after trees, etc. have been cut down *kankama*; sprouting corn *yabanya*.

sprout, intr. v. 1. (to spring up out of the ground) *tsira, tsiro, tsiri*, see **spring**.

2. of trees and plants (to put forth buds, leaves, etc.) *tofu, yin tofo, yin foge, yin gunda*, e.g. the trees s. *itatuwa sun tofu*; the melon sprouts *kabewa tana gunda*.

sprouting, *gauro, gyauro*.

spue, v., see **spew**.

spur, n. *kaimi*, pl. *kayame*; s. of a cock *kāfa*.

spur, i.e. to prick with a s. *chāchāka*.

spurs, long riding-boot with, n. *kufita* or *kufuta*, pl. *kufitai, kufutai, kubutai* (S.), *kuftai* (K.).

sput, to s. out *tartso, tudas, fantsama*.

spurting, *tartsatsi, tudaswa*.

spy, n. *gāta*, pl. *gataye, majewayi, magewayi*, pl. *majewayi*.

spy, to s. or s. out *jewayi, jewaye, leka, leki, leko, yin shigoro*.

spying, n. *dauraro, dararo, jewayi, shigoro*.

square, n., a s. of men *kewanya*.

squash, to (e.g. with the foot) *latse, lowatse*.

squat, intr. v., to s. down with legs crossed *kishinkida, gijirche* (S.); to s. on the ground *tsugunna*.

squatting, n. *tsugum*; (the body resting upon the inside

of the thighs with the feet splayed outwards) *zaman rakumi*; s. with outspread legs *tantāna*.

squeeze, tr. v. *mache, matse, matsa, taushe* (S.), *tausa* (K.), *damfare, tsamki, tattara, rumchi, rumtse*; to s. a lemon, etc. *tatsa, tatse, twatsa, twache*.

squeezed, pass. particip. *taushashe*, fem. *taushashiya*.

squeezing, participial n. *taushewa*; s. through a narrow place *bokoto*.

squint, n. *idon māge*.

squirrel, n. *kusum-bīsa*; African flying s. *beran bīsa*; the spiny ground-squirrel *kurēge*.

squirt, to *tsurara*.

stable, n. *muri, barga, maiturke*; and less precise (a place for horses) *shamaki*, pl. *shamakai, shamakoki*.

stable-man, n. *dan muri, barga, birga*, see also **groom**.

stack, a s. of corn *matāra, mataran hatsi*.

staff, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna*; *kulki*, pl. *kulake*.

stagger, v. 1. intr. *magagi* with forms in *na*, e.g. he was struck by a bullet, he staggered and fell *aka halbe shi da bindiga yana magagi ya fadi*.

2. (to confuse, perplex) *dāme, dāmā* and pass. to be staggered *damu*.

staggering, n. (e.g. of a dying man) *magagi*.

stain, n. (colouring matter), e.g. a red clay used for staining eyelids, etc. *koya, kowa*; a red vegetable s. for the teeth *kuriya*, see **dye**; (spot, blemish, fault) *aibū, kufa*.

stain, v. (to tinge fabrics, etc. with colouring matter), see **dye**; pass. to be stained (in a wider sense), turn by general terms for 'change' with the appropriate complements, e.g. the field was stained with blood *wurin faḍa ya sauya ja da jini* or *wurin faḍa sai jini*; the waters were stained all red *ruwaye sun sauya ja wur*; to s. the face *dambara, dandambara*; esp. to s. the face blue *dambara*.

staining, *yanayi*.

stairs, pl. n. (steps) *mahayi, karangama*; see **steps**.

stake, n. *rino, rinu**, *shishike* (S.); a s. in gambling *riko*.

stalk, n. (of plants) *kāra*, pl. *karare, alkājiya, tsirgagiya*; (of corn, etc.) *zangare, zangarniya*, pl. *zangarnu, karmāmi, firchi*; stalks (of

beans, ground-nuts) *harāwa* ; stalks of grass used for horses' food *tattaka* ; corn stalks used by tanners *karandāfi* (S.).

stalk, to s. an animal *raḥe*.

stall, n. 1. (for cattle) *garke*, pl. *garkuna* ; s. (or paddock) *barga*.

2. (a stand in the market) *rumbu*, *rumpa*, pl. *rumfuna*.

stallion, *angarma*, *ingarma* ; mounting of a mare by a s. *nuni*.

stammer, intr. v. *inina*, *inna*.

stammering, n. *ininan halshe*, *kikiniya*.

stamp, n. (seal) *mazubi*, *ma-taushin watika*.

stamp, to s. down *dābe*, *tattaka* ; stamping down (e.g. a floor) *dābe-dābe*.

stand, on which things are exposed for sale, n., see **stall** 2.

stand, intr. v. *tsayi*, *tsaya* or *tsai* which also = to s. up and to s. still, e.g. s. there till I am ready *ka tsayi nan har na yi shiri* ; to cause to s. still *tsaishe* ; I s. upright *na tsaya daidai* ; to s. by or up for (to aid), see **help**.

standard, n. 1. (of proportion, measure), see **measure**.

2. (flag of a king) *tuta*, *tuti*, pl. *tutochi*.

standing, *tsaye*.

star, n. *tamrāro*, *taurāro* (Daura), pl. *tamrāru*, *taurārai*, *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi* ; spec. the morning s. *gamzaki* ; a shooting s. *mashin tamraru*.

stare, n. *kallo*, *zuru*.

stare, v. also = to s. at (of curiosity) *yin kallo*, *yin zuru*, e.g. you keep staring at me *ka faye kallona*.

starling, *dokin buntu* ; the glossy s. or grackle *tsakwai-kwaiwa*.

start, n. *sabko*, *safko*.

start, v. 1. intr. (to move suddenly through fear, etc.) *razana* or *razani* ; (of a horse) to s. or s. back *zabura* ; to cause to s. *zaburi* ; (of a restive horse) to s. *tuma*.

2. intr. (to move off, set out) *tashi*, *sabko*, *safko*, *sapko*, *yin sabko*, e.g. he prepared to s. *ya sake tashi* ; tr. (to send off) *tada*, *tayas da*, e.g. I started a messenger *na tada manzo*.

starve, intr. v. (to perish by starvation) *mutu da yunwa*.

state, n. (condition) *zama* and *zamanchi* ; intr. v. to come into a s. *zāma*, *zam* (S.), *zama*, e.g. he came into a s. of distress *ya zama matsiyachi*.

state, v., see **narrate**.

statement, e.g. before a judge
biyaya.

stay, intr. v. *zamna, zauna, sauka*; *wanzu*, which also means to delay; to s. at a place (i.e. to rest) *yin mugāma*; to s. at a place or occupation for a day only *yini*, e.g. there we s. a day *nan mu ke yini ɗaya*; I s. at work the whole day *ina yini aiki*; a s.-at-home (person) *kɛfin riɗiya*; to s. proceedings *tsaida magana*; to cause to s. *zamnas da, zamshe*.

steal, tr. v. *sache, yin sata, yin swane* (or *sane*); spec. to s. goods *kwache*.

stealing, n. (theft) *sata, bara-wonchi, sane, swane, barauchi*; s. earnest money *chin amāna*; cattle-s. *wāgi**, *wōgi**.

tealth, he went by s. *ya yi sanda*.

tealthily, *sullup*.

tealthy, s. walk as of a thief
sanda.

team, *surachi, tururi*.

team-boat, n., a s.-b. is usually designated by Hausas who have seen one by *jirigin wuta* or *jirigin hayaki*; a locomotive s.-engine *dokin wuta*.

teep, tos. in water *tsīma, tsoma*.

teeping, in water *tsīme, tsīmi*.

stem, n. (of plants) *kara, kare*.

stepchild, *agola*, pl. *agololi, taliyo*.

stepfather, n. *uban rana*.

step-parent, *tālaɗi, taulaɗi*.

steps, n. *mahayi, tākarwa, karangama*; spec. s. formed of mud *mataki*, pl. *matakai*; s. by which to come down from a place *mashidi*; s. placed for mounting a horse *likkafa** and *likkafan doki**.

sterile, adj., see **barren**.

steward, n. (manager) *wakili*; to act as a s. *wakilta*.

stewardship, n. *wakilchi*.

stick, n. *sanda*, pl. *sanduna, kurki, kulki*, pl. *kulake, kuma*; walking s. *kandiri, kwagiri*; (such as is used by a blind man) *jagōra, gwalma*; a s. cut from a tree and in this sense usually fem. *iche* or *itache*; a thin bending s. *tsumanjiya*; a heavy s. *guduma*; a s. carried by porters *loko**; a s. used for stirring soup etc. *muchiya, maburɗi, maburkaki* (S.); a crooked s., e.g. one used for pulling down fruit *rorami*; a s. with a bent handle *pauma*.

stick, v. 1. tr. (to pierce) *soka, soke* or *soki*.

2. intr. to stick fast (e.g. in a narrow passage) *yin*

baranḱam; also s. to or together *lazumta*, *lazumche*, *kakkafe*, *like*, *liḱi*, *nana*, see **adhere, cleave to**.

stickiness, *yauḱi*, *yapḱi*, *yabḱi*.

stiff, to be, intr. v. *gage*, *gaga*, *sankare*, *sandare*, *kāge*, *sāge*; of skins etc. *ḱandare* (K.), *ḱangare* (K.), *kangare* (S.).

still, to be, intr. v. *kawaita*, pass. impersonal, be still! *a kawaita*.

still-born, *haifuwa bari*.

stilt, black-winged s. *takabādo*, *takabarbado* (S.).

stilts, *kadarko**.

sting, tr. v. *halbi*, *harbi*, *sāra*, *tāba*, *ḱalle*, *ḱalla*.

stinginess, n. *kalmashen zu-chiya*, *rowa*, *tsīmi*.

sting-ray (Trygon), *kunāmar ruwa*.

stingy, adj. *da rowa*, *mai-rowa*, *bahili**.

stink, n. *ḱoyi*, *ḱwai*, *wari*; see **smell**.

stink, intr. v., e.g. they s. *sunā ḱoyi*.

stinking, to become, intr. v. *zama wari*.

stir, v. 1. tr. (for the purpose of mixing) *ruḱa*; to s. about in a pot while cooking *talga*, *talgi*, *tūḱa*.

2. intr. (to move oneself) *yin motsi*.

stirrup, n. *likkafa*; an iron s. *kebe**; leather cords by which the s. hangs *kinami*; brass stirrups *zarnawi*.

stock, n. (seed, kind, tribe) *iri*, pl. *irare*.

stockade, *kāfi*, *kahi* (S.).

stocks, e.g. a log to which a recaptured slave is fastened *туру*.

stolen, *ḱwachache*; a receiver of s. property *ḱan tugu*.

stomach, *tumbi*, pl. *tumbuna*.

stone, n. *dutsi*, *duchi* (S.), pl. *duwatsu* and *duwarwatsi**, *pa* (S.), pl. *pāni*; a flat s. for rolling rice on *magurji*; a precious s. *yakutu**; a white s. *zaura**, *idon zaura*, a s. ball *makodi*; slinging a s. *majaujawa*, *majajaiwa*; a small s. *ḱurguje* (S.); a stony plain *hamāda**; a s. in the path *kauwa**.

stones, n. in coll. sense, small s. *tarki**, *tsākuwa*; s. collected together, e.g. round a well *marmara*; s. used as a support *magirkai**.

stool, n. *kujera*.

stoop, intr. v. *sunkwiya*, *sun-kuya*, *tsugunna*; one who stoops *duḱaru*.

stop, full, n. *kora*.

stop, v. 1. tr. (to make or cause to stand still) *tsaishe*,

kwāḥe, kwāḥa, kwāḥo, tāre, tāra; s. it with your hand *tāre shi da hannu*; to s. up a hole *like, toshe*.

2. intr. (e.g. of one walking, running, etc.) *tsayi, tsaya* or *tsai*; (to come to an end) id., e.g. at that point it stopped *daga nan ya tsaya*; (of a horse etc.) *zame*.

3. to delay *dāde*.

4. to s. up *dwade*; stop thief! *ku tāre ku tāre*; (to stay, stay at, etc.) see **stay**.
tore, n. 1. (a supply laid up) *ajiya*; a large s. of anything *tuli, jibgi*.

2. (a place for storing things) *rumbu, rufogo, gusakawa*.

tore, tr. v., also to s. up *aje*; to s. up goods *jibga*; to s. up treasure *tarkache*.

tore-room, n. *taska*, pl. *taskaki*, see **store** 2.

orey, upper, in a house, n. *kandaki*, pl. *kandakuna, soro, tsoro*.

oring grain, a chamber for, n. *rafoniya*, pl. *rafoni*; a large barn for s. g. *rufogo*, see **store** 2.

ork, n., black s. *kasheri, maijikka*; the marabout s. *borintumki, babba da jikka*; a tall

red and white s. *tsagagi*; the saddle-billed s. or Jabiru, *jahirma*; rosy s. or African wood-ibis *tsagagi*; sacred ibis *jinjimi*; Hadadah ibis *rara*.

storm, n. *hādari*, pl. *hādara*; a whirling dust s. *guguwa, holoko, huluku*; a heavy rain s. or rain cloud *zirnaniya* or *zurnaniya*.

story, n. *karīya**, *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi* (latter also = a s. told at night, a fireside s.), *gātana, riwaya* (S.), *aljama, aljima*; an untrue s. *karīya, fira* or *hira**; the telling of a s. *riyaya*; a s. (told as an allegory) *almara*.

stout, adj. 1. (of persons = fat, of things = thick) *da kabri, da kawri*.

2. see **brave**.

stove, n. *murufu, madafi*.

stow, tr. v. (to lay up) *aje*.

straight, adj. *sosai, daidai**, e.g. they followed the s. path *sun bi hanya sosai*.

strain, tr. v. (to filter) *rare, tache*; to s. out *rare, tarāre, tarāro*.

strainer, n. *marari, marare*.

straining, n., a calabash with holes for s. *rariya*.

strand, e.g. of rope *nunki, ninki, riḥe*.

strange, l. (foreign) *baḳo*, fem.

baḳuwa, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* and *baḳokuna*.

2. (odd, extraordinary) *baḳo*; this notion is also expressed by the n. *a'amarī* (matter) in the pregnant sense of 'a s. matter,' e.g. what a s. thing! *a'amaringa*; this s. war *wannan a'amarin yaḳi*.

strangeness, n. *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

stranger, n. *baḳo*, fem. *baḳuwa*, pl. *baḳuna*, *baḳi* and *baḳokuna*, *haḍāka*, pl. *haḍāku*, *ba-ture*; to act as a s. *yin baḳonchi* or *yin baḳontaka*; service done to a s. *baḳonchi*, *baḳontaka*.

strangle, tr. v. *shāḳi*, *shāḳe*, *maḳure*.

strap, tied to bit, n. *kamazuru*.

stratagem, n. *wayo*, *hila*, *fila*, *yaudara*, *idon-yaḳi*; to use s. *gama* with *wayo* or *kai*.

straw, n. *tsaiwa*; s. hat *mala-fa*, *malfa*, pl. *malafuna* and *malafai*, *garumfa*, *garunfa*.

stream, n., small running s. *malala*; a fast flowing s. *ḳorama*; the hollow of a s. *kwazazzabo*.

street, n. *hanya*, pl. *hanyoyi*, see *way*.

strength, n. (inherent power or firmness) *ḳarfi*, *ḳarifi*,

*ḳwāri**; (power over something else) *iko*, pl. *ikoki*; these terms differ as absolute and relative, e.g. s. of mind *ḳarifi zuḳhiya*; he surpassed him in s. *ya fi shi ḳarifi*; we do this by the s. of a charm *muna yin haka da ikon magani, kambī**; to exceed in s. *gāḡara*.

strengthen, tr. v. *ḳarfafa*.

stretch, forth, tr. v. *mīḳu*, *mīḳe*; to s. a bow-string *tanka*; intr. to be stretched forth or out *mīḳu*; to s. out the hand *zurma*; to be stretched out (used of a dog) *lake* (S.); stretching one's limbs sleepily on waking *magagin barchi*.

stride, *chirawa*; to s. *yin chirawa*, *mīḳe tsawo*.

strife, n. *fāḍa*, *fama*; (s. of tongues, contention) *hoya niya*, *gardama*.

strike, tr. v. *māra*, see *beat* and the verbs given under **blow** n.; to s. (and so bruise smash) *falfasa*, *bubbuga*, *ribḍe*, *rifḍe*, *rubḍe*; to s. a tent *naḍ laima*; to s. with the fist *dankwasa*, *dankwashe*; to s. a drum *buga*, *kāda*, *ḳwanḳwasa*

striking, *taḳi*; s. repeatedly participial n. *marmarawa* *būga-būga*.

string, n. *igiya*, pl. *igoyi* and *igiyoyi*; *siliya*, pl. *siliyu* or *siliyoyi*; *wadari*, pl. *wadura*; spec. s. for tying up trousers *mazargi*, *zariya*; strong white s. made of flax *kirtani*.

strip, n., of cloth *kwariya*; strips of black leather *kwaro*; to cut into strips *rede*.

strip, tr. v. *kware*, *kwari*, *fige*; to s. (skin of fruits, etc.) *bāre*, *bāra*; to s. leaves from a stalk *kwalde*; to s. off garments *tube riguna*, *debe riguna*.

stripe, n. (blow) fig. *sanda*.

stripe, n. (in cloth, blue) *saki*, *swaki*; stripes (e.g. on a bird, etc.) *zane*; having stripes, adj. *wake-wake*; to draw stripes *zana*, *zani*.

striped, (cloth) *saki-saki*.

strive, intr. v., see **attempt**.

stroke, n. *mari*, pl. *maremare*; see also **blow**.

stroke, to, with the hand *lailaya*, *sāba*.

strokes, n., see **lines**.

strong, adj. *mai-ƙarifi*, pl. *masu-ƙarifi*, *da ƙarifi*, *ƙodago*, *da gazau*, *da tauri*, *ishashe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *ishashu*; very s. *ƙaƙƙarifa*; to be s. *yin ƙwāri*; he is stronger than I *ya buwaye ni*; I am stronger than you *na bu-*

waye ka; spec. s. in war *gargami*, *garkami*; very s. (epithet of lion) *gadanga*; a s. man *ƙodago*, *gwarzo*, pl. *gwaraje*; to be s. *bunƙāsa*; s. slave *ƙato*, fem. *ƙatuwa*, pl. *ƙatta*.

strongly, adv. *da ƙarifi*.

strophanthus, (used for poisoning arrows) *kwankwani*.

strutting, *tāƙama*; (of a woman) *made*.

stubble, n. *kututtura*, *kututtura*, *kotuttura*; the s. of guinea-corn, wheat, etc. *tushiya*.

stubborn, adj. *mai-kinji*, pl. *masu-kinji*, *dataurinzuchiya*, *da tsayaya*.

stubbornness, n. *tauri*, *taurin zuchiya*, *tsayaya*.

study, v. (to endeavour diligently) *yin anniya*, e.g. s. to follow the true path *ku yi anniya ku bi hanyar gaskiya*.

stumble, intr. v. *tuntsure*, *yin tuntube*, *yin tangadi*; to s. against a stone *ƙāro da dutsi*.

stumbling, n. *sansarifa*, *sas-sarifa*, *shekarakki**, *tangadi* (K.), *tuntube*.

stump, n., of tree *gutsun itache*, *gatsa*, *ƙori*, *ƙwabri*, *gungume*, pl. *gumagumai*, *guntu*, *kututtura*, *kotuttura*; a small

s. *tsatsage*; s. of a leg or arm *dungu*.

stupid, adj. (wanting in sense) *maras-hankali*.

stutter, intr. v. *i'ina*.

stuttering, n. *i'inar halshe*.

sty, n., in the eye *hazbiya*, *bununuwa*.

subdue, tr. v. (to conquer, e.g. a people) *chi*.

subject, n. (matter) *tada*, pl. *tadodi*, e.g. a s. of enquiry *tadat tambaya*.

subject to, to be, intr. v. (to be characteristically prone to) turn by means of *tarka*, e.g. he is s. to terror *ya tarka razana*, see **character**.

submission, putting earth on the head as a sign of *huruwa*.

submissive, adj. *mai-tankwasa*.

submissiveness, n. *tanqwasa*.

submit, intr. v., e.g. I s. myself *na tanqwasa kaina*.

subscription, (e.g. a contribution of food) *tarbache*.

subside, intr. v. (e.g. of water) *käfe*, *wuche*, *fuche*; (gen. to abate, lessen) *rage*, *ragi*, *ragu*.

substitute for something, n. *maimako*, *maimaki*, *madadi*, *madadin**.

suburb, n. *unguwa*, *anguwa*, pl. *unguwai*, *ungwanai*, *ungunai*.

succeed, intr. v. 1. (to be suc-

cessful) *iyas*, *iyas da*, *iyar da*, *kārasa*, *yin zama*; impers. it succeeds *ya kama*, *ya yi*; to s. (as heir) *gāda*, *gāji* or *gāje*.

2. to s. (i.e. to take the place of another) *maya*, *mayi*; to be succeeded by *gada da*.

success, *dache**; (in war), n. *nāsara* and *nasarchi*; to obtain s. (in war) *yin nāsara*, *katari*.

successor, *mamayi*.

such, demonstr. adj. 1. (like that) e.g. we cannot do s. a thing *ba mu iya yin abu kaza*.

2. (that referred to, the naming of which is avoided by narrator), e.g. ho! (or here!) s. a one *ya ka mutum kaza*; take this money to s. and s. persons *ku tafi da kurdin nan ga mutane kaza da kaza*.

suck, tr. v. *tsotsa*, *tsotse*, *sha*; to s. a lime or lemon *sha lemu*; (of infants) *sha nono*; to s. in or up (e.g. as a sponge water), id.

sucked, *tsotsatse*; a s. lime *tsotsatsel lemu*.

sucking, *tsotso*.

suckle, tr. v. (to give suck to) *goyo*, *yin goyo*, *ba nono*.

Sudan, pr. n. *Sudan*.

sudd, (floating grass) *tsamba*, *damba*.

sudden, adj., s. death *saukin*

mutuwa; s. action is sometimes expressed by *wuf*, e.g. he gave a s. jump *ya yi wuf*; see **quick**.

suddenly, adv. *da sauki*, *bum*, *mamaye*, *mame*.

suffer, v. 1. tr. (to endure) *jimri*; (to allow) *bari*, *bar*, e.g. s. me to enter *bar ni in shiga*, phr. s. me *kiyaye ni*.

2. intr. (to undergo pain or distress) *sha wahala*.

suffice, v. *isa* and *ishe*.

sufficient, adj. *ishashe*, fem. *ishashiya*, pl. *ishashu*, also expressed by appending the impers. *ya isa* or *ya ishe*, e.g. we have s. bread *muna da gurasa (ya isa or) ya ishe mu*; exclamatory phr. s. *! bus*, which = say no more!; to be s., see prec.

suffocate, **suffocation**, v. and n., see **choke**, **choking**.

sugar, *sukur**, *takanda**.

sugar-cane, n. *takanda*, *rake*, *arakke* (S.), *karan sariki*.

suicide, *kiskansa* (S.), *kaskansa* (K.).

suit, n. (claim at law) *kara*, q.v.; to make or bring a s. *kara* and *kai kara*.

suit, v. *gamshe*, *gama*, e.g. it suits me *ya gamshe ni*; this dress does not s. me *rigan nan ba ta karbe ni*.

suitable, adj. *daidai*.

suitor, *mai-neman aure*.

sulk, to *dakile*.

sulphur, *fara wuta*, *kibrit**.

sum, n. (aggregate of numbers) *kida* or *kididdiga*; (of a statement), see **substance**.

summit, n. *kai*, *kololuwa*, *tsololuwa*, *bisa*; s. of hill *kan tudu*, *tuluwa* (K.).

summon, tr. v. *kira*, *kiraya* or *kiraye*; to s. to where the speaker is *kirawo*.

sun, n. fem. *rana*, *ro*, pl. *ranuka**; the s. rose *rana (ta fita or) ta tashi*; the s. set *rana ta fadi*, the s. is about to set *rana ta kusa faduwa*; heat of the s. *gumi*.

sunbird, *sha kauchi*; ruddy-throated s. *janbarde*.

Sunday, n. *lahadi*, *ladi*.

sunder, tr. v., see **divide**.

sunken eyes, one with, adj. and n. *mai-kwarmi**.

sunrise, time of, n. *tasawal hantsi*; cf. it is s. *rana ta fita chim*.

sunset, n. *futuru*, *fadawar* (or *faduwar*) *rana*.

sunstroke, n. *jiri*.

superfluity, n. *wanji*.

superior, adj. *mafifichi*, pl. *mafifita*; this is s. to that *wannan mafifichi daga wanchan*; to express 'this thing

or this method is s.' use the impers. *gara haka*, or *gwama haka*, lit. it is better so, see also **surpass**.

superiority, *fiyāya*, *fiyāye*.

supplicate, tr. v. (to pray earnestly) *bāra*, *kāma kafa*.

support, n. *madogara*, *makari*, *tankari*; the last also fig., e.g. a king is the s. of the world *sariki shi ne tankarin duniya*; spec. (pole of house) *gimshiki*; he called for s. *ya buga gaya*; see also **aid**, **assistance**, **help**.

support, tr. v. (e.g. as a pole supports a tent) *tōkāra*, *tankare*; spec. to s. anything with the hand spread out *tallaba*; to s. oneself with the palm of the hand *dafa*.

suppose, v. *zāto*, *zachi*, *zache*, *tamaha*, *kintata*.

supposition, *wasuwasi*.

sure, adj., see **trustworthy**.

sure, to be or make, v. *tabbata*, *tabbache*; I am s. *na tabbata*.

surely, adv. (certainly) *tabbas*, *ashe*, *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaske*, *hakika*, *haḳiḳa*; s. is also idiomatically expressed by the particle *sai* as well as the v. *tabbata*, e.g. the people will s. rise *mutane sai su tashi*; he is s. there

ya tabbata nan; you may s. assume that he is an infidel *ku tabbata kafiri ne*.

surety for a debt, n. *lamuni*; (a person who is s.) *mai-lamuni*; to be or become s. *lamunta*, *lamunche*; with acc., e.g. we became s. for the merchant *muka lamunta falke*.

surfeit, *ginsa*; to cause s. *ginshe*.

surging, n., e.g. s. backwards and forwards in battle *dau-kakkeniya*.

surpass, tr. v. *fi*, *yin fifiko*, *waye* (S.), *tsere*, *dada*, e.g. the strength of elephants surpasses that of camels *ḳari-fin giwaye ya fi na raḳumma*; this surpasses that *wannan ya dadi wanchan*; to s. anyone at his trade or profession *shashe*.

surpassing, n. *fi*, pl. *fiye-fiye*, *fifiko*.

surpassing, adj. *mafi*.

surrender, tr. v. (to give up, resign) *sallame*.

surround, tr. v. *kewaye*, *ke-wayi*, *kewayo*.

survivor, the sole s. of a family *barau*.

suspect, to *tuhuma*.

suspend, tr. v. *rataya*, *yin rataya*.

- suspicion**, n. *matsina**, *tuhuma*.
- sustain**, tr. v., see **support**.
- swagger**, to *yin tākama*.
- swaggering**, n. *rangwada* (S.), *rangaji* (K.), *tākama*, *yanga*, *māde*; (used of a woman) *alfarma*, *manti*, *yatsuna*.
- swallow**, n. *tsaitsewa*, *tsaijewa*, *tsetsewa*, *chechewa*, *chichiya*; the large mosque s. *kwardodo*; the small mosque s. *mashirare*, *masherera*.
- swallow**, tr. v. *hade*, *hadiye*; swallowing *hadiya*; the act of trying to s. *kwāra*.
- swamp**, n. *kāfo*, *kafau* (S.), *tupki*.
- sway to and fro**, intr. v. *rangaji* (K.), *rangwada* (S.).
- swear**, intr. v. *rantse*, *ranche*, *yin rantsuwa*, *sāba*, *sābi*, e.g. I swear by God *na rantse da Allah*.
- sweat**, n. and intr. v.; see **perspiration**, **perspire**.
- sweep**, tr. v. *shara* or *share*, *yin shara*.
- sweeping**, participial n. *shara*.
- sweet**, adj. (to the taste) *da zaki*, *tutushi*, (nice, agreeable, grateful to any sense or feeling) *da dadi*.
- sweetly**, adv. *da dadi*, e.g. the bird sings s. *tsuntsuwa tana waka da dadi*.
- sweetmeat**, n. *allewa*, *alewa*; spec. a s. made from the *aya* reed *dakuwa*.
- sweetness**, n. (taste) *zaki*, *dadi*, the last gen. and of taste too, e.g. thou shalt taste of its s. *za ka sha dadi nata*.
- swell**, intr. v. 1. *kumbura* or *kumbure*; (of a sore, etc.) *kaba*.
2. fig. (to be inflated with pride, etc.) *kumbura*, e.g. thou swellest with pride because it is said thou excellest all *kana kumburawa wai ka fi kowa*; the same may be expressed by means of *chichika* (lit. be filled with).
- swelling**, *kumburi*, *kumburiya*; (with sickness) *kabuwa*; a s. caused by guinea-worm *hangara*; a s. on the back *doro*; a slight s. on the body or itch *kazuwa*, *gūda* (S.); a s. in front of a man's body (elephantiasis) *gugi*; a s. on hand or foot *kakari*; a s. on the foot *kurkushe*; a s. on the throat *hangum**; cf. also *kwikwi*, *kullutu*.
- swept**, pass. part. *shararre*, fem. *shararra*, pl. *shararru*.
- swim**, intr. v. *ivo*, *yin iyo*,

futo, *yin linkāya*; I can s.
na iya ruwa.

swimmer, an expert *gwanin ruwa.*

swimming, n. *iyo*, *kurme*, *linkāya*, *ninkaya.*

swindler, n. *mai-zambachi* or *mai-zambata*, *mai-zamba.*

swine, n. (domestic) *gursunu*, see **pig.**

swing to and fro, tr. *reta*, intr. *wo*, *lilo.*

swinging, n. *reto*, *shillo.*

switch, n. (i.e. one for driving away flies, made from cow's or horse's tail) *izga*, *tsagiya* (S.).

swoop, (e.g. of a hawk) *bara* masc., *sura.*

swoop, to *kawo sura.*

sword, n. *takobi*, pl. *takubba*, *kansākali*; spec. a s. with a broad blade *findi*; a s. with a double sharp edge *tagomas*, *tagomashi*, *tamga*, *tamogashi*; s. with one cutting edge *tamalaulo*; a cheap, roughly made s. *tāma*; a rasp for sharpening s. *magagari*; to draw a s. *zare*, *zware*, *zari*, *takobi*; a curved s. worn by Arabs *bisalami**; a wooden s. *pauma.*

sword-sling, n. *hamila.*

synonym, *sauwi.*

syphilis, n. *chiwutan birni*, *tumjere*, *ḳaba*, *ḳabuwa*, *man-*

gyau, *mingyau*, *manjau* (K.), *maigyau* (S.), *chusayi* (K.); a medicine for s. *riga kafi.*

syrup, n. *madya**.

table, n. *rumfa*, *rumpa*, pl. *rum-puna* or *rumfunā*, *maida**.

taciturn, adj. (habitually silent) turn by *tarka* q.v., e.g. he is t. *ya tarka* (*yin kurum*, *yin shiru*, *kurum* or) *shiru.*

tackle, n. (implements, instruments, apparatus) *kaya*, pl. *kayayeki* or *kayayaki.*

tail, n. *wutsiya*; cow's or horse's t. used as a switch *izga*, *tsagiya* (S.).

tailor, n. *maḍumki*, fem. *ma-ḍumkīya*, pl. *maḍumkai.*

take, tr. v. gen. (seize, lay hold of) *kama*, *samu*, *ḍauka*, *ḍauki*, *ḍoka*, *ḍau* or *ḍo*, *karḅa*, *karḅi*, *amshi*, *maḳe*; to t. (of an object running away, about to escape or resist) *kama*; (with the added notion of reaching, overtaking, finding, *samu*; (of taking or picking up an object from the ground, a table, shelf, etc.) *ḍauka*, *ḍoka*, *chāfa*; to t. up and carry away *kwashe*; to t. and bring *kwaso*; (of receiving) *karḅa* and especially as an imperative *karḅo* q.v., also

ūngo, ingo (S.); to t. back *tumbe*; to t. (conduct, guide) *kai*; to t. (of game, fish) *kama*; (of road, way) *id.*, e.g. he took his road (pursued his journey) *ya kama hanya*; (of medicine) if liquid *sha* and *hade*, if solid *hade*; cf. the fire caught *wuta ta kama*; t. and bring *tariyo**, *kankamo*; to t. a thing to *gabata da*; to t. away *kai, kawa, kauda, kaushe, kawas, kawas da, jishe, fige* or *figi, dauka, doka, gushe, jidadda, tafi da*, e.g. he took it away *ya tafi da shi*; *fita da, fishe*; to t. away by force *kwache* or *kwashe, amshe*; to t. down (gen.) *shida* or *shide, shido*; (a tent) *nade*; to t. for oneself *dauko*; to t. hold of *dauka* or *doka*; to t. in (to let or bring in) *shigas da*; to t. off *debe* or *debo, daibo, fuda, fitas da, fisge, fizge* or *fusge*; (garments) *tube*; to t. off garments as sign of grief *takaba*; to t. off a load, etc. *zubda*; to t. out *fidda, fitar da, fitas, fitas da, dēbe, dēbo, dēba* and *daibo, fisge, fizge, fusge, tsami*; t. up and bring it here! *dēbo*; to t. a little of *gutsura*; to

t. to oneself *karbo*; to t. up *dauka* or *doka*; to t. up with hand or spoon *mara*; to t. a handful *dimtso*; to t. care, heed or notice of *tuna da, kula da*; (in proclamations 't. notice that') *ji, jiya, saurara, sorara*; he was 'taken in' *banza ta shashe shi*.

taking away, participial n. *karɓawa, amshewa*.

tale, n. (story) *tatsuniya*, pl. *tatsuniyoyi, riwaya*; to tell a t. *riya*; (of fiction, unreal or false t.) *ɓariya**, *fira* or *hira*, see **story**.

talebearing, *annamimi, annamimanchi*; telling tales against anyone *kwarmāto*.

talent, n., see **ability 2**.

talk, n. (= conversation, mutual discourse) *zanche* or *zanchi, batu, roshi*, and in a less precise sense *magana*; loud t. *dumi*, see **talking**.

talk, v. (converse) *zanche, tanka* or *tamka*, the first with forms in *na* or with *yi*, e.g. I am talking with my friends *ina zanche* (or *ina yin zanche*) *da abokaina, zantawa* with forms in *na, yin batu, yin magana*, e.g. we talk in Hausa *muna yin maganar Hausa*; he talks nonsense

shina magana barkatai; (pallaver) *al'amari**.

talkative, very, adj. *mai-garaje** (S.).

talkativeness, *saniya**, *sururi* (S.), *surutu* (K.).

talking, participial n. (conversing) *fadi*, *fade-fade*, *kuchi*, pl. *kuche-kuche*, *zantawa*; much t. *tankiya*; noise of angry or loud t. *hargowa*, *haya-haya*.

tall, adj. *dogo*, fem. *doguwa*, pl. *dogaye*, *zarau*, pl. *zara-zara*; the comparative taller and superlative tallest are expr. by *fi*, cf. H. Gr. pp. 75, 76; a t. thin man *yankare*.

tallness, n. *tsawo*.

talon, n. *akaifa*; spec. inside of a bird's t. *dunduniya*.

tamarind tree, n. *tsamiya*.

tame, adj. (subdued, domesticated), no general term, the distinction between t. and wild species being sometimes expressed by different words, e.g. t. swine *gursunu* opp. to *hanzir* and *gyado*; t. dog *kare* and *karen gida*; t. animals *bisashen gida*.

tame, to *lele*; the hyena cannot be tamed *kura ba ta kiyayuwa*.

tameness, n. (easy disposition, want of spirit) *lalafanchi*.

tan, tr. v. *jemi*, *jima*, *shema*, *shima*, *tuje**.

tank, n., see *cistern*.

tanner, n. *majemi*, pl. *majema*, *mashemi*.

tanning, a tree used for, n. *bagaruwa*, *gabaruwa*, *patako*, *säri*.

tap, to (e.g. a pot) *kwankwasa*.

tapeworm, *tsila*, *tamza*, *dauda-chiki*.

tarry, intr. v. l. (to stay) *zamna*, e.g. we tarried in Timbuctoo three months *mun zamna chikin Tumbutu wata uku*.

2. t. for (to wait for) *jira* and *jirache*.

3. (to delay) *yin yauchi*.

task, n. *al'amari*, and in a general sense *aiki*.

tassel, *tuntu*.

taste, tr. v. l. (to try the flavour of) *dandana* and *dandani*, e.g. have you ever tasted pepper? *kun tãba dandana barkono?*

2. fig. (to experience) *sha*, e.g. thou shalt taste its sweetness *za ka sha dafi nata*; he tasted trouble *ya sha wahala*.

taste, n. *dandana*.

tasteless, adj. *lami* and *da lami*, *da babu zaïi*.

taster, n. *madandani*.

tasty, adj. (of food, etc.; nice to taste) *da daḍi, da zaḳi*.

tattoo, to *kaṣḳasta, shausharuta*.

tattoo marks, *akanza*, see under **marks**.

taut, *tam, tamau-tamau*.

tax, n. *humushi, haraji*; spec. a t. paid on leaving a country *garama, fito*; the latter also = a t. which used to be paid to the king in the Kano market when buying a slave; a caravan t. *fāto*; a t. on cows *jangali*; a t. on an inheritance *tirka*; see **taxes**.

tax, to *tirkata*.

tax-collector, n. *mai-karḅar garama*.

taxes, n. gen. *kurḍin ḳasa, jinga*; to pay t. *yin jinga*.

teach, tr. v. *koya ma, bada koyo, karantas da, karantasa, karantashe, almajirtad da, sanas da* or *sanda**.

teacher, n. *mai-koya, mai-foro, mafori, shaihu**.

teaching, n. (the act of teaching) *koyawa*; (doctrine) *koya*.

teal, the whistling t. *jalili, ḳirinjiyiya*, the latter also = the African tree duck; a species of t. *kwarra* (S.).

tear, n. (also coll. = tears) *hawaye*; with tears *da hawaye*; to shed tears *yin hawaye*.

tear, n. (rent in clothes, etc.) *yaguwa, ḍan ḅarki*.

tear, tr. v. (clothes, paper, etc.) *yaga, yage, tsāga, tsāge, tsagayge, chage, keta, katsa, katse, keche, kiche, murtsuka, ḅarke, ḅarka, karantsaye*; to t. out *tona* and *tone*; to t. to pieces *tsatsaga, fatattake*; to t. up *chichira*.

tearing, n., e.g. of a gown, *ḅarkuwa, karantseyi, ketuwa, tsāga*.

tease, to *dāme, dāma*.

tease, a *mai-fitina, mai-ta'adi*.

teeth, n., see **tooth**.

tell, tr. v. (to inform, also to command) *fāḍa* or *fāḍi, furta**.

temerity, *gadauniya*.

temper, n. (disposition) *hāli*, pl. *hālaye*; evil t. *hālin muḡu*; (irritation, passion) *haushi, ḳumchin zuchiya*, e.g. he is in a bad t. with you *shina jin haushinka*.

tempest, n. *hadari, zirnaniya*; see **storm**.

temple, n. (a place of worship) *masallachi*, pl. *masallatai*.

tempt, tr. v. 1. (to test or put to trial) *yin jaraba*.

2. (in bad sense, to allure, mislead) *rude*.

temptation, n. (trial) *jaraba*.
tempter, n. *marude* or *mai-rude*, pl. *maruda*.
ten, card. num. *goma*, pl. *gomiya*; the latter is sometimes used to express multiples of t., e.g. *gomiya uku*.
tenant, *mai-āro*.
tend, tr. v. (to watch cattle) *kiwo*.
tender, adj. (soft, in a material sense) *da tapshi* (*tabshi* or *tafshi*); to be or to make t. *yin tapshi*; the t. leaf *danye* or *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*.
tendon of Achilles, *āgara*; t. of foot *matsarbaje* (S.).
tent, n. *lema*, *laima*, *bukka*, pl. *bukkōki*; to pitch a t. *kafa lema*; to take down a t. *nāde lema*; spec. t. of skins or leather only *alfarwa*, pl. *alfaruwa*.
tenth, n. of number, 1. (one part of ten) *ūshuri*.
 2. (one t. devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zakka*.
tenth, adj. *na-goma*, fem. *ta-goma*.
tentpole, n. *tankari*; *shika-shiki*, pl. *shikashikai*.
terebinth, n. *gwinki*.
term, n. 1. (limit, end, boundary) *iyaka*.
 2. (the time a thing lasts) *zamani*.

termites, (i.e. white ants) n. *gāra* (also used as coll.), pl. *gārani*, *shinge*.
terms, n. pl. (conditions, stipulations) *shardi*, *shartu*, *sharatsa**.
terrify, tr. v. *tsorata*, *bada tsoro*, *burga*.
terror, n. 1. abstr. (the emotion) *tsoro*, *tsantsanta*, *matsorachi*, *razāni*.
 2. concr. (an object of t.) *abin tsoro*.
test, n. *jaraba*.
test, tr. v. *dandana*, *dandani*; spec. to t. anything by smelling it *sunsuna*; to t. the weight of a load *jijiga*.
testament, (with) *wasichi**.
testator, *wasiya**.
testicles, *gwaiwa*, *marena*, *tsugau*, *tsugwaigwai*.
testimony, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*; to adduce t. *kai* (and *kawo*) *shaida* which also = to bear t., as do *shaida* and *yin shaida*, e.g. he bore or gave t. *ya shaida* or *ya yi shaida*.
tether, to tie with a long t. *talala*.
thank, tr. v. *goda*, *gode*, *barka*, *gaida*, *gaishe*, *yin albarka*, *sa albarka*; 'thank you' *na gode ma ka* or *godiya*; 'no thank you' *albarka*.

thanks, n. pl. *godiya*; expressions for to give t. are: 1. (to God) *gode*, and with *yi* or pres. forms *godiya* followed by *ma*, *ga* or *zuwa ga*, *shukra*.

2. (to men) *gode*, *yaba*; for the Engl. phrase 'thanks' cf. prec.

that, 1. demonstr. pron. pointing out remote object *wanchan*, fem. *wachan*, pl. (= those) *wadanchan*; an emphatic form = t. one *wanchananka*; the following = those as well as t. *chan*, *chana* or (in written Hausa) *chananka*, e.g. t. lion *zaki chan*; *nan* is also employed in this sense, e.g. t. business *abin nan*.

2. rel. pron., see under **who**.

3. conj. t. (in order t.), t. not (in order t. not), see **order 3**.

4. Engl. t., as a conjunctive particle, pointing out one sentence or clause as logically the object of another, is unrepresented in Hausa, which expresses such a connection, in nearly every case, by simply placing the dependent after the principal sentence. This is so with

verbs of asserting, knowing, perceiving, judging, wishing, commanding, e.g. this woman says t. she will not go on *machen nan ta che ba za ta tafiya ba*; I said to them t. I did not perceive t. I had been struck by a shot *na fadi ma su ban sani ba aka halbe ni da bindiga*; I desire t. you give me my money *ina so ka ba ni kurɗina*; he ordered t. they should be fettered *ya hakumche a sa ma su gigar*. In the same way may be expressed a consequence, e.g. he terrified him (so) t. he fell down *ya tsorata shi ya fadi a kas*; he beat it t. it died *ya yi ma ta bulala ta mutu*; similarly verbs of causing and the like may govern a clause, which takes the emphatic pronouns, expressing the effect, e.g. I will make him run (= I will cause t. he run) *ni sa shi shi gudu*; permit t. I depart *bar ni in tafi*.

That, used after to say, assert etc. *chewa*, this use is however very limited, cf. *dominchewa*.

thatch, grass used for, n. *bunu*, pl. *bunai*.

thatch, to, with grass *baibaya*,

bebeya, yin jinka, yin kan-dama.

thatched roof, n. *tanka, jinka.*

thatching, a leaf used for, n. *fitta*; millet stalks used for t. *maiwa*; a grass rope used in t. *jiniya*.

the (definite article), -n, e.g. where is the woman? *ina machen?*

theatre, n. *gidan wasa**.

thee, pers. pron., see **thou**.

theft, n. *sata, sani* or *swane, wallo**.

their, possess. pron. suffixed -su, -nsu, e.g. t. town *garinsu*; t. wives *matayensu*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *nasu*, if fem. *tasu*.

them, pers. pron. suffixed to verbs and prepositions as object, e.g. he destroyed t. *yahal-laka su*; to t. *ma su, gare su*.

then, adv. (at that time) *sa'an nan, lokachin nan, yanda, yawan da, yayin da, yaanan*; (t. and not till t. or and t.) *kana**, *kan**, *kanda**, e.g. do my work (first) and t. do your own *ka yi aikina kana ka yi naka*; (in that case, in its weakest sense) *fa, mana*, e.g. come, t. *zo mana*.

thence, adv. *dāga chan*.

there, adv. *chan, dāga chan, wuri chan, a wuri chan*; t.

is, t. are, etc. *akwai*, e.g. t. is a journey before us *akwai tafiya gāban mu*; I went t. *na tafi gurin*.

therefore, *don wannan, fa, dada*.

these, dem. pron., see **this**.

they, pers. pron. prefixed to various forms of past tenses *su, sun, suka*, suffixed to the aux. verb of the future, e.g. t. will... *za su....*

thick, adj. *da kabri, da kauri*.

thief, n. *ḡarawo*, fem. *ḡarau-niya*, pl. *ḡarayi* or *ḡarai, mai-sane, mai-sata*; a t. who comes in the night *kwaro**; a receiver of stolen property *ḡan tugu*.

thieving, n. *ḡarawonchi, ḡar-rauchi, sata, sane* or *swane*; secret t. *ja chiki*.

thigh, n. *chinya*, pl. *chinyoyi, kātara*, pl. *katatari, kar-fata*.

thin, adj. (fine, as flour, dust, etc.) *laushi*; (not stout) *ba kabri*; (lean, emaciated) *a rame, shalma, siriri*, fem. *siririya*, e.g. her young were quite t. *ḡiyata sai a rame*; to become t. *rame, yin rama*.

thing, n. *abu*, connective *abin*, pl. *abubuwa* or *abu*; (in the gen. sense of matter, subject)

tada, pl. *tadodi*; things created *talikai**

think, v. (to reflect, ponder) *tuna*, *tunane*; to t. of, or about *tuna da*; (to deem) *zato**, *zache*, *tsamāni*; (to imagine, expect) *tamaha* with *yi* and the pronouns in *na*.

thinness, *silibi* (S.), *siriri* (K.).

third, 1. ordinal num. *na-uku*, fem. *ta-uku*.

2. fractional num. (one part out of three) *sulusi**; two-thirds *sulusani**; the t. day, i.e. the day after the day after to-morrow *gata*.

thirst, n. *kishiruwa*, *kishirwa*, *kishi*; to feel t. *jin kishiruwa*, *jin kishi*.

thirsty, adj. *da kishiruwa* (or *kishirwa*).

thirteen, cardinal num. *goma sha uku*, also *sha uku*.

thirty, card. num. *talatin*.

this, dem. pronominal adj. *wannan*, pl. (these) *wadan-nan*, *wanga*, fem. *wagga*, *walga*, *warga* (S., Zanf.), pl. (these) *wadanga*; *nan* used for all genders and numbers usually placed after the word to which it refers, e.g. t. woman *machen nan*; suffixed also to the connective is *ga*,

e.g. t. house *gidanga*; t. town *garinga*.

thither, adv. of place *nan*, *chan*, *wurin chan*.

thong, leather *guru*, *karho* (S.), *kangi**

thorn, *kaya*, pl. *kayayuwa* or *kayoyi*, *karangiya*; spec. a tree with white thorns, from fruit of which ink is made *farak kaya*; a thorny bush *sarkakiya*.

thorn-apple, (*Datura metel*) *zakami*, *haukat yaro*, *babba juji*.

those, demonstr. pron., see **that** 1.

thou, pers. pron. separate and emphatic *kai*, fem. *ki* or *ke*; prefixed to past and suffixed to fut. auxiliary *ka*, fem. *ki*, e.g. t., O woman *ke mache*; t. wilt return here *za ka komo*; t. wast stung by a scorpion *an halbe ka da kunama*; the above also = thee after prepositions and tr. verbs, e.g. along with thee *tare da kai*; to thee *ma ka*; I saw thee (fem.) *na gan ki*.

though, conj. *ko da*, *sai dai*.

thought, n. *tunani*, *tunane*, *lunani**, pl. *tunanu*, *zāto*, *tamaha*, *ruwa**

thousand, num. *dubu*, *zambar*,

alif; a t. cubits *mil** (S.);
two t. *alfin, alfyan*.

thread, n. *zäre, mandawari*;
spec. very fine t. *arafiya*;
coarse t. *buruda*.

thread, v., to t. beads *zura
duwatsu*.

threadbare, *jula-jula*.

thread-worm, *kwaraba*.

threat, empty, n. *narko* (S.),
kyachewa, alwashi, kuri (S.),
ruba (K.).

threaten, v. *yîn kurari, kya-
che* (S.).

threatening, n. *kurari*.

three, card. num. *uku, talāta*;
the latter in counting cowries
often stands for t. thousand;
t. days ago *wanshekaraniya*.

thresh, tr. v. *dāka, dandaḳa,
daddaḳa, sussuka, chasa*.

thresher, n. *mai-taki*.

threshing-floor, n. *masussu-
ka, wurin sussuka, mabuga,
mabugiya*, pl. *mabuyai, fāko,
fagye*.

threshold, i.e. a raised ridge
in front of a door, n. *garama,
ḍan-garama*.

thrice, numeral adv. *sau* (or
so) *uku, guda uku*.

thrive, v. (to prosper) *yin arziki*.

throat, n. *maḳwaruwa* (S.), *ma-
ḳwarwa* (K.), *maḳōgwaro, ma-
ḳoshi*; swelling on t. *maḳoḳo,
hangum*; a sore t. *mashaḳo*.

throne, n. *kujeran sariki, ku-
jera, kursiyi, al'arshi*; heir
to the t. *majiran gado*.

throng, n. *taro*, pl. *tarori*, see
crowd.

throttle, tr. v. *murda, maḳure*.

throttler, n. *murḍago, mir-
ḍago*.

throw, n. *chāka*.

throw, tr. v. *yas, yasda, jefa,
jefi, jefe, jefo*, e.g. he throws
stones *ya jefa duwatsu*; to
t., e.g. a spear *chāka, nāsa,
nāshe*; to t. away *yas, yasda,
yāda, zubas*, zubas da*,
wulga, wurga, kayas, kayas
da, watsar da*, e.g. he threw
away his gun and fled *ya
yasda bindiga ya gudu*; to
t. back *mayas**; t. out (also=
to cast out, overthrow) *jefas
da* (K.), *jefad da* (S.), *jefashe*
(Zanf.); to t. with dice *jefa
kuriya*; spec. to t. (food) into
the mouth *hamfude, ham-
fudi*; to t. up and catch *chafi*.

thrower, a champion t. *sarikin
jifa*.

throwing, n. *jīfa, nāshi*, pl.
nashe-nashe; t. away *wulgi,
wurgi*.

thrush, a yellow-breasted chat
t. *gabachara, gwanno*.

thrust, tr. v., see **push**; to t.
through (pierce) *soka, soke* or
soki, e.g. he t. their chief

through with a spear *ya soka babbansu da mashi*.

thumb, n. *babban yatsa*.

thunder, n. *tsawa*; distant rolling t. *chidda*; a burst of t. or thunder-bolt *arādu*.

thunder, to *yin arādu*.

Thursday, n. *alhamis* or *ranar alhamis*.

thus, adv. (in this or that way or manner) *hāka*, *hākanan*, *kaza*; the last is also used (see under **so**, **such**) where the speaker mentions the way or manner, but the actual author of the account avoids it, e.g. he said the king spoke (t., or) t. and t. *ya che sariki ya fadi kāza da kāza*; (in a weak sense = so then) *fa*.

thy, possess. pron. suffixed *-ka*, *-nka*, fem. *-ki*, *-nki*, e.g. t. wife *matakka*, t. husband *mijinki*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naka*, *naki*, if fem. *taka*, *taki*.

thysself, 1. reflexive *kanka*, fem. *kanki*.

2. emphatic *kai da kanka*, fem. *ke* (or *ki*) *da kanki*; see self.

tick, (insect) *kaska*.

tickle, to *tsikara* (K.), *tsakara* (S.).

tickling, *tsikari* (K.), *tsakari* (S.).

tidings, n., see **news**.

tie, tr. v. *damre*, *ḍaure*, *damra*, *ḍarmi* (S.), *tanka*, *tanke*, *ra-taya*, *ḥalla*, *sarkafe*; to t. up together *layache* (K.), *goya*, *goye*; spec. to t. up *kumsa*, *kumshe*, to t. the hands together *bankare*; to t. grass in thatching *tsāra*, *tsāre*; to t. two pieces of string together *kulla*; to be tied together *kullu*; to t. in a knot *kumbuche*; to t. up a bag *tsuke*; tied up *kumshashe*, fem. *kumshashiya*, pl. *kumshashu*.

tied, participial adj. *sassabta*, *ballu*.

tiger-fish, (Hydrocyon lineatus) *tsagye*; a species of t.-f. *kawara* (*Alestes dentex*).

tiger-nut, *aya*.

tight, adj. (used of a string) *kyar*, (taut) *tam*, *tamau-tamau*.

tightness, *runtsi*.

till, prep. and conj., see **until**.

till, tr. v. *noma*, *nonti* or *nome*, *maimai*.

tiller, n. (i.e. of the ground) *mai-noma* or *mai-nomi*, pl. *masu-noma*.

tilt, to t. anything up against something *jitta*, *kīfa*, *kīfe*.

Timbuctoo, pr. n. *Tumbutu*.

time, n. *lōkachi*, *wakati*, *wakti**, *wakachi*, *sa'a*, *yayi*, *zamari*, *zamanu**; a short t. *zamani*

kādan, *jīmarwa*; at that t. *lokachin nan*, *sa'an nan*; at the t. when he returned here *lokachin da* (or *sa'an da*) *ya dawayo*; at what t.? *wache sa'a?* some t. *wani yayi*; (period, age) *yayi*, *zamani*, e.g. in the t. of the prophet *ga yayin annabi* or *zamanin annabi*; his t. is passed (i.e. he is old) *yayinsa ya wuche*; (set t. or proper occasion) *loto*, *wakati*, *wakti**; every t. *wakati duka*; by (or about) this t. *warhāka*; at any t. *ko yaushe*; at what t. (when) *yanda*; at what t.? *yaushē?* before-time *wuri*; in former times or some t. ago *da wuri* or *dauri*; from a long t. *dadadde*; from what t.? *daga yaushe?* since what t.? *tun yaushe?* until what t.? *har yaushe?* one at a t. *gūda gūda*; length of t. *tsawa* or *tsawo*; I have not t. to *ba ni da dama*; what t. is it? *karife nawa?* do not come before your t. *kāda ka rīgaya lokachinka*; see also **times**, **hour**.

times, pl. (of repetition) *sau* or *so*, *gūda*, e.g. five t. *sau biyar*, or *gūda biyar*; how many t.? *gūda nawa?*

timid, adj. *matsorachi*.

tin, n. *chinkal*, *sinādari**, *shinā-*

*dari** or *sunādari**; t. ore *kuza*.

tinder, n. *alfawami*.

tinge, tr. v. *rini*, *rina*.

tinged, pass. particip. *rinanne*, fem. *rinanna*, pl. *rinannu*.

tinkle, n. *dindindin*.

tip, n. (of the finger) *dan yatsa*, (of the ear) *dan kunne*.

tire, v. intr. (to be fatigued, weary) *gāje*, *gāji*, *jin gājiya*, *dāgagaji*, e.g. he was tired with travelling *ya gāji da tafiya*; we are tired with over-work *muna jin gājiya da yawan aiki*; to be tired of waiting *ḡosa*.

tithe, n. 1. (tenth part) *ushuri*.

2. t. or tithes (one-tenth devoted to religious purposes, alms) *zāka*.

title, n. (name, appellation) *sunā*, pl. *sunuwa* or *sunanaki*

to, 1. prep. *ga*, with pronouns *gare*, used of both persons and things, e.g. he came to me *ya zaka gare ni*; near to the bank of the river *kusa ga bakin ruwa*; *wa* (no before personal pronouns specially used after verbs to tell; do not tell anyone *kāda ka gaya wa kowa*; *ma*, applied not to persons but to things, mostly to pronouns e.g. to me *ma ni*, also *mini*

to thee *ma ka*; *ma* sometimes expresses the datives of advantage and interest, e.g. grant to me an abatement *ka yi ma ni rangwame*; *a*, found in a few phrases, e.g. he fell to the ground *ya fadi a kasa* or *a kas*, sometimes prefixed to *gare*, e.g. to thee *a gare ka = gare ka*; after verbs of motion etc. the English to may be wholly unrepresented, e.g. he went to his house *ya tafi gidansa*; they swam and came to land *sun iyo sun kai kasa*.

2. conj. (in order that, so that, so as to) *in* placed immediately before the verb and rarely used except with the 1st person, see under order 3.

toad, n. *pasha, kwado*.

to-and-fro, going t. *yauchi*.

tobacco, n. *tāba*, t.-pipe *tukunyar tāba*; to smoke t. *shan tāba*; a stick of rolled t. *sandan tāba*; seed of t. plant *tamna-garḍi*.

tobe, n. *riga*, pl. *riguna*; spec. a black or blue t. *rigal sakī*; a t. of black or shiny blue cloth *kore*; a red t. *jabba**; a white t. *gare*, pl. *garuruka, girke*; a white t. with short, lined body and wide single

skirt *kwakwata, kwakota*; embroidery on a t. *sharaba, tambari*; the pattern on front of a t. *fuskar riga, kwashē, linzamin riga, mumbari*; double thickness of cloth in a t. *sabāda*; for various kinds of tobés see under *riga*.

to-day, adv. *yau*, also pronounced *yo*; existing t. *mai-yau*.

toddle (or to walk on all fours), intr. v. *dūbo dūbo*.

toe, n. *yatsa*, pl. *yatsotsi* or *yatsu, yatsa na kafa*; big t. *babban yatsa*; spec. a disease of the toes *kudumbiya, kumbudīya**.

together, adv. *tare, gaba dai, gaba ḍaya, jeni*; t. with *tare da, gami da, game da*; v. to put t. *tara*; to put up t., to gather t. *gangama*; to be gathered t. (to assemble) *taru*; to come t. with violence *kara* or *karo*; to go t. *tare, hāda tafiya*, e.g. we will all go t. *duka za mu tare*; keep together! *ku tafi jeni*; collecting t. *jama'a*; a hundred rose up t. *zango ya tashi tsaitsaye*.

toil, n. (fatigue) *ta'ba**.

toil, intr. v., see labour, e.g. he toils after vanity *shina ḍawaniya da abin wofi*.

token, n. *shaida*, pl. *shaidai* and *shaidodi*.

toll, n. *humushi* (lit. one-fifth), see **tax**.

tomato, n., the bitter native t. *gauta*, pl. *gautaye*, *gautan kura*, *kulufita**; a plant with a fruit like large t. *yalo*, pl. *yaluna*.

tomb, n. *kushewa* or *kusheya**, pl. *kusheyi*, *kushewoyi*, *wurin kushewa*, *wurin bisne*, *kābari*, *kabri*.

to-morrow, n. *gobe*, *kashegari* (K.), *wanshekare* (S.), cf. prov. *yau da gobe kayan Allah*; the day after t. *jibi*, the day after *jibi* is called *gata*, that after *gata*, i.e. the third day after t. *chitta*.

tongs, n. *awartaki*, *hantsaki*.

tongue, n. 1. (the bodily member) *halshe*, *harshe*, pl. *halshina*, *halussa*.

2. (a particular language) see **language** 2.

too, adv. 1. (likewise) *kuwa*, *kuma*, *ma*.

2. (more than enough) express by the verbs *faye* and *buwaye*, e.g. it was t. severe for me *ya faye ni karifi*; he was t. big *ya faye girma*; he was t. much for me *ya buwaye ni*; t. much *ya faye yawa*.

tools, n. pl. *kaya* or the pl. *kayayeki*.

tooth, n. *hauri*, *hakori*, pl. *hakora*, *zaga*, pl. *zagogi*; a molar t. *matamni*, pl. *matamna*; back teeth *turame**; spec. a tree the bristles of which are used for rubbing the teeth *dashi*; t.-gaping, n., used of one who has lost two teeth *gibi*, e.g. *shina gibi*; a t. that has been filed *fike*; eye t. *gaboba*; a wide space between two front teeth *wushiriya*.

toothless, adj. *mai-dasashi*.

top, n. *kai*, pl. *kanuwa*, *kawana* and *kawuna*, *kōroruwa*, *tsololo*, *tsororo*, pl. *tsololuwa*, *tuluwa* (K.), *bisa*; on the t. of a *kan*, *bisa* or a *bisa*; a spinning t. *makodi**.

toper, a *mashayi*, pl. *mashaya*.

topple over, to, intr. v. *yin kunduma*.

torch, n. *bakin wuta*; a display of torches *wowo* (K.), *wauwo* (S.).

torment, n. *tsanani*; spec. place of t. for unbelievers *gumki**, *gamki**, *gwauki**; to suffer t. *jin tsananta*.

torment, tr. v. *tsananta*, *tsane*, *tsani*, *tsananche*, *hāsada*, *arja* (K.), *alja* (S.).

tornado, n. *hadari*.

- torrent**, n. *korama*; noise of a rushing t. *bandam-bandam*.
- tortoise**, n., a land t. with convex shell *kunkuru*; a water t. with flat shell or mud turtle *kififiya*, *yuma* (S.); a small t. *kafarji**, *farkaji*; the shell of a t. *kwachiya*, *kwariya*.
- toss**, tr. v. (of cattle, etc. when butting or goring) *tunkuda*, *tunkwiya*.
- total**, n. *ɗokachi* (sum or amount reached by reckoning), see **calculation** 2.
- totter**, to, adj. (applied to the walk of the old or blind) *kütup kütup*; (of walls, etc.) *karkache*.
- touch**, tr. v. *täba*, *täbi*; to engage slightly in, id., e.g. he just touched the work *ya täba yin aiki*.
- towards**, prep. *ga*, before pronouns *gare*, e.g. some men are coming t. us *wadansu mutane suna zakuwa gare mu*.
- towel**, n. *bante*, *banche*, pl. *bantuna*, *kalkäfi*.
- tower**, *bene*; a watch t. *ma-bäga* (S.).
- town**, n., a large, walled t. *birni*, pl. *birane* or *birnuwa*; a small, unwalled t. *gari*, pl. *garuruwa* and *garigaru*; a quarter of a t. *shiya*, pl. *shiyoyi*, *unguwa*; a frontier t. *kain iyaka*.
- toy**, n. (plaything) *abin wargi*.
- track**, n. (beaten path) *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*; a broad beaten t. *rimdi*, *godabe*; (a spoor) *lawali*; let him not go back on his tracks *käda ya bi sawunsa na da*.
- trade**, n. *chiniki*, *jaura*, *korami*, *sana'a*, *fatauchi*.
- trade**, intr. v. *yin chiniki*; to t. successfully *chin kasuwa*.
- trader**, n. *falke*, fem. *falkiya*, pl. *fatake*, *mai-fatauchi*, *mai-chiniki*, *mai-dillanchi**, *sambani*, *tajiri*, *ɗan kasuwa*, *mashimfiɗi*.
- trading**, n. *fatauchi*, *dillanchi*; corn t. *kwarami*, traders in corn *yan kwarami*.
- tradition**, n. (doctrine orally handed down) *sunna*, *tariyo**.
- traduce**, tr. v., see **calumniate**.
- trample**, tr. v. *taka*, *bijigi*, intensive form *tattaka* or *tattake*, e.g. let us not t. it under foot *kada mu tattake shi*.
- transform**, tr. v. *rikida*, *sauya* and *sawaya*, e.g. by the power of a charm he transformed himself into an elephant *da ikon magani ya sauya kansa giwa*.

transformed, pass. particip. *rikidaddē*, fem. *rikidaddiya*, pl. *rikidaddu*; to be t. *sauya* and *sawaya*, *mayas da*, *rikida*, e.g. he was t. into a sheep *ya sauya tumkiya*; she was t. into something or other *ta mayas da wani abu*, see also **change 3**.

transgress, intr. v. (to do wrong) *yin laifi*, (to commit sin) *yin zunufi*.

translate, v. *mayas da*, see **interpret 1**.

translated, pass. particip. *sauyayye*, fem. *sauyayya*, pl. *sauyayyu*.

transport, n., oxen used for t. *takarkari*, pl. *takarkarai*.

trap, n. *haḳo*, pl. *haḳoḳi*, fig. (a thing leading into harm or error) id.; a t. consisting of a hole in the ground *ḅurma* or *ḅuma**, *mashaḳo*; a t. for wild animals *tarko*, pl. *tarkuna*, *ḅurma*; to lay or set a t. *haḳo* with *yi* or the forms in *na*; a fish t. *sankuja* (K.); a t. consisting of a hole and noose *taskira*.

travail, n. 1. (severe labour) see **toil**.

2. (pains of childbirth) *wahalan haifuwa*, *naḳudar haifuwa*; to be in t. *naḳuda*.

travel, intr. v. *tafi*; also *tafiya* with *yi* and the forms in *na*, e.g. as we were travelling much rain fell *da muna tafiya an yi ruwa dayawa*; spec. money paid to a king for permission to t. *garama*; to t. hard *yin haramat tafiya*.

traveller, fellow, n. *abokin tafiya*, *maraki*.

travelling, n. *tafe*, pl. *tafiyya*.

travelling-ant, n. (or driver-ant) *kwarkwasa*, *kwalkwasa*; a red t.-a. *makwaiwa*.

treachery, *tsēgumi*, pl. *tsegunguma*, *yaudara*, *kissa*.

tread, v., to t. down *taka*, *taki*, *take*, intens. *tattaka*, *tattake*, *bijigi*, *dāḅe*; to t. upon (to crush) *latse*.

treasure, n. *wada*, *wada'a*, *taska*; treasures *ajiya*, *azawa*; royal t. stored up *kambi**; spec. chamber for storing t. *rafoniya*, pl. *rafoni*; to lay up t. *taskache*; t.-trove *galala*.

treasury, n. *taska*, pl. *taskoki*.

tree, n. *itache*, *iche* (the former is sometimes used as a plural of *iche* esp. in Sokoto), pl. *itatuwa*; in this sense the word is masc., a stick cut from a t., i.e. *itache* is usually regarded as fem.; a dried-up, withered t. *koren itache*; a t. used to hang meat on

jigo, pl. *jiguna*; a pair of trees so planted as to grow into one *gāminbauta*; a bent t. *kwandariya*, *ḡondariya*.

The following are some of the more common names of trees found in Nigeria: various species of ficus, e.g. *chediya*, *gamji*, *durumi*, *ḡawuri*, *shirinya*, *uwar yara*, *wa*, *rubiya*; various species of acacia, e.g. *gawo*, *dakwara*, *farak ḡaya*, *tāwasa*, *ḡorowa*, *gabarūwa*, *bagarūwa*, *ḡundu*, *kiriya*; the baobab t. *kuka*; various species of euphorbia, e.g. *kumkumiya*, *fida-sartse*, *fida sarḡe* (S.), *kirana*, *kyanara* (S.), *tinya*; the copaiba t. *kadaura*, *maje*; a t. with yellow hard-shelled edible fruit (*Strychnos spinosa*) *ḡoḡiya*; the bloodwood or African rosewood t. *mado-biya*; a t. (*Vitex cienkowskii*) from the fruit of which molasses are made *ḡinya*; a t. (*Detarium Senegalense*) from which molasses and gum are obtained *taura*; the 'ebony tree' *kainya* or *kanya*; a tall, straight t. *dilo*; a large t. with flat, winged fruit (*Terminalia macroptera*) *baushe*; a t. with yellow plum-like fruit (*Spondias*) *danya*; a large,

bushy t. (*Zizyphus spina-Christi*) with red edible berries *kurna*; a t. with long thorns, white flowers and edible leaves *chizaki*; a t. (*Zizyphus jujuba*) the fruit of which is made into cakes *magariya*; a small t. with reddish wood and edible leaves (a chew-stick) *marke*; a small t. from which black-smith's charcoal is made *ḡirya*, *ḡariya*; a t. from the bark of which small ropes are made *tawatsa*; the silk-cotton t. (*Eriodendron orientale*) *rimi*, pl. *rimaye*; a red-flowered silk-cotton t. *gurjiya*; a t. the leaves of which furnish a yellow stain and, mixed with indigo, a green dye *magina*; a small t. (*Bauhinia reticulata*) the leaves of which are often used for wrapping food and the bark of which is used as a stain to darken lips *kalgo* or *kargo*; a t., with reddish bark (*Hymenocardia acida*), used for shed supports etc. *janyaro*; a t. (African bdellium) the bristles of which are used as a tooth-brush *dashi*; a large t. the aromatic bark of which is ground up as a medicine *fasa-kwariya* or *pasa-kwari*;

- a t. with fragrant flowers and leaves and a black or purple berry (*Eugenia owariensis*) *malmo*, *marmo*; the horse-radish tree (*Moringa pterygo-sperma*) *zagalagandi*; a small t. with yellow blossoms, an infusion of its leaves (*Cassia goratensis*) used by women near childbirth *runhu*.
- trek**, to *yin tafe*.
- tremble**, intr. v. (with terror, cold, etc.) *firgita*, *raura*, *zazaga*.
- trembling**, participial n. (from terror, cold, etc.) *raurawa*, *kađuwa*, adj. form *makarkata*, *makyarkyata*; t. all over *zazagawa*; t. (from excitement, agitation) *karäya*.
- trench**, a *hafaru**.
- trespass**, intr. v., e.g. on a forbidden area *kutsa*, see **transgress**.
- trial**, n. (a putting to the proof, testing) *jarabi*, *jaraba*; to make t. of, v. *yin jaraba*.
- tribal marks**, n pl. (cut on face) *shaushawa*, *kyaskyastu* (K.), *kyakkyastu* (S.), (cut from corners of the mouth) *yambaka*, see also *hawayen zaki*.
- tribe**, n. *iri*, pl. *irare*, *kauwi**, *kabila*.
- tribunal**, n. *wurin shari'a*.
- tributary**, adj., a t. stream *hannun rafi*.
- tribute**, n. *humushi*, *gandu*, *tuda*, *biko*, *jiziya* (S.), *kurđin kasa*; t. money *kurđin gandu*; spec. t. paid by the heathen *tara*, *tařo*; see **tax**.
- trick**, n. (dexterous artifice) *wayo*; tricks *wasawa*.
- trickery**, n. (fraudulent deception) *barkwanchi*.
- trickle**, to *tarāra*, *tarāro*, *zurare*, see **leak**.
- trim**, tr. v. (to put in order) *gyarta*.
- trinkets**, coll. *kayan ado*; see **ornament**.
- trip**, intr. v. *tuntsure*, *yin tuntu*, the last is used as a tr. and intr. v.; to t. a person up *tade*.
- Tripoli**, pr. n. *Tarabulus* or *birnin Tarabulus*.
- triumph**, n., see **victory**.
- trodden down**, *takakke*, fem. *takakka*, pl. *takakku*.
- trombone**, *kakaki**.
- troop**, n., see **company**.
- trot**, intr. v. (of a horse) *kilisa*.
- trotting**, *rishi*, *sakarafu*, *sasaka*.
- trouble**, n. (distress) *wahala*, *hawāla*, *tsananta*, *kinke*, *alale*, *sanadi*, *sawarwari*, *tono*; to be in t. *yin wahala*; to feel t. *jin wahala*, *tangara**.

trouble, n., one who is in t. *mai-wahala*.

trouble, v. tr. *wahalda*, *wahalsa*, *wahalshe*, *tsananche*, *tsananta*, *hasada*, *alale*, *ar-kāna*, *gayara*, *kinke*, *sawarwara*, *shamache*, *shamata*, *fitina*, *haiyata*; do not t. (i.e. feel distressed) *kada ka wahalda kanka*; (as a polite exp. = spare yourself the t.) *kiyaye kanka*.

troublesome, adj. *da wuya*.

trough, n. *komi*, *jirigi*, *jirgi*, pl. *jirage*.

trousers, n. (i.e. the loose, baggy native t.) *wando*, pl. *wanduna*, *buje* (K.), *dunhu*; two pieces of cloth sewn on at the bottom of native t. *kamun kāfa*; trouser-string *mazargi*; t. embroidered up to the top *wando mai-kamu*; a fold in the waist of t. through which the cord (*zariya*) runs *kubaka*.

true, adj. gen. *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaskiya* and *gaske*, (of persons, veracious, sound, honest) *mai-gaskiya*; (faithful) *salihī**; t. as an adverbial phr. (i.e. quite right) *ainin* as well as the words given in seq.

truly, adv. *da gaskiya*, *da gaske*, *gaskiya*, *gaske*, *ashe*, *ainin*,

hakika, *aiwa*, *ainin*, *wallahi*, *labudda*.

trumpet, n. *kafo*, pl. *kafoṅi* or *kaḥuna*, *kakaki*.

trumpeter, n. *mai-kafo*, *mai-busa*, *mai-shantu* (lit. blower); a mounted t. *masarchi*.

trunk, n. 1. (a small box, usually of leather) *sanduki*, *sanduki* (S.), pl. *sandukai*.

2. (proboscis of elephant) *hānnun giwa*.

3. (the t. of a tree) *kore* or *koren itache*, *kututtura*.

trust, n. (confidence, certainty of safety) *amāna*, *shaduda* or *saduda*, *dangana*, (a deposit of money etc.) *sabtu*, *saptu*, *sautu*, *sotū*; he betrayed t. *ya chinye amāna*, I left money with them on t. *na yi ma su sabtu*.

trust, intr. v., or t. in (i.e. rely on) *dōgara*, *dangana*, *shaduda* or *saduda*, *ingata**, *sakankanche*, I t. in God *ina dangana da* (or *ga*) *Allah*; follow Mohammed, t. in him *ku bi Muhammadu ku sakananche*.

trustee, n. *maḍarukan bashi*.

trustworthy, adj. (to be relied on, depended on) *yardaji*, *ingatachi**, *tabbatache*, fem. *tabbatachiya*, e.g. this account is t. *wannan labari ingatachi*;

t. language *magana tabbata-chiya*.

trustworthiness, *inganchi*.

truth, n. *gaskiya* ; to speak the

t. *ba gaskiya* ; to establish the t. *gaskata* or *gaskanta*.

try, tr. v. (make trial of), see

trial ; (endeavour) *yin ko-kari*, *taɓa ko-kari* ; t. diligently to follow his tradition *ku bada ko-karinku ga sunna tai*.

tsetse-fly, *tsando*, *aworo*.

Tuarek, n. gent. *Azbin*, *Asbin*, *Ba-Azbine*, pl. *Azbinawa*, *Asbinawa*.

Tuesday, n. *ranar talata*.

tuft of hair, n., a t. on the head *tukku*, *tukkurwa* ; t. o. h. in the middle of the head *zanko* ; see **hair** ; t. of grain *geza*, pl. *gezuna*, *tuntu*.

tug, tr. v. (to haul along) *ja* ; see **draw**.

tumour, *kurji*, *gyambo*, *jam-bade*, see **abscess**.

tumult, n. (noisy clamour of a multitude) *hargowa* ; t. (e.g. of war) *farmaki*, *rigima*, *falmaki*.

turban, n. *rawani*, pl. *rawunna* ; spec. a white muslin t. with red edges *zabuta* ; t. of white muslin *harsa*, *hassa* ; white stuff for making t. *mabarasa* ; a variegated cloth used for making turbans,

barmushi ; twisting of a double black and white t. round the head *barna*, *funi* ; a black and white t. *mahawara* ; the winding of a t. *nannāde*.

turkey, n. *talotalo*.

turmeric, *gangamau*, *gangamu*.

turn in, a, at the edge of a garment, n. *shafi*.

turn, v. 1. tr. (to move round) *maida* ; to t. away from *juyama* ; to t. the head away from *kau da kai* ; to t. back, or t. over *juya* ; to t. upside down *jiche*, *jichi*, *jirkiche*, *kifa* (K.) ; to t. over (e.g. a mat, piece of cloth etc. for the purpose of folding) *linke* or *nimka* ; to t. round, or t. over *bankada*, *bankade*, *kifa*, *kife* ; intr. to t. aside (off the road, or out of the way) *ratsa*, *rache*, *ratse*, *baudi*, *karkache*, e.g. we t. aside from Kano *mun ratsa Kano* ; to t. back *tankwashe* ; to t. over *kewaye* or *kewayi* ; to t. round (to revolve) id., e.g. my head turned round (of giddiness etc.) *kaina ya kewaye* ; to t. round (of a single change of position) *waiwaya*, *waiga*, e.g. when he called me I turned round and saw him

da ya kira ni na waiwaya na gan shi; to t. out (to become eventually) *fita*, e.g. he turned out well *ya fita nagari*.

2. (to change or change into) tr. and intr., see **change**.

turning, participial n. *juyawa, jujuyawo, waiwayawa, waige* (K.), pl. *waige-waige*.

turtle, n. *yuma* (S.); mud t. *kififiya*.

turtle-dove, n. *kurchiya*, pl. *kurchecheki* and *kurchiyoyi, wala*, pl. *walu*.

tusk, n. *zaga*; an elephant's t. *haurin giwa, hauri*; cf. **ivory**.

tweezers, *matsefata*.

twelfth, ord. num. *na-goma sha biyu*, fem. *ta-goma sha biyu*.

twelve, card. num. *goma sha biyu*, also *sha biyu*; t. times *sau goma sha biyu*.

twentieth, ord. num. *na-ishirin* or *na-ashirin*, fem. *ta-ishirin*.

twenty, card. num. *ishirin, ashirin*; in counting by twenties *hauya* and *läso* (= a score) are especially employed, e.g. *hauya uku = sittin*.

twice, numeral adv. *sau biyu*.

twig, n. *tsumanjiya, tsumajiya, tsumagiya, reshe, rishe, kirare*.

twilight, n. (that before dawn) *jijifi* also *jifjif, alfiyir*.

twinkling of an eye, n. (a

moment of time) *kyaptawan ido* or *keptawa da gani*.

twins, n. pl. *tugwaye, tawaye*, spec. next child born after twins *gambo, gumbo**.

twist, tr. v. *gusda, kitso* (e.g. the hair); to t. the neck *nadiye* (K.), *murda, murde* (K.), *mirde* (S.), *murgude, kwakwume*; to t. thread, etc. *murje, burka, nade, yin nadi, lauya*; (in plaiting rope, etc.) *tubka, tufka, tupka, tumka, tukka, darza*; intens. form *mummurda*; twisting cotton round a pin before spinning *kulla*.

twisted, adj. *a murgude*.

twisting, n. *nadi*; t. of strands into threads *tuka, tukka*.

two, card. num. *biyu*; by twos *biyu biyu*; t. hundred *dari biyu* or *metin*; t. thousand *alfin*.

tying, *kumshi*, see **tie**.

tyranny, *alfarma, yaji*.

udder, n. *nono*, pl. *nonuwa, hantsa*.

ugliness, *kwarjini, muni, mugunta*.

ugly, adj. *da kwarjini, mam-muna, mummuna, da muni*.

ulcer, n. *gyambo*, pl. *gyambuna, mele*; 'corneal ulcer *hakiya*; see **scab**.

umbrella, n. *lema**, *laima**, *tuta** or *tuti**, pl. *tutochi*.

unabashed, *da kwarkwasa*.

unable, to be *gāza, kasa*; I am u. to go *na gāza tafiya*; they were u. to overcome *sun gaza isa*; *buwaya*, e.g. I am u. to do it *na buwaya*.

unalloyed, adj. *safi*; see **unmixed**.

unbaked, an u. pot *ḍanyen kasko*.

unbecoming, adj. *haram, ba daidai*; e.g. he did what was u. *ya yi abin da ba daidai ba*.

unbeliever, n. *kāfiri*, pl. *kāfirai, kāfirawa*; to become an u. *kafirta*.

unbind, tr. v. *kunche, kunchi, kwanche*.

unbound, pass. part. *kwanche*, fem. *kwanchiya*, pl. *kuntu*.

uncertain, adj. *da zuchiya biyu*; I am u. *ina da zuchiya biyu*; to be u. *yin tantama*.

uncertainty, n. (a state of doubt) *kokanto, tambaba, tantama, tachtetache*.

unchaste, adj., see **profligate**.

unchastity, n. *zallantaka*.

uncle, maternal, n. *rāfani, kawu*; (father's brother) *bābani*.

unclean, adj. (dirty, foul) *da dauda, kazāmi*; ceremonially u. *haram, da haram*.

uncleanness, n. (in a physical sense) *dauda*; (in a wider sense) *kazamta, kazanta, tozari, jāraba, jāira, janaba*.

uncooked, adj. *ḍanye*; u. flesh *nama ḍanye*.

uncover, tr. v. *yaye*.

under, adv. and prep. *kalḱashin* (S.), *karḱashin* (K.), *kas*.

underneath, adv., cf. preceding.

understand, v. *ji, fahimta* or *fahumta**, *hankalta, yin tsimi*, e.g. I u. your words, I u. quite well *na ji maganakka sarai*; he understood (i.e. you need say no more) *ya yi kārin magana*; to u. well intens. *sansanche*; to fail to u. *gigiche* or *gigi, ruḍi**, *gagata*, the last taking *da* before object, e.g. I failed to u. it *na gagata da shi*.

understanding, n. 1. (comprehending, comprehension) *fahimchi, jiyayya, tsimi, kari*; (knowledge, cleverness) *azan-chi*; lack of u. *gigi*, see also **ability**.

2. (a good u.) *jiyayya*.

undo, tr. v., see **untie**; (to annul, render vain) *wofinta*; (to ruin) *ḥata*.

undress, v. *ḍebe* or *ḍebo, tube, fitas da* all with *riguna*, etc.

- undressed, pass. particip., see **naked**.
- uneven**, adj. (of a surface) *da kurzuna*, see **rough**.
- unfasten**, to *ɓalle*.
- ungird**, tr. v. *sunche*, e.g. he ungirded his camel *ya sunche rakuminsa*.
- ungrateful**, adj. *butulu*, *mai-butulchi*.
- unintelligible talk**, *baubawa*, *bobawa*.
- unique**, adj. *kadaichi*.
- unit**, *gūda*.
- unite**, tr. v. *gama*; intr., to u. closely *garwaya*.
- unity**, n. *dayanchi**; spec. to profess the u. of God *tauhida** or *tauhidi**.
- unkind**, *magaya*, *magauchi*, pl. *magata*.
- unlawful**, adj. *da haram* or *haram*; n., anything u. or what is u. *haram* or *haramu*, *abin haram*, *shirku*; u. gain or profit *haramiya*.
- unless**, conj. *sai*, *sai ko*, e.g. he is not without reason, u. he refuses to listen to that which thou showest to him *ba shi rasa huja ba sai ya ki jin abin da ka nuna mai*.
- unload**, tr. v. gen. *shida* or *shide*; to u. camels, etc *sabka*, *sabki*, *sapka*, *safka*, *sauka*, *sauki*.
- unloose**, *katsi*, see **untie**.
- unlucky**, something u. *shu'umi*.
- unmixed**, adj. (pure from admixture) *tsalka*, *tsatsalka*, *safi*, *kūna*; u. water *kūna ruwa*.
- unprofitable**, adj. *babu anfani*, *da babu anfani*, *banza*, *babu riba*.
- unravelled**, to become u. *warwari*.
- unripe**, adj. *danye* or *danyi*, pl. *danyoyi*, *danyu*; u. fruit *jimbiri* (S.).
- unsaleable**, *ya ki sayuwa*.
- untidiness**, *barkatai*; cf. everything in his house is untidy *duka gidansa barkatai ya ke*.
- untie**, tr. v. *kunta*, *kunche*, *kwanche* (K.), *sunche* or *sinche*, *ɓalle*, *katsi*, *bainye*, *banye*.
- untied**, pass. particip. *kunche*, *kwanche*, fem. *kunchiya*, pl. *kuntu*.
- until**, till, prep. and conj. *har*, *hal*, *kamin*, prep., e.g. he followed the true path u. now *ya bi hanyar gaskiya har yanzu*; conj., e.g. let them quarrel u. they are tired *a bar su su faɗa har su gaji*; *sai*, prep. with nouns of time, e.g. u. to-morrow *sai gobe*; u. evening *sai mareche*; these expressions are elliptical, some such v. as wait, etc.

being understood before them, as is the case also when *sai* is used as a conj., e.g. give up delaying u. you are old *bari jira sai ka tsufa; kana, kan*, kanda, kamin*, conj. = then and not u. then, so that the corresponding English sentence contains a negative, e.g. don't eat our bread u. you have eaten your own *ka chi gurasanka kana ka chi tamu*.

untimely, an u. birth *kwatan-tanwa**.

unto, prep. (a strengthened form of *to*) *ga*; with pronouns *gare, zuwa, ya zuwa*; in correlative expressions combined with *har*, e.g. from this border unto that *daga iyakan nan har ga iyaka chan*.

untrue, adj. *kakari**; the n. *ƙariya* (= Engl. 'a story') is constantly used in this sense, e.g. whether true or u. I do not know *gaskiya ko ƙariya ban sani ba*.

untrustworthy, an u. person *danyen kasko* (lit. an unbaked pot).

unwell, adj. *rashin lafiya, maras-lafiya*; see *ill*.

up, adv. (upwards, aloft) *bisa, a bisa, ɗaf*; e.g. the falcon

soared up *shafa ya tashi bisa*; he climbed u. the tree *ya hau itache ɗaf ɗaf*.

uphold, tr. v. (to support, e.g. as a tent-pole) *tokāra*.

upon, prep. *bisa* or *a bisa*, which may also be followed by *ga*; e.g. u. it *bisa garesa*; he got u. the horse *ya hau bisan* (or *bisa ga*) *doki*.

upright, e.g. I stood u. *na tsaya daidai*.

uproot, to *tumbuke*.

upset, v. 1. tr. *jirkiche, jiche, jichi, kifa* (K.), *birkichi* or *birkiche*; to u. (so as to spill water, etc.) *zubda, zubda ma, dole, kikkifa*.

2. intr., to u. or to be u. (of men, etc.) *tuntsure*; (of a boat) *durimi, dirimi, dulmiye*.

upside down, to turn, tr. v. *jirkiche, jiche, jichi, shiche, shida*.

urinate, intr. v. *yin bawali, yin bowali, yin boli, yin fitsari*.

urine, n. *fitsari, barwali, bowali, boli*.

us, pers. pron. obj. *mu* suffixed to verbs and prepositions, e.g. he called u. *ya kira mu*; to u. *ma mu*, or with assimilation *mumu*.

usage, n. (custom) *ada, ta'ada, tada* (S.), pl. *tadodi*, see *custom*.

use, n. (utility, advantage, profit, gain) *anfāni*; e.g. what is the u. of ink? *tadarwa minene anfāninta?* of u. *da anfāni*; of no u. *babu anfāni*; a man of no u. *mutumen wofi*; I am making u. of him *ina moronsa*.

use, tr. v. (to employ), no general term, e.g. they u. flesh for food *abinchinsu nama*; they u. skins only for clothing *rigunansu duka sai da fata*; they u. force *suna yin tilas*; he can u. the axe *shina iya yin aiki da gatari*; (to make u. of, i.e. profit by) *anfāni, anfāne*; (to be wont) verbal forms with *kan*, e.g. he used to come home at night *shi kan tafo gida da dare*; to be used to (to be accustomed to) *saba da*; e.g. camels are used to men *raƙumma sun saba da mutane*; which do you u.? *wanne ka ke moro?*

useful, adj. *da anfāni, mai-anfāni*; it is u. *shinada akiba*.

useless, adj. *babu anfāni, banza*; u. toil *wata reran*.

uselessly, to work, intr. v. *sunkwiya* or *sunkuya*.

uselessness, n. *wofi*.

usury, *fifiko**.

uterus, *mahaifa*.

utility, n., see **use**.

uvula, *beli, belu, hakin wuya, kwadon halshe*.

vaccination, *dashin yar-rani*.

vagabond, adj. *gujeje, ɗan karma*.

vagabondage, *magi*.

vagina, *tsēle, farji*.

vain, adj. (empty, worthless) *banza, kakari, amēre*; in v. *ɓarna* (K.), *ɓanna* (S.); (conceited) see **conceit**.

valiant, *mai-yaji*.

valley, *kwari, kware* (S.), n, see **ravine**.

value, n. (estimated worth in money) *daraja, antaya*, see **price**.

vanity, n. (emptiness, worthlessness) *kakari, abin wofi*; (conceit, foolishness) *wanta, faɗin kai*, see **conceit**.

vapour, n. (mist, fog) *hazo*; v. rising in hot sun *ƙawalwalniya*.

variance, n. (dissension, disagreement), see **discord**.

variation, n., see **difference**.

various, adj. *dabam dabam, daban daban*, e.g. v. things are sold in the market *abubuwa dabam dabam a sayas da su chikin kasuwa*.

vase for scent, n. *wakiya*.

vaunt, to *rangwada* (S.), *rangaji* (K.).

veal, n. *naman maraki*.

vegetable-marrow, *kabushi*,
ruguguwa.

veil, n., long v. *lullubi*, *lulube* or *lillibi*, *zane**; a v. worn over the mouth and hanging down in front *amāwali*.

veil, tr. v. *lulluba*; refl. to v. oneself, id.

vein, n. *jijiya*, pl. *jiwoji* or *jijiyoyi*, *majināya* (K.); veins coll. *dagura*.

velvet cloth, kind of, n. *kadamiskin*, *karamiskin*, *mulufi*, *yapki*, *yauki*.

velvet-mite, *karamiskin*, *karamuskin*, *karmuskin*.

vendor, of small goods *dan kōli*.

venereal disease, *basiru*, *minyau*, *piyauka*.

vengeance, to take, v. *rama*.

Venus, (the planet) n. *matan wata*, lit. the wife of the moon.

verandah, *shirai*, *shirayi*.

verify, to *hakikanta*.

verily, adv. *hakika*, *an che*, *ai*, *da gaskiya*, see **truly**.

vermin, see **tick**, etc.

verse, a v. of the Koran, n. *aya*, pl. *ayoyi*; verses of a song *tsarin maganganu*.

vertigo, n., see **giddiness**.

very, adv. *dayawa*, most frequently with the expression thrown into a nominal form,

e.g. he was v. fearful *ya ji tsoro dayawa*, etc.; sometimes this idea is expressed by repetition, e.g. v. fast, or v. quickly *maza maza*; v. slowly or v. quietly *sannu sannu*; spec. v. red *ja wur*; v. black *baki kirin*, *baki wur*; v. white *fari fat*; v. much (of habitual actions) is often expressed by v. *faye*, e.g. dogs bark v. much at night *karnuka sun faye hafshi da dare*.

vessel, n. 1. (utensil for holding anything) *tukunya*, pl. *tukane* or *tukwane*; a v. made of clay *kasko*, pl. *kasake*; a v. made of skin *tandu*; spec. a glass v. *tangaram*.

2. see **boat**.

vex, tr. v. *wahalshe*, refl. to v. oneself *wahalda*.

vexation, n. *haushi*; see **anger**.

vexed, to be, intr. v. *jin haushi*, e.g. he is v. with me *yana jin haushina*; phr. my heart is v. *zuchiyata ta tafasa*.

vice, n. 1. (profligacy) *zina*.

2. (a defect, blemish) *aibi*, *aibu*.

vicinity, *habarra* (Ar.).

victory, n. *nasara*, *nasarchi*, *bijinta*; to gain a v. *nasara* with *yi* or *samu*, e.g. he gained a v. *ya yi* (or *ya samu nasara*).

victuals, n. *abinchi, tuwo, chima, chimaka.*

view, n., see **sight** 2.

vigorous, *karsani.*

vile, adj. *kazami, duniya**.

village, n. *kauye*, pl. *kauyuka, unguwa, anguwa.*

villain, n. *mai-masifa, mugun mutum.*

villainy, n. (mischief, wickedness) *masifa, mugunta, she-guntaka, shēge**.

vine, wild v. *ayana, dafara, tsibiri kinkini, chibri kinkini*; edible-stemmed v. (*Vitis quadrangularis*) *ḍadori*; rubber v. *alubada, alibada, chiwo.*

vinegar, n. *ruwan tsami, yami.*

violate, to *tāka.*

violence, n. (i.e. tyrannical or wrongful v.) *tsanani*; (physical force) *karifi*, e.g. by v. (by force) *da karifi, da tilas.*

violin, a musical instrument resembling a *goge**.

viper, *gajera, injihau, tsadaraki, kububuwa, sha-nono*, see **snake**.

virago, *kazgama.*

virgin, n. *buduruwa*, pl. *buduruwai, kurkiya*, pl. *kurkoki, kurkiyoyi, bikira, sagara.*

virginity, *budurchi, buduruwanchi.*

visible, to become (of a star) *keto, bullo**.

vision, n., see **sight** 1.

visit, tr. v. *jawayi*; spec. of a religious v. to a shrine or holy person *ziyara, ziyarche.*

visitor, n. (guest or stranger) *bako*, fem. *bakuwa*, pl. *bakuna, baki* or *bakokuna.*

vital, a v. spot *makāsa.*

vizier, *waziri**.

voice, loud, n. *muriya*, pl. *muriyoyi.*

void, to make, tr. v. *wofinta.*

vomit, v. *yin amai*, (to dribble) *tumbuḍi, amaye, gātse.*

vomiting, *gashi*, (e.g. after drinking poison) *barā.*

voracious, see **greedy**.

voracity, n. *zowari, zuari, zari.*

vowels, n. *hajatu**; points or v. placed above or below letters *wasali.*

vulture, n. *angulu, agulu, augulu*, fem. *angula, agula*, pl. *angullai*; the crested eagle *angulun kwakwa*; the fishing v. *jayaki, meke, maiki, mikiya, mikiya.*

wag the head, to, v. (in token of assent) *gyāḍa kai*, also *kāda kai*; to w. or move the head (in token of dissent) *kauḍa kai.*

wage war, to, v. *yin yaki.*

wages, coll. *lada, jinga, alāro, ijāra*; one who pays w. *mai-*

jinga ; to pay w. *yin jinga*, *ijarta* ; a w.-earner *ɗan ijāra*, *ɗan jinga*.

wagtail, *maɗikin ƙasa*.

wail, n. *kuka*.

wail, v. *kuka* with *yi* or the forms in *na*.

waist, *dunu*.

wait, intr. v. gen. expressed by means of *jīma*, e.g. w. a little *jīma ƙāɗan*, or *jim ƙāɗan* ; w. a while *sai anjīma* ; to w. a short time *jinjīma* ; where the meaning is obvious *tsaya* (stop) is often used ; to w. for *jīra*, *jīrache*, *jīrata*, *jīraya* (S.), *tsumaya* (K.), *yin jinkiri*, *dakata*, *dakanta*, e.g. I waited for you *na dakanta ma ku*, *yin dāko* ; to w., i.e. to linger *dāɗe*.

wait, lying in, n. *fako*, *aranfaki*, *kwanto* ; a place for lying in w. *mafaka*.

wait, to lie in, intr. v. *yin fako*.

waiting, *dakachi*, *dāko*, *jinkiri*, *tsayi*.

wake, to, intr. v. (to cease to sleep) *falka* ; tr., to w. one up *tada*, *tayas*, *falkad da*.

wale, made by a whip etc., n. *kulu*, pl. *kulayi*.

walk, n. (pathway) *hanya*, pl. *hanyoyi* ; also fig. of the religious w., e.g. to follow the true w. *bi hanyan gaskiya*.

walk, intr. v. (to move slowly on foot) *yin yawo* ; this is used of the act of walking itself and of promenading, or taking a w. ; very frequently in this sense the phr. *shan iska* (lit. to drink the wind) is combined with *yawo* or *tafi*, e.g. we walked for an airing *muka yi yawo shan iska* ; to w. about *zago* ; to w. backwards and forwards *zago*, *jawagi** ; to w. on all fours *rarrafe* ; to w. on tiptoe *sanda* ; to w. proudly *takama* ; to try to w. (to toddle) of infants *dubbo dubbo*.

walking, verbal n. *yauwa* ; w. fast or excitedly *gagawa* ; w. up and down in weaving *wadari*.

walking-stick, *gwalma*.

wall, n. *katanga*, *garu*, *ringa* (Z.), *shirgiya*, *ɓarza*, e.g. if he comes out his wits are at the house wall (i.e. at home) *idan ya fito hankalinsa da ɓarza* ; the w. of a house built of mud *bango*, pl. *bangaye* or *banguna* ; the inner w. of a house *kwasandi* ; a w. round a town *ganwa* ; the grass covering of a w. to keep off rain *boto*.

wand, carried by officials, n. *rukuke*.

wander, to, intr. v. ; fig. to w. from (to stray from) a path *sau hanya* or *tafarki* ; to w. aimlessly *shishiga*.

wanderer, *landi**.

wandering, n. *yauwa* ; w. of animals *matataki*.

wane, intr. v. *ragu*, e.g. the day wanes (or is on the w.) *rana ta ragu*.

want, n. 1. (need, lack) *rashi* ; w. of health *rashin lafiya*.

2. (penury) *talauchi*, see **poverty** ; v., to be in w. of *rasa*, e.g. he is not in w. of an excuse *ba shi rasa huja ba*.

want, to, 1. (to be without) tr. v. *rasa, kasa*.

2. (to desire) *so*, e.g. I w. you to give me money *ina so ka ba ni kurɗi*.

wanting, particip. (lacking, devoid of) prefix *maras-*, e.g. w. sense *maras-hankali* ; w. strength *maras-karifi* ; w. (in the sense of short) *hilafa**.

wanton, n., see **profligate**.

wantonness, n., see **vice** 1.

war, n. *yaki*, pl. *yakuna* or *yakoƙi*, *gāba**, *zaman* ; spec. a holy w. *jihādi*, *jahādi* ; a civil w. *basasa* ; a proclamation of w. *tāgara* ; a charm for protection in w. *maganin yaki* ; a day fixed for w. *ranar gamu* ; a large bird whose

cry is considered an omen of war *zakaran dawaki* ; v., to make or wage w. *yin yaki* ; instruments of w. *kayan dāga*.

warbler, grass w. *purpur, sari-kin kaɗi*.

ward off, to, tr. v. *tsāra, tsāri, tsāre, tsāro, tsārīma, kāre*.

warm, to, tr. v. *zāfafa* ; to w. the hands *gasa hannu* ; refl. to w. oneself at a fire, and intr. to become w. *jin wuta* ; to w. up food *dūmama*.

warm, adj. *mai-dumi*, see **hot**.

warmth, *dumi*.

warn, tr. v. *harbarta, kadarta, gargāda*, also *galkaɗi* with *yi* or the forms in *na*.

warning, n. *galkaɗi, gargadi, kashedi, habartawa**.

warrior, n. *mayaki, gungama, jajirma**, *zarumi, zarmi*, pl. *zarumawa* or *zarumai, jarimi**, *sadauki, sha-bauje* ; fig. (lit. a large snake) *gamshēka, gamshika* ; (lit. a black snake) *masasau** ; a boastful w. *gugara** ; a chief w. *rago** ; a strong w. *gizgari** ; w. without load, i.e. carrying only arms *sunkuru** ; see **soldier**.

wart-hog, *alhanzir, hanzir, durungu*.

wash, tr. v. *wanke* or *wanka* ; in pregn. sense w. and bring back *wanko* ; to w. over with

- water *yafa*, *yafō*; w. well *kwala*, *kwara*, *wanke kalai*.
- washed**, pass. part. *wankakke*, fem. *wankakka*, pl. *wankakku*.
- washing**, n., w. (ablution) *al-walla*.
- washing**, w. away *zarni*.
- wasp**, n. *zirnako*, *jinako*, *zinako*, *damafifito*, *rina*; the mason w. *zanzaro*, *zazaro* (S.).
- waste**, n. 1. (destruction, harm, loss) *ḥarna*, *ḥanna*.
2. (wilderness) *daji*.
- waste**, tr. v. (to spoil, destroy) *ḥāta*, *ḥātas*, *ḥanna*; to w. money (i.e. dissipate, squander) *ḥātas* (and *kāshe*) *kurḍi*; to lay w. *yin kadaita*.
- wasted**, pass. part. *ḥatache*, fem. *ḥatachiya*, pl. *ḥatattu*; v., to be w. (i.e. spent) *ḥache*, e.g. the ink is w. (i.e. dissipated, dried up) *tadarwa ta ḥache*; (of man, with disease) *yankwane*, see **emaciated**.
- waster**, *raggo*, see **idle**.
- watch**, n. (time-piece) *loto**, *sa'a**.
- watch**, v. *tsāra*, *tsāri*, *tsāre*, *tsāro* and *tsārima*, *kūlo*, *yin shigoro*, *zura ido*; to w. carefully *duba*, *dubo*; to w. cattle *kiwo*.
- watching**, *shigoro*.
- watch-tower**, *mabāga* (S.).
- water**, n. *ruwa*, pl. *ruwaye*, *ruwairwai*; cold w. *ruwan sanyi*; hot w. *ruwan zafi*, *ruwan ḍumi*; drinking w. *ruwan sha*; rain w. *ruwan Allah* or *ruwan sama*; a sip of w. *guwa*; a beam for drawing w. *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*, *kutāra**; splash of w. *funjum*, *bundum-bundum*; v., to draw w. *jan ruwa*, *kwalfa*, *ḍēbe* and *ḍēbo ruwa*, *ḍauka ruwa*; pure w. *ḥuna ruwa*; to make w. *yin fitsari*, *boli*; muddy w. *gurbatachen ruwa*; w. which wells slowly up *ruwan jira*; still w. *kuruma*; the sound of running w. *kur-kur-kur*, *war-war-war*.
- water**, to (i.e. to give to drink) *shāda*.
- water-buck**, *ambeche*, *dodōka*, *yakumba*, *gwambaza*.
- water-cress**, *lafuwa*.
- water-fowl**, a black w.-f. *dimilmilo*, *dumulmulu* (S.).
- watering**, *shadawa*.
- water-lily**, *bādo*, *ḥola* (S.).
- water-pot**, n. *tulu*, pl. *tuluna*; spec. pumpkin or gourd from which w.-pots are made *dūma*, pl. *dumaimai*, *dumame*, *gyandama*, *jallo* (K.).
- waterproof**, *rigar ruwa*.
- waterside**, n. (watering-place) *mashaya*.
- waterspout**, *indararo* (S.).

- watery**, adj. *da ruwa*.
- wattles of a cock**, n. *lebatu*, *laihatu*.
- wave**, tr. v. (to move to and fro) *yin shillo*, *reto*; she is waving her kerchief *tana gilgiza kallabinta*.
- waves**, n., of water *rakumman ruwa*; heat w. in the air *diyāl rana*.
- waving**, *shillo*.
- wax**, n. *gabduwa** (from the ear) *daudan kunne*; see **bees-wax**.
- wax-bill**, (bird) *asisi*, *baiwar Allah*.
- way**, n. (road and also fig. of religion, etc.) *hanya*, pl. *han-yoyi*, *tafarki*, pl. *tafarkoki*, *būbe*, *turba*, pl. *turbobi*; (of temper, character) *hali*, pl. *halai*, e.g. that is his w. *halinsa ke nan*; in this w. *hakanga*, see **thus**; v., to go out of the w. (to make room for) *ratse*; to lose the w. *ratsa* (or *ratse*) *hanya*, *kar-kache*; to build or construct a w. *gina hanya* and gen. to prepare a w. *gyara hanya*; phr. I know my w. about *na sani duniya*.
- we**, pers. pron. nominative sep., e.g. all we or we all *mu duka*; we two *mu biyu*; prefixed to past tenses, e.g. we saw him *mun gan shi*; suffixed to auxiliary of the future and to the passives, e.g. we will go together *za mu tare*; we were driven out *aka fitas da mu*.
- weak**, adj. *rashin karifi*, *maras-karifi*, *babu karifi*, *kumāma*, *raunana*, *dagogo* (Kats.).
- weakness**, n. *kumamanchi*, *ramni*.
- wealth**, n. *gatanchi*, *tajirchi*, see **property**, **riches**.
- wealthy**, adj., see **rich** 1.
- wean**, tr. v. *yin yaye*.
- weapon**, *mahalbiyi*, see **arms**.
- wear**, tr. v. *sa** (lit. put on) used with *riga* etc.
- weariness**, n. *gajiya*, *gajewa*, *gajiyawa*, *angaje*.
- weary**, adj. *da gājīya*; v., to feel w. *jin gājīya*.
- weather**, fine, n. *duniya daɗi*; it will be fair w. *za a yi sarari*; the w. is bad to-day *yau ba sarari ba*.
- weave**, v. *saɓa*; a frame used in weaving through which the warp threads pass after leaving the *allera*, *masefi*.
- weaver**, n. ag. *masaki*, *masaɓa*; weaver's loom *takala*; weaver's shuttle *masaɓa*.
- weaver-bird**, the yellow w.-b. *jira*; the long-tailed w.-b. (*Vidua principalis*) *zulaidu*, *zulaidi*, sometimes called

sarikin tsuntsaye; the black-headed yellow w.-b. *kābare*; the black-headed w. finch *shaida*.

weaving, *sāka*; to walk up and down for purposes of w. *wadari*; the pulley on a loom on which the peddles work *chikalkora*; the wooden board to which the unwoven thread of the warp is fastened *kunkuru*; the revolving cage on which the spun yarn is wound before w. *yaro-ba-ki-wuya*.

web, spider's, n. *sumya, shan-shando* (S.).

wedding, n., see **marriage**; w. festivities *amarchi*.

Wednesday, n. *ranal laraba, laraba, larba*.

weed, tr. v. *yin tsintsurwan chiyawa*.

week, this day w. *yāda yau*; to-morrow w. *yāda gobe*.

weep, intr. v. *yin hawaye*; see **cry**.

weevil, a small w. which eats corn *kun-ki-chi**.

weigh, tr. v. *auna, auni, awuna, yin awo, gwada*; actions are weighed *ayuka awonsu*.

weighing, verbal n., anything for w. with *abin awo*; anything used for w. *ma-auna*.

weight, n. 1. (measured heaviness) *awo*; for particular measures of w. see *miskal, rotal**; v., to feel in order to discover the w. of a thing *jinjini*; giving short w. *tsakure*.

2. (heaviness) *nauyi, nauwa**.

weighty, adj. (heavy) *da nauyi*.

welcome, interj. used as a salutation on meeting after a long time *marhaba, māra, barka da zuwa, barka da yini*; see also under *sanu*.

welcome, tr. v. (to receive as a guest) *shide, marhabshē, tarairaiya, tarba, tarbi*.

well, n. *rijiya*, pl. *riyoji* or *rijiyoyi*; a deep w. *rijiya da zurfi, tumniya*; spec. a beam for drawing water out of a w. *jigo*, pl. *jiguna*; v., to dig a w. *gina rijiya*; falling in of a w. *hurma*.

well, to w. out *tsatsāfa*.

well, adj. 1. (right, proper, advantageous) *da kyau*.

2. (in good health) *da lafiya* and *lafiya*, e.g. are you w.? *kana lafiya?* quite w. *sai lafiya* or *lafiya lau*; he came back here w. *ya komo lafiya*; to be w. *yin lafiya*.

3. adverbial expressions

are: (of approbation) w. *da kyan*; (of doubt, hesitation) w. *! to, aya, aiya*; as w. as (together with) *tare da*; w. then (introducing a statement) *dāga nan*.

west, n. *yamma, magariba*.

westward, adv. *yammachi*.

wet, n. (rain) *ruwa*; cf. seq.

wet, to be, intr. v. (of the weather) e.g. it is w. *ana ruwa*; it was very w. *an yi ruwa dayawa*; (to become wet) *jiki*; (to be wetted or put in water) *a jika tsant-sama, suma* (S.); to be very w. *jika sharkap*.

wet-season, n. *damāna* or *damuna*; to pass the w.-s. *yin damāna*; see under **rainy**.

what, pron. 1. dependent relative (that which) *abin da*, e.g. I see what you want *na gani abin da ka ke so*.

2. interrog. what? *mi, me, mine* and *minene*, e.g. what has happened to you? *mi ya same ka?* what shall we do? *mi za mu yi?* also adj. *wa, wanene*, fem. *wache, wacheche*, pl. *suwa, suwane* and *suwanene*, e.g. what is his name? *wa sunansa?* what kind of bird is this? *wanne irin tsuntsuwa ke nan?* see under **who**.

whatever, indef. rel. pron. *komi*, e.g. whatever begins will come to an end *komi ya faru za shi shi kare ne*.

whatsoever, indef. rel. pron. *komine*, e.g. wh. you do, it will be of no use *komine ka yi babu anfani*.

wheat, n. *alkama*; w. in good condition *alkama tsari*; tuft of w. *geza*, pl. *gezuna*; ear of w. *kube*, see **ear**.

wheel, n. *rumbuwa**, *ujala**, *keke*.

whelp, n. *kwikuyo* or *kurk-wiyo*, pl. *kwikuye*.

when, adv. 1. rel. *da, yanda, yarwanda, yaushe, sa'an da, lokachin da, ran da, kagada* (S.); *idan* or *izan, kādan, kan, kamin, kur** or *kul**.

2. interrog. when? *yaushē, wache sa'a, wanne lokachi*; since wh.? *tun yaushē, dāga yaushē*; until wh.? *har yaushē?*

whence? *dāga ina?*

whenever, adv. *ko yaushē*, e.g. wh. he gets up he falls down again *ko yaushē shi tashi ya fadi kuma*.

where, adv. 1. rel. *inda, wurin da*.

2. interrog. where? *ina?*

wherefore? adv. *domi?* *dommi* or *domin mi?* see **why**.

wherever, adv. *ko'ina*.

whether...or, correlatives *yala...ko, ko...ko*.

which, see **who**.

while, a little, n. *jima kaḍan* and *jim kaḍan*.

while, adv. rel. *tun da*, e.g. while they were speaking together I ran off *tun da suna yin magana na tafi da gudu*; wh. they were about to kill him a wonderful thing happened *tun da za su kashe shi abin mamaki ya faru*.

whip, n. (of skin) *kurfu*, pl. *kurafu, bulala*, pl. *bulalai*.

whip, tr. v. *yin bulala, yin kurfu*, e.g. he whipped them *ya yi ma su bulala*.

whirling, n. *juji*.

whirlwind, n. *guguwa*, used esp. for dust storm.

whiskers, *saje*, pl. *sajoji*; w. and moustache *washefe*.

whisper, intr. v. *raḍa, chim-baya*, both esp. in bad sense.

whisperer, n. ag. *mai-raḍa*.

whispering, n. *raḍa*.

whistle, n., made of horn *kwabura* (K.), *kwabira* (S.).

whistle, intr. v. (with the lips) *yin feto, yin fito*.

whistling, participial n. *fē-duwa, fito, feto, shewa*.

white, adj. *fāri*, fem. *fāra, farfara*, pl. *fārare, fāru-fāru* or *farfaru*; very wh. *fāri*

fat; a wh. (i.e. one of a wh. race) *ba-ture*.

whiten, to *faranta*.

whitened, pass. particip. *fāraya*, pl. *fārayu*.

whitish, (i.e. dirty white) *fari fari*.

who, pron. I. rel. (also which, the objective whom, and the rel. that) *wanda*, fem. *wadda*, pl. *wadaḍanda*, also simply *da*; the possess. whose is expressed by the foregoing with the corresponding possess. pron. suffixed to the object possessed, e.g. the man whose camel I killed *mutum wanda na kashe raḱuminsa*.

2. pronominal interrogative who? (also = which?) *wa, wane* and *wanene*, fem. *wache, wacheche*, pl. *suwa, suwane*, e.g. who is this? *wa ke nan*; who are you? *wanene kai*; which are they? *suwane ne*; which of them? *wane chikin su*; which woman among them? *wache chikin su*; who is this? *wanene wannan*; the possess. whose? is expressed by placing the name of the object possessed in the connective before the interrog., e.g. whose daughter art thou? (i.e. who is thy mother?) *ḍiyar wacheche ki ke*; whose son is

he? *dan wa shi ke*; whose horse is this? *dokin wa ke nan*.

3. the adjectival interrogative forms are *wanne*, fem. *wache*, pl. *wāḍanne*; who is he? *wanne shi*; what woman is it that has come? *wache mache che wannan wadda ta zo*; what men are these? *wāḍanne mutane ke nan*.

whoever, indef. pron. *kowa*, *duka wannan da*; see **soever**.

whole, n. *dukachi*, *dukanta*, e.g. the w. of mankind *ḍo-kachin mutane*.

whom, rel. and interrog. pron., see **who**.

whore, n. *shakaliya*, pl. *shakalai*, *karuwa*.

whoredom, n. *shakalchi*, *karuwanchi*.

whose, possess. rel. and interrog. pron., see **who**.

why, dependent rel. adv. *domi*, *dommi*, *don mi*, *domin mi*, he did not tell us why he did this thing *ba ya faḍi ma mu domi ya yi abin nan*; interrog. why? *domi*, *dommi* or *domin mi*, *sabilin mi*, *mi ya sa*, *sabad da mi*.

wick, n., lamp w. made of twisted cotton *lagwami*, *lagwani*.

wicked, adj. *mugu*, fem. *mu-gunya*, pl. *miyagu*; a w.

person *mugun mutum*, *mala-lachi*.

wickedness, n. *mugunta*, *lābo*, *shegantaka*.

wide, adj. *da fāḍi*, *maifāḍi*, *bikiki*, *da faski*; n., a w. place *yalwa*; it is two cubits w. *faḍinsa* (=its width) *kamu biyu*.

wide-opened, adj. *kurkurkur**.

widow, n. *zauwara*, *zaura*, *gwabruwa*, *jaura*, *bazawara*, *gwamruwa*, pl. *gwamraye*; a w. during her time of retreat *tākaba*.

widower, *gwabro*, *gwauuro*, *gwamro*, *jauri*, *zauri*.

widow-finch, *zulaidu*.

widowhood, *zauwarchi*.

width, n. *faḍi*, *faski*, e.g. its w. is this *faḍinsa ke nan*.

wife, n. *mata*, pl. *mataye*; spec. chief w. *uwar gida* or *uwal gidu*; w. of a polygamist *kishiya* (q.v.), pl. *kishiyoyi*; a favourite w. *mowa*.

wild, adj., see **tame** 1.

wilderness, n. *daji*, *dāwa*, see **desert**.

wile, n., see **stratagem**.

will, n. 1. (assent, consent and so, permission) *yarda*, (pleasure, wish, determination) *turn*, e.g. work your w. *ku yi abin da ku ke so*.

2. (testament) *wasichi**.

will, v. 1. (of consent, also willingness) *yarda*.

2. as auxiliary of the fut.
za, e.g. I w. run *za ni gudu*;
he w. return here *za shi komo*.

willow, *rimni, ba ruwana*.

win, v. (in gambling) *kasa, chi*,
e.g. I w. *na chi*.

wind, n. *iska* or *hiska*, pl.
iskoki or *hiskoki, holoko**; a
dusty w. *malalo*; the Har-
mattan w. *iskan buda*; the
w. is now blowing hard *iska*
yana busawa yanzu da karifi;
to break w. *yin tusa*.

wind, tr. v. *murda, murde* (K.),
mirda, mirde (S.); to w.
thread *wadarta*; intr. (to
coil) *nade*.

winding-sheet, n. *likafani,*
likkafani.

window, n. (i.e. a hole to look
out) *sakata, taga* (K.), pl.
tagaigai; dan kofa.

wind-pipe, n. *muriya*, pl.
muriyoyi, janai, janyaro.

wine, palm-, n. *bam, bami*.

wing, n. (of bird) *fifike, fikafike*,
pl. *fikafikai, fukafuki*, pl. *fu-*
kafukai, faifeto, fefeto; w. of
an insect *kallemu* (K.); flap-
ping of w. *fuffuka, pupuka*.

winged, adj. *mai-fefeto*.

wink, v. *kyabta* (or *kyapta*)
ido, jafache, rumtsa; to w.
with one eye *yin kanne*.

winking, participial n. *kyab-*
tawa, kyaptawa, kanne.

winnow, v. *tankada* and *yin*
tankade, bakache, sheka, shi-
ka.

winnower, n. ag. *mai-bakache,*
*mashekiya**.

winnowing, *tankade*.

winter-season, *buda*.

wipe, tr. v. *shafe, karta* (K.),
karche (S.), *katse*; wiping
(e.g. of a dish) *katsa*; any-
thing used for wiping *abin*
shafe.

wisdom, n. 1. (sagacious in-
sight) *lura, budi, hikima**.

2. (prudence, good sense)
hankali.

wise, adj. in sense of prec. 1.
mai-lura; in that of prec. 2.
da hankali.

wish, n. *abin so, fata*; a strong
w. *guri**; unless I w. *sai*
na ga dama.

wish, tr. v. *so, nufe* or *nifa*;
to w. for *fache*; to w. rather
fi so, e.g. I w. this rather
than that *na fi so wannan*
da wanchan.

wit, cf. I am at my wits' end
dabara ta kare.

witchcraft, n., see **sorcery**.

with, prep. 1. instrumental,
da, e.g. they slashed him w.
a sword *suka sare shi da*
takobi.

2. comitative, *da* which is commonly used with verbs of motion, e.g. go off w. it (take it away) *tafi da shi*; (in company w.) *tare da*; (near, by) *wuri na* or *wurin, gun*, e.g. w. the king *wuri na* (or *wurin*) *sariki*; thou must seek knowledge w. the Mallams *kai dai a nemi shini gun mallamai*; (of competition and contest) *da*, e.g. he fought w. a certain man *ya yi fada da wani mutum*; he made war w. Kaffi *ya yi yaki da Kafi*.

withdraw, tr. v. *kauda, kaushe, turje, turjo*; to w. the hand *danko*; intr, to w. from (to move away from) *gusa, gulgusa* or *gurgusa, toge ma, kude* (S.); to w. into shelter *noke*.

wither, v. *yaushi, tsotse* and *tsotsi, kwake**; (of plants) *yankwane*.

withered, pass. part. *shanyayye*, fem. *shanyayya, shanyayyu*; spec. w. branches *kwabruka*; w. tree *koren itache*.

withering, n. *yaushi*.

withhold, tr. v. *hana*.

within, prep. *chikin* or *daga chikin, tsakan**; from w. *daga chikin*.

without, prep. 1. (devoid of, wanting) *ba, babu, bamda*, e.g. w. doubt *babu shakka, babu wara*; with the prefix *maras-* compounds are formed equivalent to the English prepositional phrase, e.g. w. shame *maras-kumya*; v., to be w. *rasa, tafe, tafi, taɓe, kasa*.

2. (not within) see **outside**.

witness, n. 1. (testimony) *shaida*, pl. *shidai* and *shaidodi*; eye-w. *shaidar ido*; false w. *shaidar zur*.

2. (a person who testifies) *mai-shaida*, pl. *masu-shaida*; v., to bear w. *shaida* with *yi* or the forms in *na*; to bring or adduce w. *kai* (or *kawo*) *shaida*; to bear false w. *damre magana*.

wizard, n. *maye* or *mayi*, fem. *mayya, boka*, pl. *bokaye*.

woe! interj. *wai, tir*, e.g. w. is me! *wai niya*; w. unto you! *tir da ku*; see **alas**.

wolf, an animal resembling a w. (the hunting dog), n. *kyarkechi, kyalkechi, kirkinja, kilikinja*.

woman, n. *mache*, pl. *mata, mutumniya*; young w. *yarinya*, pl. *yammata*; a bad w. *karuwa, shakaliya*; a w.

without a husband *bazawara*;
a woman's loin-cloth *fatari*;
an old w. *gyatuma*, *goma*,
yakumba.

womanliness, *wanchi*.

wonder, n. 1. (the feeling)
*woba**.

2. (something wonderful,
a w.) *mamaki* and *abin ma-*
maki, *ajaba*, *ajub*, *karāma*.

wonder, intr. v. *yin woba*, *jin*
mamaki, *saurara**.

wonderful, adj. *da mamaki*.

wont, n. (= habit) *tada*, *ada*,
e.g. this is their w. *ta-*
dansu ke nan; v., to be w.,
see **accustom** 2.

wood, n. 1. (forest) *rukūki*.

2. (the material of trees)
itache and *iche*; a little
piece of w. *dan itache*; spec.
a long piece of w. tied behind
the ear as a punishment for
thieving *kangalai*.

woodpecker, green *makōkofo*,
makōkofi.

wool, n. *mulufi* or *malufi*, *ulu*,
sufi, *vero**.

woollen, adj. *da* (or *na*) *mu-*
lufi or *malufi*; woollen cloth
mulufi or *malufi*.

word, n. *magana*, pl. *magan-*
ganu, *zanche*, pl. *zantatuka*,
kalma, *kalami**; *karātu*;
pleasant words (lit. ear broth)
romon kunne.

work, n. (employment, busi-
ness, labour) *aiki*, *shāgali*,
*shugala**, pl. *shagulgula*, *tsur-*
fa; concr. (a production, an
act, a w.) *aiki*, pl. *aikoki*;
net-work *aikin raga*; a bad
w. *aiki mugu*; a day's w.
wunin aiki; v., to refuse to
w. or to shirk w. *ki wuya*,
huji; to start w. *kama aiki*.

work, intr. v. *aiki* with *yi* and
the forms in *na*; to w. dili-
gently *yin sawabe*; to w.
uselessly. *sunkwiya* or *sun-*
kuya; n. unwillingness to w.
sassauchi.

working, n. (action, operative
power) *yi** q.v.

workman, n. ag. *maaikachi*,
pl. *maaikata*.

workshop, n. *maaikachi**.

world, n. *duniya*; the next
w. *lahira*, *gidan gobe*.

worm, n., an earth-w. *tana*, pl.
tanu, *tsutsa*; earth-worms
abin kāsa; thread-w. *kwaraba*;
tape-w. *tsila*; guinea-w. *kur-*
kunu, *girgamu*; worms in
horses or asses coll. *āzumaki*,
āzurumaki.

worry, tr. v. *wahalshe*, *dāme*;
he worried people beyond
endurance *ya chika dama*
mutane.

worse, comp. adj. *mafi mu-*
gunta daga.

worship, n. (religion, creed) *addini**; (divine service) *salla*; Mohammedan w. *mu-sulumchi*.

worth, (deserts) *chinchinta*.

worthless, adj. *banza, la'ane*, fem. *la'ana*, pl. *la'anu, lalatache*, fem. *lalatachiya*, pl. *lalatattu, amere, wofi, yofi* (S.); n., a w. fellow *dan banza, wofin mutum*; to be w. *lalache, tunkushe*.

worthy, adj. *kiriki, kiriki*.

wound, n. *rauni, makami, miki*; scar of a healed w. *tabo, tambo*.

wound, tr. v. *rauni*; to w. with a spear *chäke*.

wounded, pass. part. *da rauni*.

wounding, *jinaya*.

woven, pass. part. *sakakke*, fem. *sakakkiya*, pl. *sakakku*.

wrap, tr. v. *yafa, yafu, sunke, kunshe**.

wrapper, n. (goatskin loin w.) *walki* (S.), *warki* (K.).

wrapping, grass, for packing salt, etc., n. *burdumi*.

wrath, n., see **anger**.

wrestle, intr. v. *yin kokuwa*.

wrestler, n. *mai-kunche*.

wrestling, n. *kokuwa, kokowa*; a w. game *gumaza*.

wring, tr. v. *murda*, e.g. they wrung the fowls' necks *suka murda wuyan kaji*.

wrinkled, to be *takura*.

wrinkling, n. *yaushi, yoshi*.

wrist, n. *wuyan hannu, tsint-siyar hannu*; w.-bone *idon hannu*; spec. a w. ornament worn by the heathen *warami*, pl. *waramai*; a wristlet made of leather and wood *däga*; w. bangles *kärau, kambu, kambuwa, warami*.

write, v. *rubuta, rubutu, yin rubutu, rubuche*.

writer, *marubuchi*, pl. *marubuta*.

writing, n. abstr. *rubutu* or *rubuchi*; a w. board *allo*; concr. (anything written, a w.) *laya*, pl. *lawaye, layu, takarda*, pl. *takardu, rubutu, rubuchi, litafi*, pl. *litatafi, litatafai*; a line of w. *shadara, shatsära*; spec. writing from God (used of the Koran, the Psalms or Gospels) *zabura**.

wrong, n. (violation of right) *laifi*; v., to do w. *yin laifi, karkache*, e.g. he did me w. *ya yi ma ni laifi*; I will produce proof so that anyone may see that you are in the w. *ni kawo shaida kowa shi gani ku ke da laifi*.

yam, n. *doya*, pl. *doyoyi, maguraza*; a y. cooked and

beaten up *sakwara*; *kokó y.* *gwaza*; a kind of *y.* (the Kaffir potato) *rizga*; a root resembling a *y.* *tumuku*, *chakara*.

yard, (measure of length) *sanda*.*.

yarn, (thick cotton) n. *abāwa*.

yawn, intr. v. *mīka**; he does nothing but *y.* *saīshina mīka*.

yaws, *kyambi* (S.).

ye, pers. pron., see **you**.

yea, adv., see **yes**.

year, n. *shekara*, pl. *shekaru*, e.g. how many years old are you? *shekarunka nawa* or *shekara nawa kana da rai* or *shekara nawa tun haifu-walka*; last *y.*, adv. *bara*, *bariya*; next *y.* *bađi*; this *y.* *bāna*; v., to live (so many) years *shekara*; *y.* after *y.* *shekara da shekaru*.

yeast, n., spec. *y.* made of acid pulp of the tamarind *tsamiya*.

yellow, adj. *rawaya*, pl. *rawayu*, spec. *y.* needlework on a bernouse *yar-rani*.

yes, adv. *i*, *na'am*, *mādalla**, *yau**, *yo**; to say *y.* (to assent or consent) *kada kai*; see **certainly**.

yesterday, n. *jiya*; the day before *y.* *shekaranjiya*, three days ago *wanshekaranjiya*; *y.* evening *jiya da mareche*.

yet, adv. *har yanzu*, e.g. is your father *y.* living? *ubanka har yanzu shina da rai*; while *y.* *tun da*, e.g. while they were *y.* running *tun da suna gudu*; not *y.* *tukun*, *tukuna* with *ba*, e.g. he has not *y.* gone away *ba ya tafi tukuna ba*; I have not *y.* found it *ban samu har yau*.

yoke, put on necks of slaves, n. *karkiya*.

yokel, a *bagidaje*, *đan kawye*.

yolk of egg, n. *gwabduwa*, *gwanduwa*.

yonder, 1. dem. adj. (also=the one *y.*) *wanchan*, fem. *wachan*, pl. *wadannan*, *chan* or *chana*, e.g. on the *y.* side *dāga waje chan*.

2. adv. (over there) *chan*, *chana*, *dāga chan*, *wuri chan*.

Yoruba people, Hausa name for *ayagi*, *Yaribawa*.

you, pers. pron. (also *ye*) *ku*; to you *ma ku* or with assimilation *muku*.

young, adj. 1. (new, fresh, not used of animals or men) *sābo*, fem. *sābuwa*, pl. *sabui*, *sabobi*, *sababi* or *sabbi*.

2. (of animals) *đa*, conn. *đan*, fem. *điya*, pl. *ya*, conn. *yan*, coll. *điya*, e.g. a *y.* lion *đan zaki* or *đan zakanya*; *y.* lions *yan zakanya*; the

hyena brought forth her y. *kura ta haife diyanta.*

3. (of human beings) special terms are used requiring no adj., e.g. a y. lad *yaro*, pl. *yara*; a y. woman *yarinya*, pl. *yam-mata*; a y. man, see **youth**.

youngest, adj. *auta*.

youngling, n. (of animals) *kwikuyo*, *labubu*, *kurkwiyo*, *kuyikuyu*, pl. *kwikuye*, *kuyi-kuyai*.

your, possess. pron. suffixed to a masc. n. *-nku*, suffixed to a fem. n. *-rku*, *-lku*, e.g. y. king *sarikinku*; separate, if the object possessed is masc. *naku*, if fem. *taku*, if pl. *naku*.

yours, (the form of prec. employed when the object possessed is not expressly stated but implied) with masc. object *naku*, fem. *taku*, pl. *naku*, e.g. our horses are

· better than y. *dawakinmu sun fi naku.*

yourself, yourselves, refl. and emphatic pron.; see **self**.

youth, n. 1. abstr. *yarantaka*, *yarinta*.

2. concr. (a y. from fourteen to twenty years of age) *samrayi*, *saurayi*, *sarmayi*, pl. *samari*.

Zaria, the town, *Zazzau*, *Zozo* or *Zakazak*; the people of Z. *Zagezagi*.

zeal, n. *himma*, *harama*, *hazama*, *yaji**; v., to show z. *maida* (or *yin*) *himma*.

zigzagging, *kurda nan kurda nan*.

zithern, a kind of *garaiya*, *guraiya*, *karaiya*.

zizyphus, n., Z. spina Christi *kurna*; Z. lotus *magariya*; Z. mucronata (buffalo-horn) *magariyar kura*.

Cambridge :

PRINTED BY JOHN CLAY, M.A.

AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS

PUBLICATIONS OF THE CAMBRIDGE
UNIVERSITY PRESS RELATING TO AFRICA

A History of the Colonization of Africa by Alien Races.

By Sir HARRY H. JOHNSTON, G.C.M.G., K.C.B., Hon. Sc.D. Cantab.
New Edition, revised throughout and considerably enlarged. Crown 8vo.
With 8 maps. 8s. net. Cambridge Historical Series.

Ethnology of A-Kamba and other East African tribes.

By C. W. HOBLEY, C.M.G., A. M. Inst. C. E. Demy 8vo. With
54 illustrations and a map. 7s. 6d. net.

The Tribes of Northern and Central Kordofán. By

H. A. MACMICHAEL, Sudan Civil Service, late Scholar of Magdalene
College, Cambridge. Demy 8vo. With 19 plates. 10s. 6d. net.

Brands used by the Chief Camel-owning Tribes of

Kordofán. By the same author. Demy 8vo. With 17 plates. 6s. net.

Initia Amharica. An Introduction to spoken Amharic. By

C. H. ARMBRUSTER, M.A., Sudan Civil Service. Royal 8vo.

Part I. Grammar. 12s. net.

Part II. English-Amharic Vocabulary with phrases. 15s. net.

Vocabularies of the Kamba and Kikuyu Languages of

East Africa. By HILDEGARDE HINDE (MRS SIDNEY L. HINDE). Crown
8vo. 3s. net.

The Masai Language. Grammatical Notes, together with

a Vocabulary. Compiled by HILDEGARDE HINDE. Crown 8vo. 3s. 6d.

A Grammar of the Somali Language with Examples

in Prose and Verse. And an account of the Yibir and Midgan Dialects.

By J. W. C. KIRK, B.A., King's College, Cambridge, Lieutenant, Duke
of Cornwall's Light Infantry and 6th (Somaliland) Battalion, King's
African Rifles. Demy 8vo. 7s. 6d. net.

The Modern Egyptian Dialect of Arabic. A Grammar,

with Exercises, Reading Lessons and Glossaries, from the German of
Dr K. VOLLERS. With numerous additions by the Author. Translated
by F. C. BURKITT, M.A. Crown 8vo. 10s. 6d.

Dictionary of the Hausa Language. By the Rev. CHARLES

HENRY ROBINSON, D.D., sometime Lecturer in Hausa in the University
of Cambridge, Honorary Canon of Ripon. Crown 8vo.

Vol. I. Hausa-English. *Third edition, revised and enlarged.* 12s. net.

Vol. II. English-Hausa. *Third edition.* 9s. net.

Specimens of Hausa Literature. By the Rev. CHARLES

HENRY ROBINSON, M.A. Small 4to. 10s. Translation, Transliteration
and Notes, without Facsimiles, 5s.

Cambridge University Press

C. F. CLAY, Manager

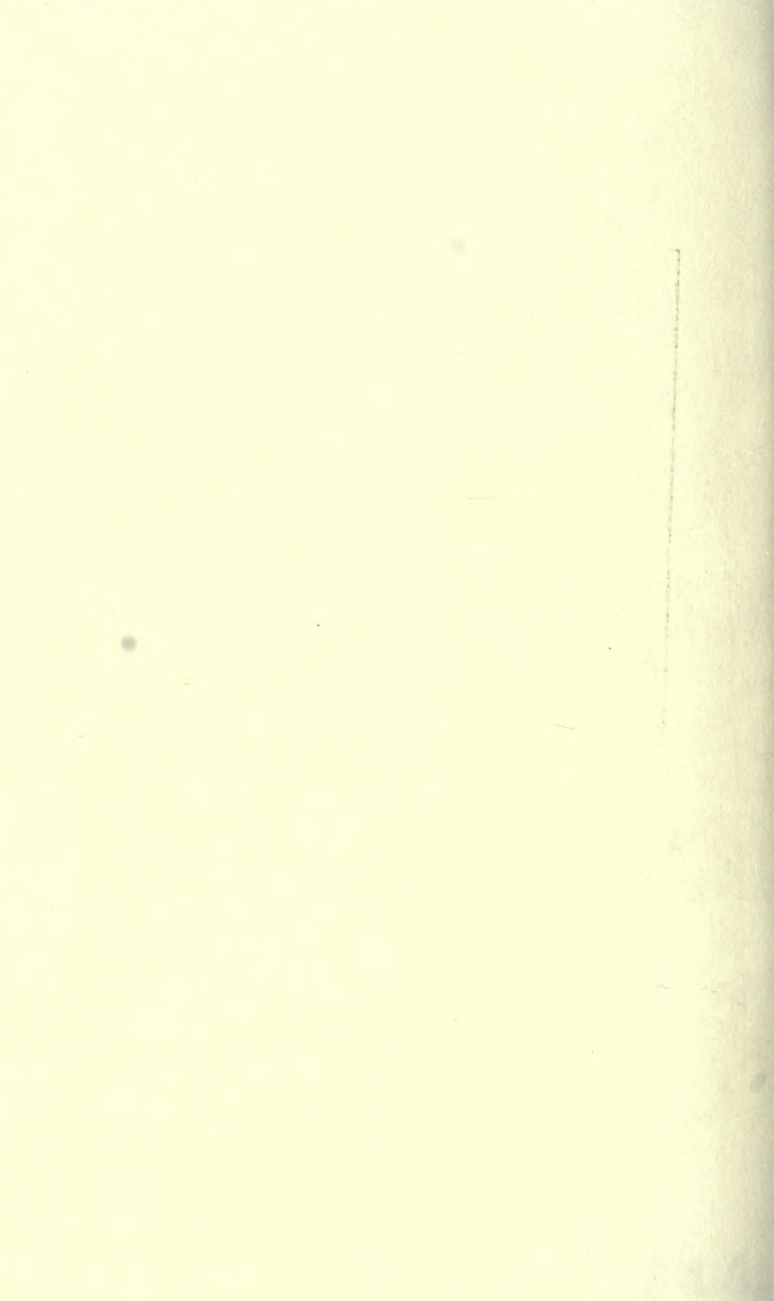
London: Fetter Lane, E.C.

Edinburgh: 100, Princes Street

3

122

644



**PLEASE DO NOT REMOVE
CARDS OR SLIPS FROM THIS POCKET**

UNIVERSITY OF TORONTO LIBRARY
